



City of Santee BMP Design Manual

**For Permanent Site Design,
Storm Water Treatment and
Hydromodification Management**

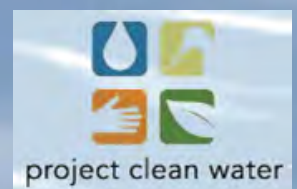
February 2016

Prepared by:

Geosyntec 
consultants

engineers | scientists | innovators

RICK
ENGINEERING COMPANY



Model BMP Design Manual

This Model BMP Design Manual to be adapted for local use by:

City of Carlsbad
www.carlsbadca.gov

City of Chula Vista
www.chulavistaca.gov

City of Coronado
www.coronado.ca.us

City of Del Mar
www.delmar.ca.us

City of El Cajon
www.ci.el-cajon.ca.us

City of Encinitas
www.ci.encinitas.ca.us

City of Escondido
www.ci.escondido.ca.us

City of Imperial Beach
www.imperialbeachca.gov

City of La Mesa
www.ci.la-mesa.ca.us

City of Lemon Grove
www.lemongrove.ca.gov

City of National City
www.ci.national-city.ca.us

City of Oceanside
www.ci.oceanside.ca.us

City of Poway
www.ci.poway.ca.us

City of San Diego
www.sandiego.gov

City of San Marcos
www.ci.san-marcos.ca.us

City of Santee
www.santeeh2o.org

City of Solana Beach
www.ci.solana-beach.ca.us

City of Vista
www.ci.vista.ca.us

County of San Diego
www.sandiegocounty.gov

San Diego Unified Port District
www.portofsandiego.org

San Diego County Regional Airport Authority
www.san.org



IMPORTANT: Storm water requirements will directly affect the layout of a project. Therefore storm water requirements must be considered from the initial project planning phases, and will be reviewed with each submittal.

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

Summary

In May 2013, the California Regional Water Quality Control Board for the San Diego Region reissued (SDRWQCB) a municipal storm water, National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System permit (Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems [MS4] Permit) that covered its region. The San Diego Region is comprised of San Diego, Orange, and Riverside County Copermittees. The MS4 Permit reissuance to the San Diego County Copermittees went into effect in 2013 (Order No. R9-2013-0001).

The reissued MS4 Permit updates and expands storm water requirements for new developments and redevelopments. In February 2015, the MS4 Permit was amended by Order R9-2015-001. As required by the reissued MS4 Permit, the Copermittees have prepared a Model Best Management Practices (BMP) Design Manual (from here in referred to as the “**Manual**”) to replace the current Countywide Model Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP), dated March 25, 2011, which was based on the requirements of the 2007 MS4 Permit.

What this Manual is intended to address:

This Manual addresses updated onsite post-construction storm water requirements for Standard Development Projects (SDPs) and Priority Development Projects (PDPs), and provides updated procedures for planning, preliminary design, selection, and design of permanent storm water BMPs based on the performance standards presented in the MS4 Permit. **The model Manual has been modified by the City of Santee to include jurisdiction-specific requirements as described in the “Local Implementation” section below.**

At the local level, the intended users of the BMP Design Manual include project applicants, for both private and public developments, their representatives responsible for preparation of Storm Water Quality Management Plans (SWQMPs) and City personnel responsible for review of these plans.

The following are significant updates to storm water requirements of the MS4 Permit compared to the 2007 MS4 Permit and 2011 Countywide Model SUSMP:

- PDP categories have been updated, and the minimum threshold of impervious area to qualify as a PDP has been reduced.
- Many of the low impact development (LID) requirements for site design that were applicable only to PDPs under the 2007 MS4 Permit are applicable to all projects (SDPs and PDPs) under the current MS4 Permit.
- The standard for storm water pollutant control (formerly treatment control) is retention of the 24-hour 85th percentile storm volume, defined as the event that has a precipitation total greater than or equal to 85 percent of all daily storm events larger than 0.01 inches over a given period of record in a specific area or location.
- For situations where onsite retention of the 85th percentile storm volume is technically not feasible, biofiltration must be provided to satisfy specific “biofiltration standards”. These standards consist of a set of siting, selection, sizing, design and operation and maintenance (O&M) criteria that must be met for a BMP to be considered a “biofiltration BMP” – see Section 2.2.1 and Appendix F.
- Exemptions from hydromodification management are reduced, and certain categories of exemptions that are not identified in the MS4 Permit must be identified in a Watershed

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

Management Area Analysis (WMAA).

- The flow control performance standard for hydromodification management is based on controlling flow to pre-development condition (natural) rather than pre-project condition.
- Hydromodification management requirements are expanded to include requirements to protect critical coarse sediment yield areas.
- Alternative (offsite) compliance approaches are provided as an option to satisfy pollutant control or hydromodification management performance standards if and when the City implements an Alternative Compliance Program. Copermittees are given discretion by the MS4 Permit to allow the project applicants to participate in an alternative compliance program without demonstrating technical infeasibility of retention and/or biofiltration BMPs onsite.

What this manual does not address:

This manual provides guidelines for compliance with onsite post-construction storm water requirements in the MS4 Permit, which apply to both private and public projects. The MS4 Permit includes provisions for discretionary participation in alternative compliance program and implementation of “Green Streets” design concepts. As these elements are jurisdiction-specific and in different stages of development across the San Diego region, this manual which precedes development of local implementation guidance, **does not provide guidance for participation in Alternative Compliance Program nor is intended to serve as a Green Streets Design Manual.** This manual only indicates the conditions under which project applicants, public or private, can seek to participate in alternative compliance or implement Green Streets at the discretion of local jurisdictions. Additionally, this manual addresses only post-construction storm water requirements and is not intended to serve as a guidance or criteria document for construction-phase storm water controls.

Disclaimer

Currently, some of the Copermittees are pursuing a subvention of funds from the State to pay for certain activities required by the 2007 Municipal Permit, including activities that require Copermittees to perform activities outside their jurisdictional boundaries and on a regional or watershed basis. Nothing in this manual should be viewed as a waiver of those claims or as a waiver of the rights of Copermittees to pursue a subvention of funds from the State to pay for certain activities required by the MS4 Permit, including the preparation and implementation of the BMP Design Manual. In addition, several Copermittees have filed petitions with the State Board challenging some of the requirements of Provision E of the MS4 Permit. Nothing in this manual should be viewed as a waiver of those claims. Because the State Board has not issued a stay of the 2013 Municipal Permit, Copermittees must comply with the MS4 Permit’s requirements while the State Board process is pending.

This manual is organized in the following manner:

An introductory section titled “**How to Use this Manual**” provides a practical orientation to intended uses and provides examples of recommended workflows for using the manual.

Chapter 1 provides information to help the manual user determine which of the storm water management requirements are applicable to the project; source controls/site design, pollutant controls, and hydromodification management. This chapter also introduces the procedural requirements for preparation, review, and approval of project submittals. General jurisdiction

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

requirements for processing project submittals are provided in this chapter.

Chapter 2 defines the performance standards for source control and site design BMPs, storm water pollutant control BMPs, and hydromodification management BMPs based on the MS4 Permit. These are the underlying criteria that must be met by projects, as applicable. This chapter also presents information on the underlying concepts associated with these performance standards to provide the project applicant with technical background; explains why the performance standards are important; and gives a general description of how the performance standards can be met.

Chapter 3 describes the essential steps in preparing a comprehensive storm water management design and explains the importance of starting the process early during the preliminary design phase. By following the recommended procedures in Chapter 3, project applicants can develop a design that complies with the complex and overlapping storm water requirements. This chapter is intended to be used by both Standard Projects and PDPs; however, certain steps will not apply to SDPs (as identified in the chapter).

Chapter 4 presents the source control and site design requirements to be met by all development projects and is therefore intended to be used by SDPs and PDPs.

Chapter 5 applies to PDPs. It presents the specific process for determining which category of onsite pollutant control BMP, or combination of BMPs, is most appropriate for the PDP site and how to design the BMP to meet the storm water pollutant control performance standard. The prioritization order of onsite pollutant control BMPs begins with retention, then biofiltration, and finally flow-thru treatment control (in combination with offsite alternative compliance). Chapter 5 does not apply to SDPs.

Chapter 6 applies to PDPs that are subject to hydromodification management requirements. This chapter provides guidance for meeting the performance standards for the two components of hydromodification management: protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas and flow control for post-project runoff from the project site. Chapter 6 incorporates applicable requirements of the "Final Hydromodification Management Plan (HMP) Prepared for County of San Diego, California," dated March 2011, with modifications based on updated requirements in the MS4 Permit. Chapter 6 does not apply to SDPs or to PDPs with only pollutant control requirements.

Chapter 7 addresses the long term O&M requirements of structural BMPs presented in this manual, and mechanisms to ensure O&M in perpetuity. Chapter 7 applies to PDPs only and is not required for SDPs; however SDPs may use this chapter as a reference.

Chapter 8 describes the specific requirements for the content of project submittals to facilitate local jurisdictions' review of project plans for compliance with applicable requirements of the manual and the MS4 Permit. This chapter is applicable to SDPs and PDPs. This chapter pertains specifically to the content of project submittals, and not to specific details of jurisdictional requirements for processing of submittals; it is intended to complement the requirements for processing of project submittals that are included in Chapter 1.

Appendices to this manual provide detailed guidance for BMP design, calculation procedures, worksheets, maps and other figures to be referenced for BMP design. These Appendices are not intended to be used independently from the overall manual – rather they are intended to be used only as referenced in the main body of the manual.

This manual is organized based on project category. Requirements that are applicable to both Standard Projects and PDPs are presented in Chapter 4. Additional requirements applicable only to

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

PDPs are presented in Chapters 5 through 7. While source control and site design BMPs are required for all projects inclusive of Standard Projects and PDPs, structural BMPs are only required for PDPs. Throughout this manual, the term "structural BMP" is a general term that encompasses the pollutant control BMPs and hydromodification management BMPs required for PDPs under the MS4 Permit. A structural BMP may be a pollutant control BMP, a hydromodification management BMP, or an integrated pollutant control and hydromodification management BMP. Hydromodification management BMPs are also referred to as flow control BMPs in this manual.

Local Implementation

Certain programs and procedures will vary by jurisdiction¹. For example, available alternative compliance programs, available mechanisms for long term O&M of structural BMPs, project review procedures, and structural BMP verification procedures may differ by jurisdiction. Each local jurisdiction will create a local BMP Design Manual based on this manual to implement the requirements of the MS4 Permit and to include the specific local procedures. Where programs or procedures are expected to vary by jurisdiction, this manual provides a designated section for the local information to be added.

¹ The term "jurisdiction" is used in this manual to refer to individual Copermitees who have independent responsibility for implementing the requirements of the MS4 Permit.

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

Chronology of Storm Water Regulations and San Diego Region Model Guidance Documents

Date	Document	Notes
July 16, 1990	MS4 Permit	The SDRWQCB issued general storm water requirements to all jurisdictions within the County of San Diego via the MS4 Permit
February 21, 2001	MS4 Permit	Land Development SUSMP requirements were written into the MS4 Permit during permit reissuance
February 14, 2002	Model SUSMP	Countywide model guidance document was issued for implementation of the 2001 MS4 Permit requirements
January 24, 2007	MS4 Permit	LID and HMP requirements were written into the MS4 Permit during reissuance
July 24, 2008	Model SUSMP	Countywide model guidance document for implementation of the 2007 MS4 Permit requirements, including interim HMP criteria, was prepared
March 2011	Final HMP	Final HMP addresses HMP requirements of the 2007 MS4 Permit
March 25, 2011	Model SUSMP	Countywide model guidance document for implementation of the 2007 MS4 Permit requirements, including final HMP, was completed
May 8, 2013	MS4 Permit	Storm water retention requirements and requirements for protection of critical coarse sediment yield were written into the MS4 Permit during reissuance
February 11, 2015	MS4 Permit	Amends 2013 MS4 permit and provides clarification on water quality equivalency and provides other technical revisions.
June 27, 2015	Model BMP Design Manual	Countywide model guidance document for implementation of the MS4 Permit requirements "Model BMP Design Manual" updates former "Model SUSMP"

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

Table of Contents

SUMMARY.....III

TABLE OF CONTENTS.....IX

LIST OF ACRONYMS.....XIV

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL.....XV

1. POLICIES AND PROCEDURAL REQUIREMENTS.....1-1

1.1 INTRODUCTION TO STORM WATER MANAGEMENT POLICIES.....1-1

1.2 PURPOSE AND USE OF THE MANUAL.....1-2

 1.2.1 Determining Applicability of Permanent BMP Requirements.....1-3

 1.2.2 Determine Applicability of Construction BMP Requirements.....1-5

1.3 DEFINING A PROJECT.....1-5

1.4 IS THE PROJECT A PDP?.....1-7

 1.4.1 PDP Categories.....1-7

 1.4.2 Local Additional PDP Categories and/or Expanded PDP Definitions.....1-9

 1.4.3 Local PDP Exemptions or Alternative PDP Requirements.....1-10

1.5 DETERMINING APPLICABLE STORM WATER MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS.....1-10

1.6 APPLICABILITY OF HYDROMODIFICATION MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS.....1-11

1.7 SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR REDEVELOPMENT PROJECTS (50% RULE).....1-15

1.8 ALTERNATIVE COMPLIANCE PROGRAM.....1-16

1.9 RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THIS MANUAL AND WQIPS.....1-18

1.10 STORM WATER REQUIREMENT APPLICABILITY TIMELINE.....1-20

1.11 PROJECT REVIEW PROCEDURES.....1-21

1.12 PDP STRUCTURAL BMP VERIFICATION.....1-22

2. PERFORMANCE STANDARDS AND CONCEPTS.....2-1

2.1 SOURCE CONTROL AND SITE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS.....2-1

 2.1.1 Performance Standards.....2-1

 2.1.2 Concepts and References.....2-3

2.2 STORM WATER POLLUTANT CONTROL REQUIREMENTS FOR PDPS.....2-5

 2.2.1 Storm Water Pollutant Control Performance Standard.....2-5

 2.2.2 Concepts and References.....2-6

2.3 HYDROMODIFICATION MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR PDPS.....2-10

 2.3.1 Hydromodification Management Performance Standards.....2-10

 2.3.2 Hydromodification Management Concepts and References.....2-12

2.4 RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PERFORMANCE STANDARDS.....2-14

3. DEVELOPMENT PROJECT PLANNING AND DESIGN.....3-1

3.1 COORDINATION BETWEEN DISCIPLINES.....3-2

3.2 GATHERING PROJECT SITE INFORMATION.....3-3

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

3.3 DEVELOPING CONCEPTUAL SITE LAYOUT AND STORM WATER CONTROL STRATEGIES.....	3-4
3.3.1 Preliminary Design Steps for All Development Projects.....	3-4
3.3.2 Evaluation of Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas.....	3-5
3.3.3 Drainage Management Areas.....	3-5
3.3.4 Developing Conceptual Storm Water Control Strategies.....	3-8
3.4 DEVELOPING COMPLETE STORM WATER MANAGEMENT DESIGN.....	3-10
3.4.1 Steps for All Development Projects.....	3-10
3.4.2 Steps for PDPs with only Pollutant Control Requirements.....	3-10
3.4.3 Steps for Projects with Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements.....	3-11
3.5 PROJECT PLANNING AND DESIGN REQUIREMENTS SPECIFIC TO CITY OF SANTEE.....	3-12
3.6 PHASED PROJECTS.....	3-13
4. SOURCE CONTROL AND SITE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS.....	4-1
4.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS (GR).....	4-1
4.2 SOURCE CONTROL (SC) BMP REQUIREMENTS.....	4-2
4.3 SITE DESIGN (SD) BMP REQUIREMENTS.....	4-4
5. STORM WATER POLLUTANT CONTROL REQUIREMENTS FOR PDPS.....	5-1
5.1 STEPS FOR SELECTING AND DESIGNING STORM WATER POLLUTANT CONTROL BMPS.....	5-1
5.2 DMAS EXCLUDED FROM DCV CALCULATION.....	5-5
5.2.1 Self-mitigating DMAs.....	5-5
5.2.2 De Minimis DMAs.....	5-6
5.2.3 Self-retaining DMAs via Qualifying Site Design BMPs.....	5-6
5.3 DCV REDUCTION THROUGH SITE DESIGN BMPS.....	5-8
5.4 EVALUATING FEASIBILITY OF STORM WATER POLLUTANT CONTROL BMP OPTIONS.....	5-9
5.4.1 Feasibility Screening for Harvest and Use Category BMPs.....	5-9
5.4.2 Feasibility Screening for Infiltration Category BMPs.....	5-9
5.5 BMP SELECTION AND DESIGN.....	5-12
5.5.1 Retention Category.....	5-13
5.5.2 Partial Retention BMP Category.....	5-15
5.5.3 Biofiltration BMP Category.....	5-16
5.5.4 Flow-thru Treatment Control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance) Category.....	5-17
5.5.5 Alternate BMPs.....	5-18
5.6 DOCUMENTING STORM WATER POLLUTANT CONTROL BMP COMPLIANCE WHEN HYDROMODIFICATION MANAGEMENT APPLIES.....	5-18
6. HYDROMODIFICATION MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR PDPS.....	6-1
6.1 HYDROMODIFICATION MANAGEMENT APPLICABILITY AND EXEMPTIONS.....	6-2
6.2 PROTECTION OF CRITICAL COARSE SEDIMENT YIELD AREAS.....	6-2
6.2.1 Verification of GLUs Onsite.....	6-3
6.2.2 Downstream Systems Sensitivity to Coarse Sediment.....	6-5
6.2.3 Optional Additional Analysis of Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas Onsite.....	6-7

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

6.2.4 Management Measures for Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas Onsite.....	6-7
6.2.5 Management Measures for Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas Offsite and Draining Through the Project.....	6-9
6.3 FLOW CONTROL FOR HYDROMODIFICATION MANAGEMENT.....	6-9
6.3.1 Point(s) of Compliance.....	6-10
6.3.2 Offsite Area Restrictions.....	6-11
6.3.3 Requirement to Control to Pre-Development (Not Pre-Project) Condition.....	6-11
6.3.4 Determining the Low Flow Threshold for Hydromodification Flow Control.....	6-12
6.3.5 Designing a Flow Control Facility.....	6-13
6.3.6 Integrating HMP Flow Control Measures with Pollutant Control BMPs.....	6-14
6.3.7 Drawdown Time.....	6-16
6.4 IN-STREAM REHABILITATION.....	6-17
7. LONG TERM OPERATION & MAINTENANCE.....	7-1
7.1 NEED FOR PERMANENT INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE.....	7-1
7.1.1 MS4 Permit Requirements.....	7-1
7.1.2 Practical Considerations.....	7-1
7.2 SUMMARY OF STEPS TO MAINTENANCE AGREEMENT.....	7-2
7.3 MAINTENANCE RESPONSIBILITY.....	7-3
7.4 LONG-TERM MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION.....	7-4
7.5 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE FREQUENCY.....	7-4
7.6 MEASURES TO CONTROL MAINTENANCE COSTS.....	7-5
7.7 MAINTENANCE INDICATORS AND ACTIONS FOR STRUCTURAL BMPs.....	7-7
7.7.1 Maintenance of Vegetated Infiltration or Filtration BMPs.....	7-7
7.7.2 Maintenance of Non-Vegetated Infiltration BMPs.....	7-8
7.7.3 Maintenance of Non-Vegetated Filtration BMPs.....	7-10
7.7.4 Maintenance of Detention BMPs.....	7-12
8. SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS.....	8-1
8.1 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENT FOR STANDARD PROJECTS.....	8-2
8.1.1 Standard Project SWQMP.....	8-2
8.2 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PDPS.....	8-2
8.2.1 PDP SWQMP.....	8-2
8.2.2 Requirements for Construction Plans.....	8-3
8.2.3 Design Changes During Construction and Project Closeout Procedures.....	8-4
8.2.4 Additional Requirements for Private Entity O&M.....	8-5

BIBLIOGRAPHY I

Appendices

Appendix A: Submittal Templates

Appendix B: Storm Water Pollutant Control Hydrologic Calculations and Sizing Methods

Appendix C: Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods for Selection and Design of Storm Water BMP's

Appendix E: BMP Design Fact Sheets

Appendix F: Biofiltration Standard and Checklist

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Appendix H: Guidance for Investigating Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas

Appendix I: Forms and Checklists

Glossary of Key Terms

Figures

FIGURE 1-1. Procedural Requirements for a Project to Identify Storm Water Requirements.....	1-3
FIGURE 1-2. Applicability of Hydromodification Management BMP Requirements.....	1-14
FIGURE 1-3. Pathways to Participating in Alternative Compliance Program.....	1-18
FIGURE 1-4. Relationship between this Manual and WQIP.....	1-20
FIGURE 3-1. Approach for Developing a Comprehensive Storm Water Management Design.....	3-1
FIGURE 3-2. DMA Delineation.....	3-6
FIGURE 3-3. Tributary Area for BMP Sizing.....	3-7
FIGURE 5-1. Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP Selection Flow Chart.....	5-2
FIGURE 5-2. Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP Selection Flow Chart.....	5-3
FIGURE 5-3. Self Mitigating Area.....	5-6
FIGURE 5-4. Self-retaining Site.....	5-8
FIGURE 5-5. Infiltration Feasibility and Desirability Screening Flow Chart.....	5-11
FIGURE 5-6. Schematic of a Typical Cistern.....	5-13
FIGURE 5-7. Schematic of a Typical Infiltration Basin.....	5-14
FIGURE 5-8. Schematic of a Typical Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMP.....	5-15
FIGURE 5-9. Schematic of a Typical Biofiltration Basin.....	5-16
FIGURE 5-10. Schematic of a Vegetated Swale.....	5-17
FIGURE 6-1. Evaluation of a Downstream System Requirements for Preservation of Coarse Sediment Supply.....	6-6

Tables

TABLE 1-1. Checklist for a Project to Identify Applicable Post-Construction Storm Water Requirements.....	1-4
TABLE 1-2. Applicability of Permanent, Post-Construction Storm Water Requirements.....	1-6
TABLE 1-3. Applicability of Manual Section for Different Project Types.....	1-11
TABLE 3-1. Applicability of Section 3.3 Sub-sections for Different Project Types.....	3-4
TABLE 3-2. Applicability of Section 3.4 Sub-sections for Different Project Types.....	3-10
TABLE 5-1. Permanent Structural BMPs for PDPs.....	5-12
TABLE 6-1. Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas.....	6-4
TABLE 7-1. Schedule for Developing O&M Plan and Agreement.....	7-3
TABLE 7-2. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Vegetated BMPs.....	7-9
TABLE 7-3. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Non-Vegetated Infiltration BMPs.....	7-10
TABLE 7-4. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Filtration BMPs.....	7-11
TABLE 7-5. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Detention BMPs.....	7-12

List of Acronyms

303(d)	Refers to Clean Water Act Section 303(d) list of impaired and threatened waters
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
BF	Biofiltration (BMP Category)
BMPs	Best Management Practices
CEQA	California Environmental Quality Act
DCV	Design Capture Volume
DMA	Drainage Management Area
ESA	Environmentally Sensitive Area
FT	Flow-thru Treatment Control BMP (BMP Category)
GLUs	Geomorphic Landscape Units
GR	General Requirements
HMP	Hydromodification Management Plan
HSPF	Hydrologic Simulation Program-FORTRAN
HU	Harvest and Use
INF	Infiltration (BMP Category)
LID	Low Impact Development
MEP	Maximum Extent Practicable
MS4	Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System
NRCS	Natural Resource Conservation Service
O&M	Operation and Maintenance
PDPs	Priority Development Projects
POC	Point of Compliance
PR	Partial Retention (BMP Category)
SC	Source Control
SCCWRP	Southern California Coastal Water Research Project
SD	Site Design
SDHM	San Diego Hydrology Model
SDRWQCB	San Diego Regional Water Quality Control Board
SIC	Standard Industrial Classification
SUSMP	Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan
SWMM	Storm Water Management Model
SWQMP	Storm Water Quality Management Plan
TN	Total Nitrogen
TSS	Total Suspended Solids
USEPA	United States Environmental Protection Agency
USGS	United States Geological Survey
WMAA	Watershed Management Area Analysis
WQIP	Water Quality Improvement Plan

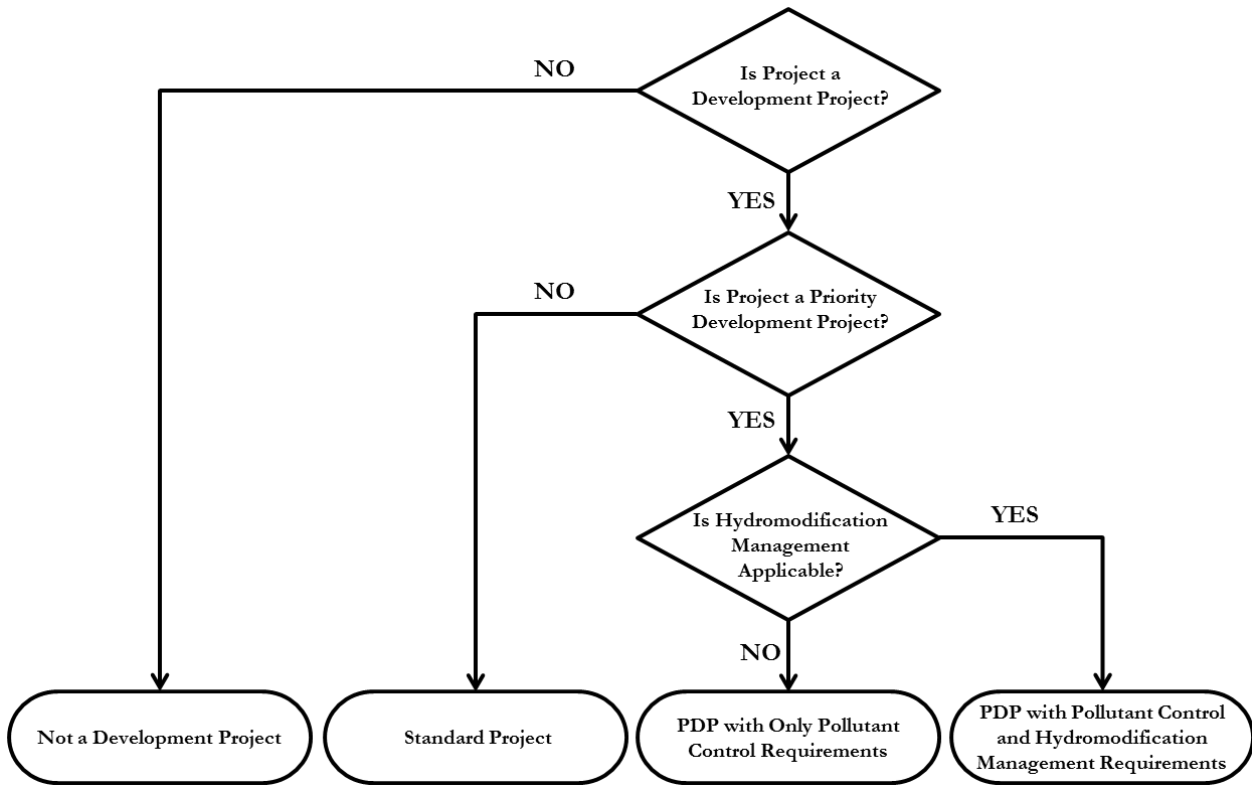
How to Use this Manual

This manual is intended to help a project applicant, in coordination with Copermittee storm water program staff, develop a Storm Water Quality Management Plant (SWQMP) for a development project (public or private) that complies with Permit requirements. Most applicants will require the assistance of a qualified civil engineer, architect, and landscape architect to prepare a SWQMP. The applicant should begin by checking specific requirements with storm water program staff, because every project is different.

Beginning Steps for All Projects: What requirements apply?

To use this manual, start by reviewing **Chapter 1** to determine whether your project is a “Standard Development Project” (SDP) or a “Priority Development Project” (PDP) and which storm water quality requirements apply to your project.

Not all of the requirements and processes described in this manual apply to all projects. Therefore, it is important to begin with a careful analysis of which requirements apply. Chapter 1 also provides an overview of the process of planning, design, construction, operation, and maintenance, with associated jurisdictional review and approval steps, leading to compliance. A flow chart that shows how to categorize a project in terms of applicable post-construction storm water requirements is included below. The flow chart is followed by a table that lists the applicable section of this manual for each project type.



Project Type	Applicable Requirements		
	Source Control and Site Design (Chapter 4)	Storm Water Pollutant Control BMPs (Chapter 5)	Hydromodification Management BMPs (Chapter 6)
Not a Development Project (without impact to storm water quality or quantity – e.g. interior remodels, routine maintenance; Refer to Section 1.3)	Requirements in this manual do not apply		
Standard Development Projects (SDPs)	X		
Priority Development Projects (PDPs) with only Pollutant Control Requirements	X	X	
PDPs with Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements	X	X	X

Once an applicant has determined which requirements apply, **Chapter 2** describes the specific performance standards associated with each requirement. For example, an applicant may learn from Chapter 1 that the project must meet storm water pollutant control requirements. Chapter 2 describes what these requirements entail. This chapter also provides background on key storm water concepts to help understand why these requirements are in place and how they can be met. Refer to the list of acronyms and glossary as guidance to understanding the meaning of key terms within the context of this manual.

Next Steps for All Projects: How should an applicant prepare a storm water project submittal?

Most projects will then proceed to **Chapter 3** to follow the step-by-step guidance to prepare a storm water project submittal for the site. This chapter does not specify any regulatory criteria beyond those already specified in Chapter 1 and 2 – rather it is intended to serve as a resource for project applicants to help navigate the task of developing a compliant storm water project submittal. Note that the first steps in Chapter 3 apply to both SDPs and PDPs; while other steps in Chapter 3 only apply to PDPs.

The use of this step-by-step approach is highly recommended because it helps ensure that the right information is collected, analyzed, and incorporated in to project plans and submittal at the appropriate time during the review process. It also helps facilitate a common framework for discussion between the applicant and the reviewer. Since all projects are different, it may be appropriate to use a different approach or format with approval from the City, and as long as the applicant demonstrates compliance with all MS4 Permit requirements that apply to the project.

Final Steps in Using This Manual: How should an applicant design BMPs and prepare documents for compliance?

Standard Projects (SDPs)	Priority Development Projects (PDPs)
<p>Proceed to Chapter 4 for guidance on implementing source control and site design requirements.</p> <p>After Chapter 4, proceed to Chapter 8 for project submittal requirements.</p>	<p>Proceed to Chapter 4 for guidance on implementing source control and site design requirements.</p> <p>PDPs will use Chapters 5 through 8 and associated Appendices to implement pollutant control requirements, and hydromodification management requirements for the project site, as applicable.</p>

Plan Ahead to Avoid Common Mistakes

The following list identifies some common errors made by applicants that delay or compromise development approvals with respect to storm water compliance.

- **Poor Planning:** The strategy for storm water quality compliance should be considered before completing a conceptual site design or sketching a layout of project site or subdivision lots (see Chapter 3). Planning early is crucial under current requirements compared to previous requirements; for example, LID/Site Design is required for all development projects and onsite retention of storm water runoff is required for PDPs. Additionally, collection of necessary information early in the planning process (e.g. geotechnical conditions, groundwater conditions) can help avoid delays resulting from redesign.
- **One Size Does NOT Fit All:** Assuming proprietary storm water treatment facilities will be adequate for compliance and/or relying on strategies acceptable under previous MS4 Permits may not be sufficient to meet compliance. Under the MS4 Permit, the standard for pollutant control for PDPs is **retention of the 85th percentile storm volume** (see Chapter 5). Flow-thru treatment cannot be used to satisfy permit requirements unless the project also participates in an alternate compliance program. Under some conditions, certain proprietary BMPs may be classified as “biofiltration” according to Appendix F of this manual and can be used for primary compliance with storm water pollutant treatment requirements (i.e. without alternative compliance).
- **Long Term Operations and Maintenance (O&M):** Not planning for on-going inspections and maintenance of structural BMPs in perpetuity. It is essential to secure a funding mechanism for long term O&M of all BMPs; select structural BMPs that can be effectively operated and maintained by the ultimate property owner; and, include design measures to ensure access for maintenance and to control maintenance costs (see Chapter 7).

Bibliography

- ASTM International.. 2009. ASTM Standard D3385-09. Retrieved from <http://www.astm.org/Standards/D3385.htm>
- Breuer, L., Eckhardt, K, and Frede, H. 2003. Plant Parameter Values for Models in Temperate Climates. *Ecological Modelling*. 169:237-293. November.
- California Department of Water Resources. 1947. Evaporation from Water Surfaces in California, A Summary of Pan Records and Coefficients, 1881 to 1946. Bulletin No. 54. California State Printing Office.
- California Department of Water Resources. 2012. California Irrigation Management Information System Reference Evapotranspiration Zones.
- Caltrans. 1986. Method for Determining the Percolation Rate of Soil Using a 6-inch-diameter Test Hole. California Test 750. http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/esc/sdsee/wwe/documents/Test_750.pdf
- Cedergren, H.R. 1997. Seepage, drainage, and flow nets, third ed. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York.
- Cities and County of Riverside. 2012. Water Quality Management Plan for the Santa Margarita Region of Riverside County.
- City of Los Angeles. 2011. Development Best Management Practices Handbook. Low Impact Development Manual.
- City of Portland. 2008. Storm water Management Manual
- City of San Diego. 2011. Guidelines for Geotechnical Reports.
- City of San Diego. 2011. San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual.
- City of San Diego. 2012. Storm Water Standards.
- City of Santa Barbara. 2013. Storm Water BMP Guidance Manual.
- Clear Creek Solutions, Inc. 2012. San Diego Hydrology Model User Manual.
- County of Los Angeles Department of Public Works. 2014. Low Impact Development, Standards Manual.
- County of Orange. 2011. Model Water Quality Management Plan (Model WQMP).
- County of Orange. 2011. Technical Guidance Document for the Preparation of Conceptual/Preliminary and/or Project Water Quality Management Plans (WQMPs).
- County of San Bernardino. 1992. Suitability of Lots and Soils for Use of Leachlines or Seepage Pits, Soil Percolation (PERC) Test Report Standards, Onsite Waste Water Disposal System, August 1992.

Bibliography

- County of San Diego. 2007. Low Impact Development Handbook: Stormwater Management Strategies.
- County of San Diego. 2011. Final Hydromodification Management Plan
- County of San Diego. 2012. County of San Diego SUSMP: Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan Requirements for Development Applications.
- County of San Diego. 2014. Low Impact Development Handbook: Stormwater Management Strategies.
- County of San Diego. 2003. Stormwater Standards Manual.
- County of Ventura. 2011. Ventura County Technical Guidance Manual for Stormwater Quality Control Measures.
- Darcy, H, 1856. Les fontaines publiques de la Ville de Dijon (The public fountains of the City of Dijon). Trans. Patricia Bobeck. Paris: Dalmont. (Kendall/Hunt, 2004) 506 p
- Double Ring Infiltrometer Test (ASTM 3385)-ASTM International. 2009.
- Emerson, C. 2008. Evaluation of Infiltration Practices as a Means to Control Stormwater Runoff. Civil and Environmental Engineering. Villanova University.
- Emerson, C.H. 2008. Evaluation of Infiltration Practices as a Means to Control Stormwater Runoff. Doctoral dissertation, Villanova University. May 2008.
- Galli, J. 1992. Analysis of urban stormwater BMP performance and longevity in Prince George's County, Maryland. Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, D.C.
- Gobel, P. et al. 2004. Near-Natural Stormwater Management and its Effects on the Water Budget and Groundwater Surface in Urban Areas Taking Account of the Hydrogeological Conditions. *Journal of Hydrology* 299, 267-283.
- Gulliver, J., Erickson, A., and Weiss, P. 2010. Optimizing Stormwater Treatment Practices: A Handbook of Assessment and Maintenance.
- Hazen, A. 1892. Some Physical Properties of Sands And Gravels, With Special Reference To Their Use In Filtration. 24th Annual Rep., Massachusetts State Board of Health, Pub. Doc. No. 34, 539-556.
- Hazen, A. 1911. Discussion of Dams On Sand Foundations' by A.C. Koenig. Trans. Am. Soc. Civ. Eng., 73, 199-203
- Hazen, A., 1892. Some Physical Properties of Sands and Gravels, With Special Reference to their Use in Filtration. 24th Annual Rep., Massachusetts State Board of Health, Pub. Doc. No. 34, 539-556.
- Hazen, A., 1911. Discussion of Dams on Sand Foundations' by A.C. Koenig. Trans. Am. Soc. Civ. Eng., 73, 199-203

Bibliography

- King County Department of Natural Resources and Parks. 2009. King County, Washington Surface Water Design Manual. Retrieved from <http://your.kingcounty.gov/dnrp/library/water-and-land/stormwater/surface-water-design-manual/SWDM-2009.pdf>
- Lindsey, G., L. Roberts, and W. Page. 1991. Storm Water Management Infiltration. Maryland Department of the Environment, Sediment and Storm Water Administration.
- Lindsey, P. and Bassuk, N. 1991. Specifying Soil Volumes to Meet the Water Needs of Mature Urban Street Trees and Trees in Containers. *Journal of Arboriculture* 17(6): 141-149.
- Minnesota Pollution Control Agency (MPCA). (n.d.). Minnesota Stormwater Manual. Retrieved October 2014 from:
http://stormwater.pca.state.mn.us/index.php/Calculating_credits_for_tree_trenches_and_tree_boxes
- Orange County Watersheds Protection Program. 2011. Project-Specific Alternatives to the Interim Sizing Tool.
- Philips C. and W. Kitch 2011. A review of methods for characterization of site infiltration with design recommendations. California State Polytechnic University-Pomona.
http://www.csupomona.edu/~wakitch/arts/Philips_&_Kitch_2011.pdf
- Phillips, E., and Kitch, W. 2011. A Review of Methods for Characterization of Site Infiltration with Design Recommendations. *Journal of the Nevada Water Resources Association*, Summer 2011, Vol. 6, No. 1, pp. 29-46.
- Pitt, R., Chen, S., Clark, S., Lantrip, J., and C. Ong. 2008. Compaction's Impacts on Urban Stormwater Infiltration, *J. Irr. and Drainage Eng.*, January 2008.
- Pitt, R., Chen, S., Clark, S., Swenson, J., and Ong, C. 2008. "Compaction's Impacts on Urban Stormwater Infiltration." *J. Irrig. Drain Eng.* 134, SPECIAL ISSUE: Urban Storm-Water Management, 652–658.
- Riverside County. 2011. Riverside County - Low Impact Development BMP Design Handbook – Appendix A – Infiltration Testing
http://rcflood.org/downloads/NPDES/Documents/LIDManual/Appendix%20A_Infiltration_Testing.pdf
- Riverside County Copermittees. 2014. Santa Margarita Region Hydromodification Management Plan.
- Riverside County Flood Control and Water Conservation District. 2011. Design Handbook for Low Impact Development Best Management Practices.
- Riverside County Percolation Test (2011), California Test 750 (1986), San Bernardino County Percolation Test (1992); USEPA Falling Head Test (1980).
- Rossmann, Lewis A. 2010. Storm Water Management Model User's Manual Version 5.0. EPA/600/R-05/040.
- San Diego County Copermittees. 2002. Model Standard Urban Storm Water Mitigation Plan for San Diego County, Port of San Diego, and Cities in San Diego County.

- San Diego County Copermittees, 2011. Countywide Model SUSMP
- San Diego County Copermittees. 2012. San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology
- San Diego County Copermittees. 2014. San Diego County Regional Watershed Management Area Analysis
- San Diego County Copermittees. 2008. Countywide Model SUSMP.
- SCCWRP. 2010. Hydromodification Screening Tools: Field Manual for Assessing Channel Susceptibility. Brian P. Bledsoe; Robert J. Hawley; Eric D. Stein; Derek B. Booth. Technical Report 606.
- SCCWRP. 2012. Hydromodification Assessment and Management in California. Eric D. Stein; Felicia Federico; Derek B. Booth; Brian P. Bledsoe; Chris Bowles; Zan Rubin; G. Mathias Kondolf and Ashmita Sengupta. Technical Report 667.
- Schwab, G., Fangmeier, D., Elliot, W., and Frevert, R. 1993. Soil and Water Conservation Engineering. Fourth Edition. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
- Scurlock, J., Asner, G., and Gower, S. 2001. Global Leaf Area Index from Field Measurements, 1932-2000. Data set. Available on-line [<http://www.daac.ornl.gov>] from Oak Ridge National Laboratory Distributed Active Archive Center, Oak Ridge, Tennessee, U.S.A. doi:10.3334/ORNLDAAC/584.
- U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation. 1990. "Procedure for Performing Field Permeability Testing by the Well Permeameter Method (USBR 7300-89)" in Earth Manual, Part 2. Materials Engineering Branch Research and Laboratory Services Division, Denver, Colorado.
- U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation. 1993. Drainage Manual: A Water Resources Technical Publication. Retrieved from http://www.usbr.gov/pmts/wquality_land/DrainMan.pdf
- United States Environmental Protection Agency. 2000. BASINS Technical Note 6 – Estimating Hydrology and Hydraulic Parameters for HSPF. EPA-823-R00-012.
- Urban Drainage and Flood Control District, Denver, CO. (2010). Urban Storm Drainage Criteria Manual. Volume 3, Best Management Practices.
- US Department of Interior Bureau of Reclamation. 1993. Drainage Design Manual.
- USEPA. 1980. Onsite Wastewater Treatment and Disposal Systems (EPA No. 625/1-80-012). Retrieved from nepis.epa.gov/Exe/ZyPURL.cgi?Dockey=300043XO.txt
- USEPA. 1999. Preliminary data summary of urban storm water best management practices. EPA-821-R-99-012, U. S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.
- Washington Department of Ecology. 2012. Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington.

Bibliography

Washington State Department of Ecology. 2012. Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington - Volume 3: Hydrologic Analysis and Flow Control BMPs. Retrieved from <https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/summarypages/1210030.html>

Policies and Procedural Requirements

This chapter introduces storm water policies and is intended to help categorize a project and determine the applicable storm water requirements and options for compliance. This chapter also introduces the procedural requirements for preparation, review, and approval of project submittals.

1.1 Introduction to Storm Water Management Policies

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.a-c; E.3.d.(1)

Storm water management requirements for development projects are derived from the MS4 Permit and implemented by local jurisdictions.

On May 8, 2013, the California Regional Water Quality Control Board San Diego Region (referred to as “San Diego Water Board”) reissued a municipal storm water permit titled “National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System Permit and Waste Discharge Requirements for Discharges from the MS4s draining the watersheds within the San Diego Region” (Order No. R9-2013-0001; referred to as MS4 Permit) to the municipal Copermittees. The MS4 Permit was issued by the San Diego Water Board pursuant to section 402 of the federal Clean Water Act and implementing regulations (Code of Federal Regulations Title 40, Part 122) adopted by the United States Environmental Protection Agency, and Chapter 5.5, Division 7 of the California Water Code. The MS4 Permit, in part, requires each Copermittee to use its land use and planning authority to implement a development planning program to control and reduce the discharge of pollutants in storm water from new development and significant redevelopment to the maximum extent practicable (MEP). MEP is defined in the MS4 Permit.

Different requirements apply to different project types.

The MS4 Permit requires all development projects to implement source control and site design practices that will minimize the generation of pollutants. While all development projects are required to implement source control and site design/LID practices, the MS4 Permit has additional requirements for development projects that exceed size thresholds and/or fit under specific use categories. These projects, referred to as PDPs, are also required to incorporate structural BMPs into the project plan to reduce the discharge of pollutants, and to address potential hydromodification impacts from changes in flow and sediment supply.

1.2 Purpose and Use of the Manual

This manual presents a “unified BMP design approach.”

To assist the land development community, streamline project reviews, and maximize cost-effective environmental benefits, the Copermittees have developed a unified BMP design approach¹ that meets the performance standards specified in the MS4 Permit. By following the process outlined in this manual, project applicants (for both private and public developments) can develop a single integrated design that complies with the complex and overlapping MS4 Permit source control and site design requirements, storm water pollutant control requirements (i.e. water quality), and hydromodification management (flow-control and sediment supply) requirements. Figure 1-1 presents a flow chart of the decision process that should be used to:

1. Categorize a project;
2. Determine storm water requirements; and
3. Understand how to submit projects for review and verification.

This figure also indicates where specific procedural steps associated with this process are addressed in Chapter 1.

Alternative BMP design approaches that meet applicable performance standards may also be acceptable.

Applicants may choose not to use the unified BMP design approach present in this manual, in which case they will need to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the City, in their submittal, compliance with applicable performance standards. These performance standards are described in **Chapter 2** and in Section E.3.c of the MS4 Permit.

¹ The term “unified BMP design approach” refers to the standardized process for site and watershed investigation, BMP selection, BMP sizing, and BMP design that is outlined and described in this manual with associated appendices and templates. This approach is considered to be “unified” because it represents a pathway for compliance with the MS4 Permit requirements that is anticipated to be reasonably consistent across the local jurisdictions in San Diego County. In contrast, applicants may choose to take an alternative approach where they demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Copermittee, in their submittal, compliance with applicable performance standards without necessarily following the process identified in this manual.

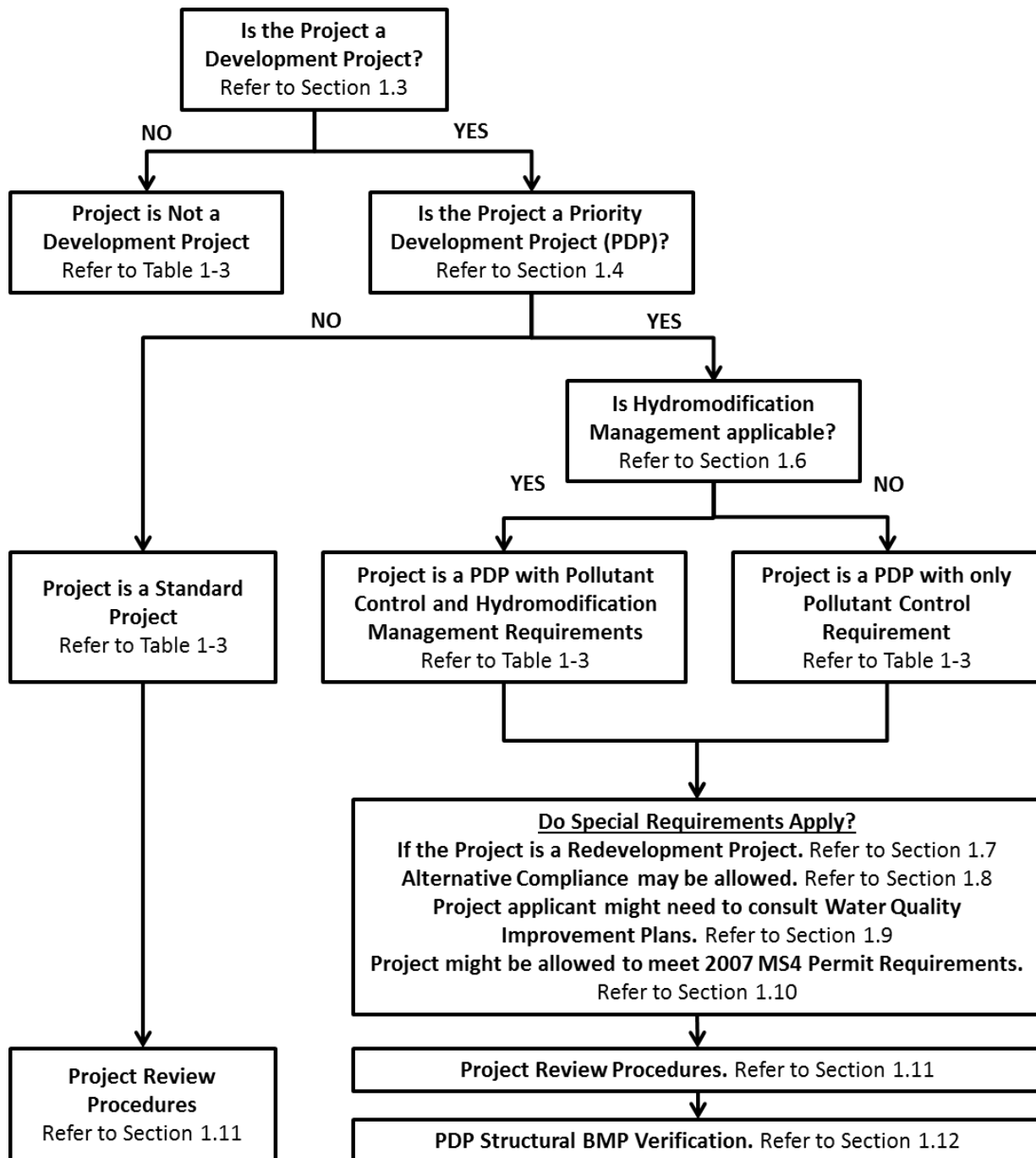


FIGURE 1-1. Procedural Requirements for a Project to Identify Storm Water Requirements

1.2.1 Determining Applicability of Permanent BMP Requirements

The following Table 1-1 reiterates the procedural requirements indicated in Figure 1-1 in a step-wise checklist format. The purpose of Table 1-1 is to guide applicants to appropriate sections in Chapter 1 to identify the post-construction storm water requirements applicable for a project. Table 1-1 is not a project intake form. A checklist of permanent, post-construction storm water BMP requirements which is also used as the project intake form is provided in Appendix I-1.

Chapter 1: Policies and Procedural Requirements

TABLE 1-1. Checklist for a Project to Identify Applicable Post-Construction Storm Water Requirements

<p>Step 1. Is the project a Development Project?</p> <p>See Section 1.3 for guidance. A phase of a project can also be categorized as a development project. If “Yes” then continue to Step 2. If “No” then stop here; Permanent BMP requirements do not apply i.e. requirements in this manual are not applicable to the project.</p>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No
<p>Step 2. Is the project a PDP?</p>		
<p>Step 2a. Does the project fit one of the PDP definitions a-f?</p> <p>See Section 1.4.1 for guidance. If “Yes” then continue to Step 2b. If “No” then stop here; <u>only</u> Standard Project requirements apply.</p>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No
<p>Step 2b. Does the project qualify for requiring meeting 2007 MS4 Permit requirements?</p> <p>See Section 1.10 for guidance. If “Yes” then continue to Step 2c. If “No” then go to Step 2d.</p>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No
<p>Step 2c. Does the project fit one of the PDP definitions in the 2007 MS4 Permit?</p> <p>See SDRWQCB Order No. R9-2007-0001, Provision D.1.d. If “Yes” then continue to Step 2d. If “No” then stop here; Standard Project requirements apply.</p>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No
<p>Step 2d. Do one of the exceptions to PDP definitions in this manual apply to the project?</p> <p>See Section 1.4.3 for guidance. If “Yes” then stop here; Standard Project requirements apply, along with additional requirements that qualify the project for the exception. If “No” then continue to Step 3; the project is a PDP.</p>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No
<p>Step 3. Is the Project Subject to Earlier PDP Requirements Due to a Prior Lawful Approval?</p> <p>See Section 1.10 for guidance. If “Yes” then you may follow the structural BMP requirements, including any hydromodification management exemptions, found in the earlier version of the SUSMP Model manual for the jurisdiction. If “No” then continue to Step 4.</p>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No
<p>Step 4. Do Hydromodification Control Requirements Apply?</p> <p>See Section 1.6 for guidance. If “Yes” then continue to Step 4a. If “No” then stop here; PDP with only pollutant control requirements, apply to the project.</p>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No
<p>Step 4a. Does Protection of Coarse Sediment Supply Areas Apply?</p> <p>See Section 1.6 for guidance. If “Yes” then stop here; PDP with pollutant control and hydromodification management requirements and requirements to protect coarse sediment supply areas, apply to the project. If “No” then stop here; PDP with pollutant control and hydromodification management requirements, but exclusive of requirements to protect coarse sediment supply areas, apply to the project.</p>	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No

1.2.2 Determine Applicability of Construction BMP Requirements

All projects are required to implement temporary erosion, sediment, good housekeeping and pollution prevention BMPs to mitigate storm water pollutants during the construction phase. See the City of Santee's Guidelines for Surface Water Pollution Prevention for detailed information on these requirements. Storm water requirements will directly affect the layout of the project. Therefore storm water requirements must be considered from the initial project planning phases, and will be reviewed with each submittal, beginning with the first submittal.

1.3 Defining a Project

Not all site improvements are considered "development projects" under the MS4 Permit.

This manual is intended for new development and redevelopment projects, inclusive of both private- and public funded projects. Development projects are defined by the MS4 Permit as "construction, rehabilitation, redevelopment, or reconstruction of any public or private projects". Development projects are issued local permits to allow construction activities. To further clarify, this manual applies only to development or redevelopment activities that have the potential to contact storm water and contribute an anthropogenic source of pollutants, or reduce the natural absorption and infiltration abilities of the land.

A project must be defined consistent with the California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA) definitions of "project."

CEQA defines a project as: a discretionary action being undertaken by a public agency that would have a direct or reasonably foreseeable indirect impact on the physical environment. This includes actions by the agency, financing and grants, and permits, licenses, plans, regulations or other entitlements granted by the agency. CEQA requires that the project include "the whole of the action" before the agency. This requirement precludes "piece-mealing," which is the improper (and often artificial) separation of a project into smaller parts in order to avoid preparing EIR-level documentation.

In the context of this manual, the "project" is the "whole of the action" which has the potential for adding or replacing or resulting in the addition or replacement of, roofs, pavement, or other impervious surfaces and thereby resulting in increased flows and storm water pollutants. "Whole of the action" means the project may not be segmented or phased into small parts either onsite or offsite if the effect is to reduce the quantity of impervious area and fall below thresholds for applicability of storm water requirements.

When defining the project, the following questions are considered:

- What are the project activities?
- Do they occur onsite or offsite?
- What are the limits of the project (project boundary)?
- What is the whole of the action associated with the project (i.e. what is the total amount of new or replaced impervious area considering all of the collective project components through all phases of the project)?

Chapter 1: Policies and Procedural Requirements

- Are any facilities or agreements to build facilities offsite in conjunction with providing service to the project (street widening, utilities)?

Table 1-2 is used to determine whether storm water management requirements defined in the MS4 Permit and presented in this manual apply to the project.

If a project meets one of the exemptions in Table 1-2 then permanent BMP requirements do not apply to the project (i.e. requirements in this manual are not applicable). If permanent BMP requirements apply to a project, Sections 1.4 to 1.7 will further define the extent of the applicable requirements based on the MS4 Permit. The MS4 Permit contains standard requirements that are applicable to all projects (SDPs and PDPs), and more specific requirements for projects that are classified as PDPs.

TABLE 1-2. Applicability of Permanent, Post-Construction Storm Water Requirements

Do permanent storm water requirements apply to your project?
<i>These requirements DO NOT apply to:</i>
Replacement of impervious surfaces that are part of a routine maintenance activity, such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Replacing roof material on an existing building• Rebuilding a structure to original design after damage from earthquake, fire or similar disasters• Restoring pavement or other surface materials affected by trenches from utility work• Resurfacing existing roads and parking lots, including slurry, overlay and restriping• Routine replacement of damaged pavement, including full depth replacement, if the sole purpose is to repair the damage• Constructing new sidewalk, pedestrian ramps or bike lanes on existing roads (within existing street right-of-way)• Restoring a historic building to its original historic design
Repair or improvements to an existing building or structure that do not alter the size: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Plumbing, electrical and HVAC work• Interior alterations including major interior remodels and tenant build-out within an existing commercial building• Exterior alterations that do not change the general dimensions and structural framing of the building (does not include building additions or projects where the existing building is demolished)

1.4 Is the Project a PDP?

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.b.(1)

PDP categories are defined by the MS4 Permit, however, PDP categories can be expanded by local jurisdictions, and local jurisdictions can offer specific exemptions from PDP categories.

Section 1.4.1 presents the PDP categories defined in the MS4 Permit. Section 1.4.2 presents additional PDP categories and/or expanded PDP definitions that apply to the City of Santee. Section 1.4.3 presents specific local exemptions.

1.4.1 PDP Categories

In the MS4 Permit, PDP categories are defined based on project size, type and design features.

Projects shall be classified as PDPs if they are in one or more of the PDP categories presented in the MS4 Permit, which are listed below. Review each category, defined in (a) through (f), below. A PDP applicability checklist for these categories is also provided in Appendix I-2. If any of the categories match the project, then the entire project is a PDP. For example, if a project feature such as a parking lot falls into a PDP category, then the entire development footprint including project components that otherwise would not have been designated a PDP on their own (such as other impervious components that did not meet PDP size thresholds, and/or landscaped areas), shall be subject to PDP requirements. Note that size thresholds for impervious surface created or replaced vary based on land use, land characteristics, and whether the project is a new development or redevelopment project. Therefore, all definitions must be reviewed carefully. Also, note that categories are defined by the total quantity of “added or replaced” impervious surface, not the net change in impervious surface.

For example, consider a redevelopment project that adds 7,500 square feet of new impervious surface and removes 4,000 square feet of existing impervious surface. The project has a net increase of 3,500 square feet of impervious surface. However, the project is still classified as a PDP because the total added or replaced impervious surface is 7,500 square feet, which is greater than the threshold of 5,000 square feet.

"Collectively", for the purposes of the manual, means that all contiguous and non-contiguous parts of the project that represent the whole of the action; these parts must be summed up. For example, consider a residential development project that will include the following impervious components:

- 3,600 square feet of roadway
- 350 square feet of sidewalk
- 4,800 square feet of roofs
- 1,200 square feet of driveways
- 500 square feet of walkways/porches

The collective impervious area is 10,450 square feet.

Chapter 1: Policies and Procedural Requirements

PDP Categories defined by the MS4 Permit:

- (a) New development projects that create 10,000 square feet or more of impervious surfaces (collectively over the entire project site). This includes commercial, industrial, residential, mixed-use, and public development projects on public or private land.
- (b) Redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site on an existing site of 10,000 square feet or more of impervious surfaces). This includes commercial, industrial, residential, mixed-use, and public development projects on public or private land.
- (c) New and redevelopment projects that create 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site), and support one or more of the following uses:
 - (i) Restaurants. This category is defined as a facility that sells prepared foods and drinks for consumption, including stationary lunch counters and refreshment stands selling prepared foods and drinks for immediate consumption (Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) code 5812).

Information and an SIC search function are available at <https://www.osha.gov/pls/imis/sicsearch.html>.
 - (ii) Hillside development projects. This category includes development on any natural slope that is twenty-five percent or greater.
 - (iii) Parking lots. This category is defined as a land area or facility for the temporary parking or storage of motor vehicles used personally, for business, or for commerce.
 - (iv) Streets, roads, highways, freeways, and driveways. This category is defined as any paved impervious surface used for the transportation of automobiles, trucks, motorcycles, and other vehicles.
- (d) New or redevelopment projects that create or replace 2,500 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site), and discharging directly to an Environmentally Sensitive Area (ESA). “Discharging directly to” includes flow that is conveyed overland a distance of 200 feet or less from the project to the ESA, or conveyed in a pipe or open channel any distance as an isolated flow from the project to the ESA (i.e. not commingled with flows from adjacent lands).



Note: For projects adjacent to an ESA, but not discharging to an ESA, the 2,500 sq-ft threshold does not apply as long as the project does not physically disturb the ESA and the ESA is upstream of the project.

- (e) New development projects that support one or more of the following uses:
 - (i) Automotive repair shops. This category is defined as a facility that is categorized in any one of the following SIC codes: 5013, 5014, 5541, 7532-7534, or 7536-7539.

Chapter 1: Policies and Procedural Requirements

Information and an SIC search function are available at <https://www.osha.gov/pls/imis/sicsearch.html>.

- (ii) Retail gasoline outlets. This category includes Retail gasoline outlets that meet the following criteria: (a) 5,000 square feet or more or (b) a projected Average Daily Traffic of 100 or more vehicles per day.
- (f) New or redevelopment projects that result in the disturbance of one or more acres of land and are expected to generate pollutants post construction.

Exclusions that apply to this category only: Projects creating less than 5,000 sf of impervious surface and where any added landscaping does not require regular use of pesticides and fertilizers, such as a slope stabilization project using native plants, are excluded from this category. Calculation of the square footage of impervious surface need not include linear pathways that are for infrequent vehicle use, such as for emergency or maintenance access or for bicycle or pedestrian use, if they are built with pervious surfaces or if they sheet flow to surrounding pervious surfaces. See Section 1.4.2 for additional guidance.

Area that may be excluded from impervious area calculations when determining if the project is a PDP:

- (a) Consistent with Table 1-2, areas of a project that are considered exempt from storm water requirements (e.g. routine maintenance activities, resurfacing, etc.) shall not be included as part of “added or replaced” impervious surface in determining project classification.
- (b) Swimming pools and decorative ponds with adequate freeboard or an overflow structure that does not release overflow to the MS4.

Redevelopment projects may have special considerations with regards to the total area required to be treated. Refer to Section 1.7.

1.4.2 Local Additional PDP Categories and/or Expanded PDP Definitions

As defined within the City of Santee’s Jurisdictional Runoff Management Plan, the City of Santee contains the following ESAs:

- Clark Canyon
- Forester Creek
- San Diego River
- Sycamore Canyon
- Sycamore Canyon, Unnamed Tributary (2)

A map of Environmentally Sensitive Areas within Santee may be found on page 1-4 of the JRMP which is located at www.santeh2o.org.

1.4.3 Local PDP Exemptions or Alternative PDP Requirements

The Permit provides each Copermittee the discretion to exempt certain projects from being defined as PDPs, or to apply alternative PDP requirements for the following types of projects. At the discretion of the City Engineer, the following exemptions may be considered:

- New or retrofit paved sidewalks, bicycle lanes, or trails that meet the following criteria:
- Designed and constructed to direct storm water runoff to adjacent vegetated areas, or other non-erodible permeable areas; OR
- Designed and constructed to be hydraulically disconnected from paved streets or roads; OR
- Designed and constructed with permeable pavements or surfaces in accordance with USEPA Green Streets guidance ["Managing Wet Weather with Green Infrastructure – Municipal Handbook: Green Streets" (USEPA, 2008)].
- Retrofitting or redevelopment of existing paved alleys, streets or roads that are designed and constructed in accordance with the USEPA Green Streets guidance ["Managing Wet Weather with Green Infrastructure – Municipal Handbook: Green Streets" (USEPA, 2008)].

Note: Source control and site design storm water requirements are applicable to all projects, and will still apply even if a project is exempt from PDP requirements (i.e. a project that has been exempted from PDP requirements will be a Standard Development Project subject to Standard Project requirements).

1.5 Determining Applicable Storm Water Management Requirements

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(1)

Depending on project type and receiving water, different storm water management requirements apply.

New development or redevelopment projects that are subject to this manual pursuant to Section 1.3, but are not classified as PDPs based on Section 1.4, are called "Standard Development Projects" (SDPs). Source control and site design requirements apply to all projects; additional structural BMP requirements (i.e. pollutant control and hydromodification management) apply only to PDPs. Storm water management requirements for a project, and the applicable sections of this manual, are summarized in Table 1-3.

TABLE 1-3. Applicability of Manual Sections for Different Project Types

Project Type	Project Development Process (Chapter 3 and 8)	Source Control and Site Design (Section 2.1 and Chapter 4)	Structural Pollutant Control (Section 2.2 and Chapter 5 and 7)	Structural Hydromodification Management (Section 2.3, 2.4 and Chapter 6 and 7)
Not a Development Project	The requirements of this manual do not apply			
SDP	☑	☑	NA	NA
PDP with only Pollutant Control Requirements*	☑	☑	☑	NA
PDPs with Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements	☑	☑	☑	☑

* Some PDPs may be exempt from Structural Hydromodification Management BMPs, refer to Section 1.6 to determine.

1.6 Applicability of Hydromodification Management Requirements

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(2)

Hydromodification management requirements apply to PDPs only.

If the project is an SDP , hydromodification management requirements do not apply. Hydromodification management requirements apply to PDPs (both new and re-development) unless the project meets specific exemptions discussed below.

PDP exemptions from hydromodification management requirements are based on the receiving water system.

Copermittees have the discretion to exempt a PDP from hydromodification management requirements where the project discharges storm water runoff to:

- (i) Existing underground storm drains discharging directly to water storage reservoirs, lakes, enclosed embayments, or the Pacific Ocean;
- (ii) Conveyance channels whose bed and bank are concrete lined all the way from the point of discharge to water storage reservoirs, lakes, enclosed embayments, or the Pacific Ocean; or
- (iii) An area identified by the Copermittees as appropriate for an exemption by the optional WMAA incorporated into the Water Quality Improvement Plan (WQIP) pursuant to Provision B.3.b.(4) [of the MS4 permit].

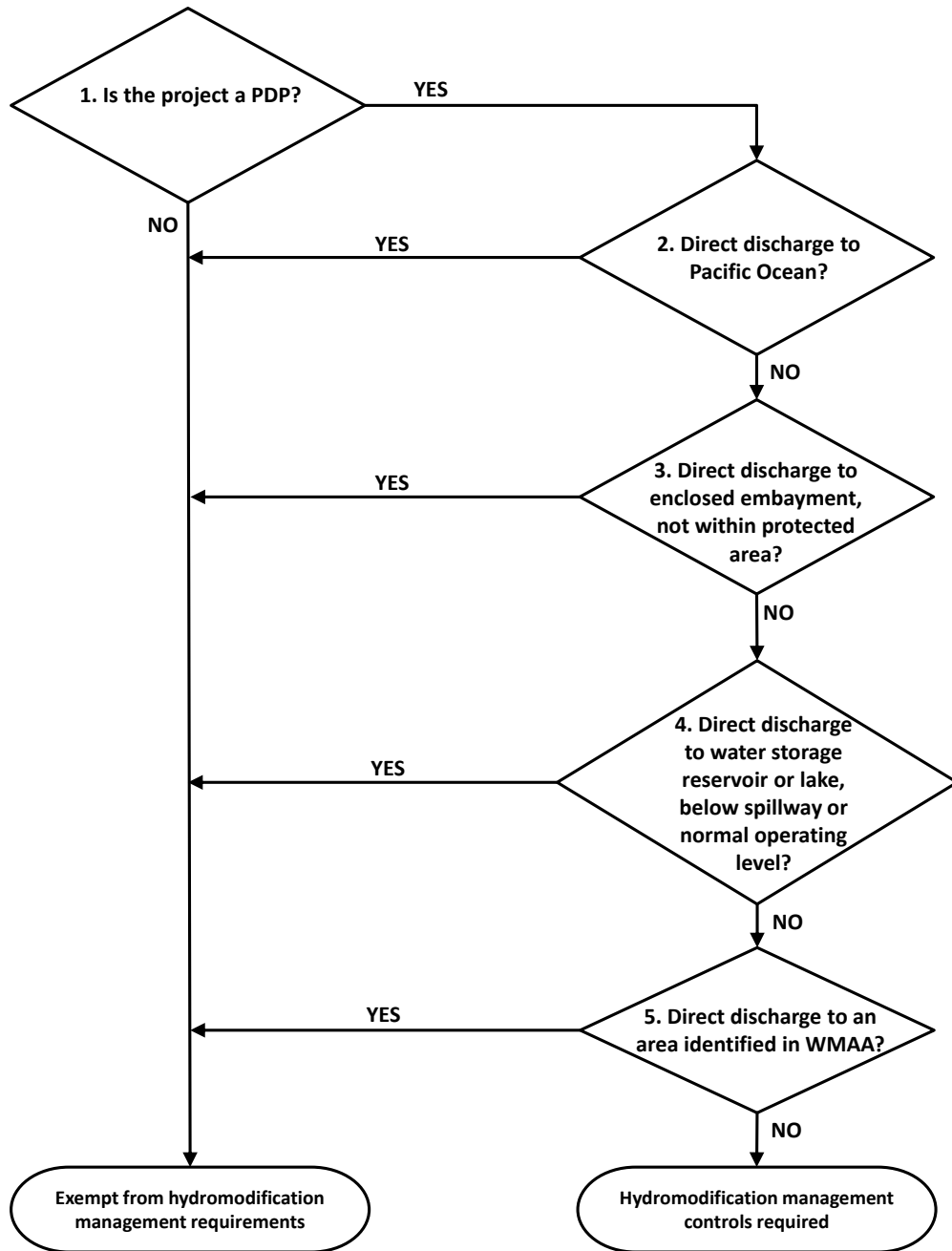
Chapter 1: Policies and Procedural Requirements

Refer to Figure 1-2 and the associated criteria describing nodes in Figure 1-2 to determine applicability of hydromodification management requirements. The criteria reflect the latest list of exemptions that are allowed under the 2013 MS4 Permit, and therefore supersede criteria found in earlier publications.

- Figure 1-2, Node 1 – Hydromodification management control measures are only required if the proposed project is a PDP.
- Figure 1-2, Node 2 – As allowed by the MS4 Permit, projects discharging directly to the Pacific Ocean, by either existing underground storm drain systems or conveyance channels whose bed and bank are concrete-lined all the way from the point of discharge to the Pacific Ocean, are exempt.
 - This exemption is subject to the following additional criteria defined by this manual:
 - a) The outfall must be located on the beach (not within or on top of a bluff),
 - b) A properly sized energy dissipation system must be provided to mitigate outlet discharge velocity from the direct discharge to the ocean for the ultimate condition peak design flow of the direct discharge,
 - c) The invert elevation of the direct discharge conveyance system (at the point of discharge to the ocean) should be equal to or below the mean high tide water surface elevation at the point of discharge, unless the outfall discharges to quay or other non-erodible shore protection.
- Figure 1-2, Node 3 – As allowed by the MS4 Permit, projects discharging directly to enclosed embayments (e.g., San Diego Bay or Mission Bay), by either existing underground storm drain systems or conveyance channels whose bed and bank are concrete-lined all the way from the point of discharge to the enclosed embayment, are exempt.
 - This exemption is subject to the following additional criteria defined by this manual:
 - a) The outfall must not be located within a wildlife refuge or reserve area (e.g., Kendall-Frost Mission Bay Marsh Reserve, San Diego Bay National Wildlife Refuge, San Diego National Wildlife Refuge),
 - b) A properly sized energy dissipation system must be provided to mitigate outlet discharge velocity from the direct discharge to the enclosed embayment for the ultimate condition peak design flow of the direct discharge,
 - c) The invert elevation of the direct discharge conveyance system (at the point of discharge to the enclosed embayment) should be equal to or below the mean high tide water surface elevation at the point of discharge, unless the outfall discharges to quay or other non-erodible shore protection.
- Figure 1-2, Node 4 – As allowed by the MS4 Permit, projects discharging directly to a water storage reservoir or lake, by either existing underground storm drain systems or conveyance channels whose bed and bank are concrete-lined all the way from the point of discharge to the water storage reservoir or lake, are exempt.
 - This exemption is subject to the following additional criteria defined by this manual:
 - a) A properly sized energy dissipation system must be provided in accordance with local design standards to mitigate outlet discharge velocity from the direct discharge to the water storage reservoir or lake for the ultimate condition peak design flow of the direct discharge,

Chapter 1: Policies and Procedural Requirements

- b) The invert elevation of the direct discharge conveyance system (at the point of discharge to the water storage reservoir or lake) should be equal to or below the lowest normal operating water surface elevation at the point of discharge, unless the outfall discharges to quay or other non-erodible shore protection. Normal operating water surface elevation may vary by season; contact the reservoir operator to determine the elevation. For cases in which the direct discharge conveyance system outlet invert elevation is above the lowest normal operating water surface elevation but below the reservoir spillway elevation, additional analysis is required to determine if energy dissipation should be extended between the conveyance system outlet and the elevation associated with the lowest normal operating water surface level.
 - c) No exemption may be granted for conveyance system outlet invert elevations located above the reservoir spillway elevation.
- Figure 1-2, Node 5 – As allowed by the MS4 Permit, projects discharging directly to an area identified as appropriate for an exemption in the WMAA for the watershed in which the project resides, by either existing underground storm drain systems or conveyance channels whose bed and bank are concrete-lined all the way from the point of discharge to the designated area, are exempt. Consult the WMAA within the WQIP for the watershed in which the project resides to determine areas identified as appropriate for an exemption. Exemption is subject to any criteria defined within the WMAA, and criteria defined below by this manual:
 - To qualify as a direct discharge to an exempt river reach:
 - a) A properly sized energy dissipation system must be provided to mitigate outlet discharge velocity from the direct discharge to the exempt river reach for the ultimate condition peak design flow of the direct discharge,
 - b) The invert elevation of the direct discharge conveyance system (at the point of discharge to the exempt river reach) should be equal to or below the 10-year floodplain elevation. Exceptions may be made at the discretion of the City, but shall never exceed the 100-year floodplain elevation. The City may require additional analysis of the potential for erosion between the outfall and the 10-year floodplain elevation.
 - c) No exemption may be granted for conveyance system outlet invert elevations located above the 100-year floodplain elevation.



*Direct discharge refers to an uninterrupted hardened conveyance system; Note to be used in conjunction with Node Descriptions.

FIGURE 1-2. Applicability of Hydromodification Management BMP Requirements

Additional City of Santee Criteria

If applicable, identify any additional local criteria for determining a "direct discharge" to receiving water listed above, or any other local limitations to exemptions described above.

Water Storage Reservoirs and Lakes:

Water storage reservoirs and lakes within the City of Santee include:

Santee Recreational Lakes (Santee Lakes)

Areas Identified in the WMAA (Exempt River Reaches and Lagoons)

Exempt river reaches within the City of Santee include:

The San Diego River and Forrester Creek reaches within the City Limits as demonstrated in the WMAA and associated studies.

1.7 Special Considerations for Redevelopment Projects (50% Rule)

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.b.(2)

Redevelopment PDPs (PDPs on previously developed sites) may need to meet storm water management requirements for ALL impervious areas (collectively) within the ENTIRE project site.

If the project is a redevelopment project, the structural BMP performance requirements and hydromodification management requirements apply to redevelopment PDPs as follows:

- (a) Where redevelopment results in the creation or replacement of impervious surface in an amount of less than fifty percent of the surface area of the previously existing development, then the structural BMP performance requirements of Provision E.3.c [of the MS4 Permit] apply only to the creation or replacement of impervious surface, and not the entire development; or
- (b) Where redevelopment results in the creation or replacement of impervious surface in an amount of more than fifty percent of the surface area of the previously existing development, then the structural BMP performance requirements of Provision E.3.c [of the MS4 Permit] apply to the entire development.

These requirements for managing storm water on an entire redevelopment project site are commonly referred to as the "50% rule". For the purpose of calculating the ratio, the surface area of the previously existing development shall be the area of impervious surface within the previously existing development. The following steps shall be followed to estimate the area that requires treatment to satisfy the MS4 Permit requirements:

1. How much total impervious area currently exists on the site?
2. How much existing impervious area will be replaced with new impervious area?
3. How much new impervious area will be created in areas that are pervious in the existing condition?
4. Total created and/or replaced impervious surface = Step 2 + Step 3.

Chapter 1: Policies and Procedural Requirements

5. **50% rule test:** Is step 4 more than 50% of Step 1? If yes, treat all impervious surface on the site. If no, then treat only Step 4 impervious surface and any area that comingles with created and/or replaced impervious surface area.

Note: Step 2 and Step 3 must not overlap as it is fundamentally not possible for a given area to be both “replaced” and “created” at the same time. Also activities that occur as routine maintenance shall not be included in Step 2 and Step 3 calculation.

Example: a 10,000 sq. ft development proposes replacement of 4,000 sq. ft of impervious area. The treated area is less than 50% of the total development area and only the 4,000 sq. ft area is required to be treated.

1.8 Alternative Compliance Program

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(1),(b); E.3.c.(2),(c); E.3.c.(3)

PDPs may be allowed to participate in an alternative compliance program.

Copermittees have the discretion to independently develop an alternative compliance program for their jurisdiction. The alternative compliance program allows PDPs to participate in this program in lieu of meeting either the PDP structural BMP performance requirements for retention or a portion of Design Capture Volume (DCV) that is not retained onsite in conjunction with onsite mitigation.

Participation in an alternative compliance program would allow a PDP to fulfill the requirement of providing retention and/or biofiltration pollutant controls onsite that completely fulfill the performance standards specified in Chapter 5 (pollutant controls) with onsite flow-thru treatment controls and offsite mitigation of the DCV not retained onsite.

PDPs may be allowed to participate in an alternative compliance program by using onsite BMPs to treat offsite runoff. PDPs must consult the local jurisdiction manuals for specific guidelines and requirements for using onsite facilities for alternative compliance

The PDP utilizing the alternative compliance program would (at a minimum) provide flow-thru treatment control BMPs onsite, then fund, contribute to, or implement an offsite alternative compliance project deemed by the jurisdiction-specific alternative compliance program to provide a greater overall water quality benefit for the portion of the pollutants not addressed onsite through retention and/or biofiltration BMPs. Offsite alternative compliance sites must be located within the same watershed management area as the PDP. Participation in an Alternative Compliance Program may also relieve hydromodification management flow control obligations that are not provided onsite (see Chapter 6 for hydromodification management requirements). PDPs must consult the local jurisdiction for specific guidelines and requirements for participation in an Alternative Compliance Programs.

Figure 1-3 generally represents two potential pathways for participating in alternative compliance (i.e. offsite projects that supplement the PDPs onsite BMP obligations).

Chapter 1: Policies and Procedural Requirements

- The first pathway (illustrated using solid line, left side) ultimately ends at alternative compliance if the PDP cannot meet all of the onsite pollutant control obligations via retention and/or biofiltration. This pathway requires performing feasibility analysis for retention and biofiltration BMPs prior to participation in an alternative compliance project.
- The second pathway (illustrated using dashed line, right side) is a discretionary pathway along which jurisdictions may allow for PDPs to proceed directly to an alternative compliance project without demonstrating infeasibility of retention and/or biofiltration BMPs onsite.

Participation in an Alternative Compliance Program also requires onsite flow-thru treatment control BMPs.

Participation in an offsite alternative compliance project **and** the obligation to implement flow-thru treatment controls for the DCV which are not reliably retained or biofiltered onsite, are linked and cannot be separated. Therefore, if a jurisdiction either does not have an alternative compliance program or does not allow the PDP to participate in the program or propose a project-specific offsite alternative compliance project, then the PDP may **not** utilize flow-thru treatment control. The PDP should consult with the jurisdiction regarding processing requirements if this is the case.

PDPs may be required to provide temporal mitigation when participating in an alternative compliance program.

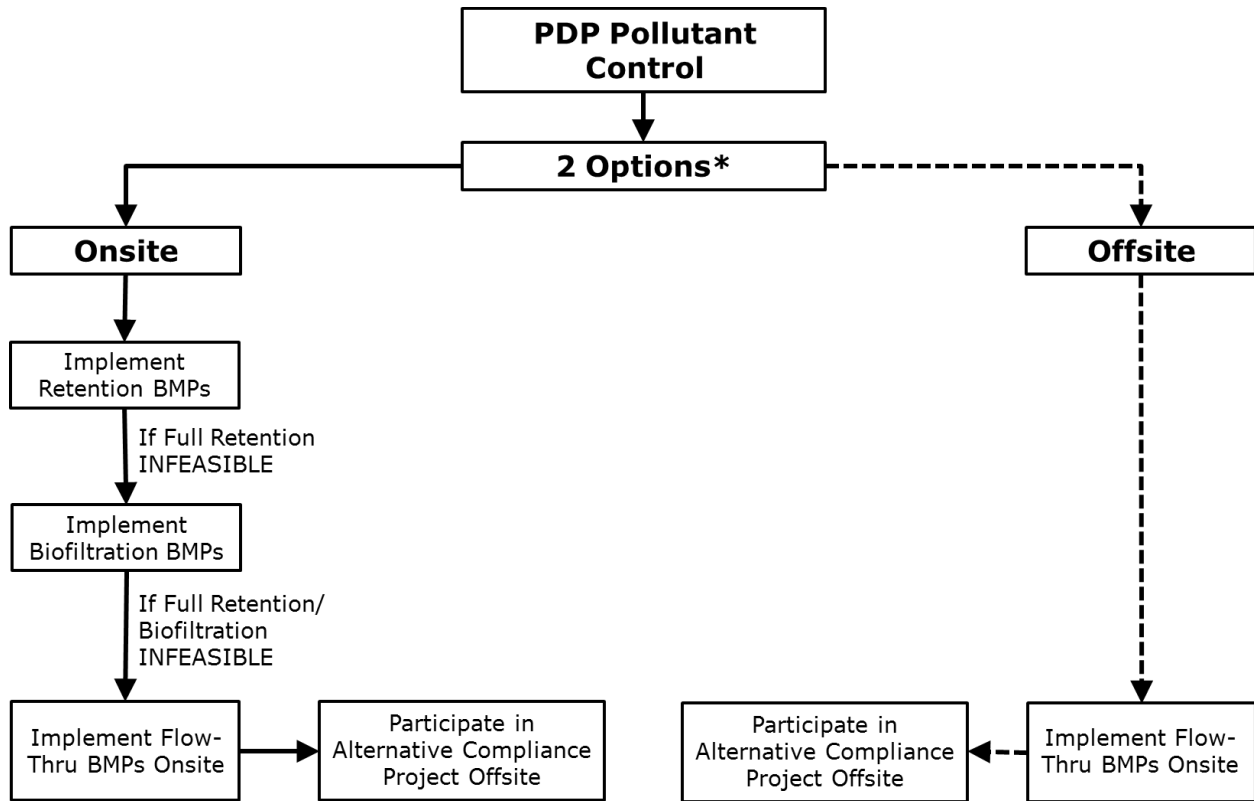
Finally, if the PDP is allowed to participate in an offsite alternative compliance project that is constructed after the completion of the development project, the PDP must provide temporal mitigation to address this interim time period. Temporal mitigation must provide equivalent or better pollutant removal and/or hydrologic control (as applicable) as compared to the case where the offsite alternative compliance project is completed at the same time as the PDP.

Regional Water Quality Equivalency Guidance

The Regional Water Quality Equivalency Guidance provides currency calculations to assess water quality and hydromodification management benefits for a variety of potential offsite project types and provides regional and technical basis for demonstrating a greater water quality benefit for the watershed.

Status of Alternative Compliance Program:

The City of Santee is open to developing an alternative compliance program and will evaluate the feasibility of establishing such a program once the Regional Water Quality Credit System is developed and approved. The City reserves the right to consider proposals to satisfy post-construction BMP requirements through an alternative to the standard onsite compliance approach. Private project developers and current or future land owners will be responsible for all expenses for preparing documentation and analysis to show how the proposed approach meets Municipal permit requirements and for all expenses related to BMP construction and long-term operation and maintenance. The City may also require the project proponent to obtain approval from the RWQCB for the proposed design before the City will approve it.



*PDP may be allowed to directly participate in an offsite project without demonstrating infeasibility of retention and/or biofiltration BMPs onsite. Consult the local jurisdiction for specific guidelines.

FIGURE 1-3. Pathways to Participating in Alternative Compliance Program

1.9 Relationship between this Manual and WQIPs

This manual is connected to other permit-specified planning efforts.

The MS4 Permit requires each Watershed Management Area within the San Diego Region to develop a **WQIP** that identifies priority and highest priority water quality conditions and strategies that will be implemented with associated goals to demonstrate progress towards addressing the conditions in the watershed. The MS4 Permit also provides an option to perform a **WMAA** as part of the WQIP to develop watershed specific requirements for structural BMP implementation in the watershed management area. PDPs should also refer to these separate documents as follows:

1. For PDPs that implement flow-thru treatment BMPs, selection of the type of BMP shall consider the pollutants and conditions of concerns. Among the selection considerations, the PDP must consult the highest priority water quality condition as identified in the WQIP for that particular watershed management area.
2. There may be watershed management area specific BMPs or strategies that are identified in WQIPs, for which PDPs should consult and incorporate as appropriate.

Chapter 1: Policies and Procedural Requirements

3. As part of the hydromodification management obligations that PDPs must comply with, PDPs shall consult the mapping of potential critical coarse sediment yield areas provided in the WMAA attachment to the WQIPs and design the project according to the procedures outlined in this manual if these sediments will be impacted by the project.
4. PDPs may be exempt from implementing hydromodification management BMPs (Chapter 6) based on the exemptions indicated in Section 1.6, and potentially from additional exemptions recommended in the WMAA attachment to the WQIPs. PDPs should consult the WMAA for recommended hydromodification management exemptions to determine if the project is eligible.
5. PDPs may have the option of participating in an alternative compliance program. Refer to Section 1.8.

The relationships between this manual and WQIP are presented in Figure 1-4.

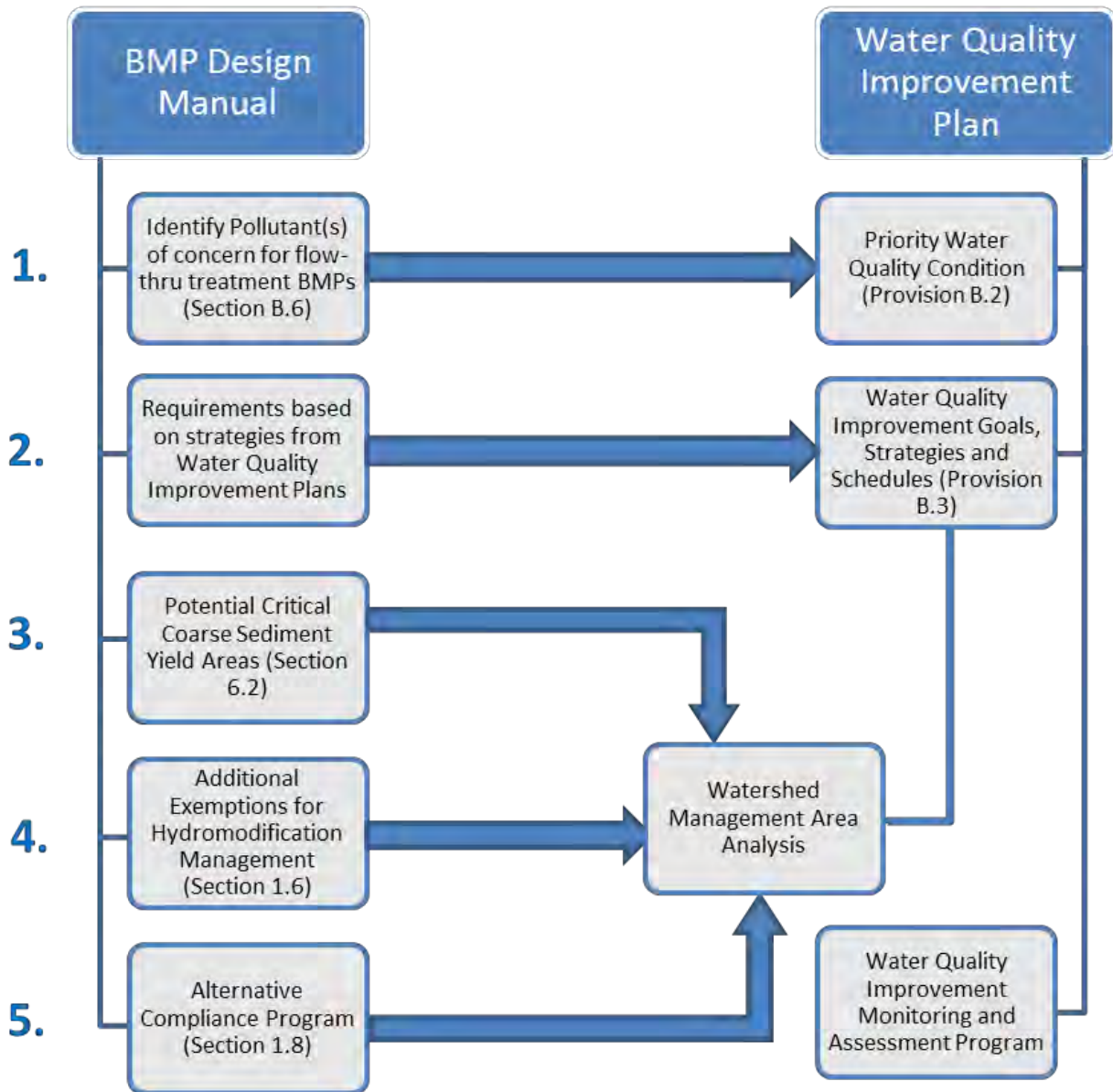


FIGURE 1-4. Relationship between this Manual and WQIP

The San Diego River WQIP can be viewed on the Reports and Plans page at: www.santech2o.org.

1.10 Storm Water Requirement Applicability Timeline

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.e.(1)(a)

For projects that have received an entitlement approval or the equivalent for public projects that meets Prior Lawful Approval requirements of the Permit before the effective date of the BMP Design Manual (February 16, 2016), the City, at its discretion, may allow PDP design requirements under the previous local SUSMP to apply.

Chapter 1: Policies and Procedural Requirements

According to the San Diego Regional Water Quality Control Board, the effective date of the BMP Design manual will be February 16, 2016. Given this, the Prior Lawful Approval (PLA) timeline to comply with the existing permit conditions (SUSMP) is as follows:

Projects can comply with the SUSMP under Order R9-2013-0001 (aka 'old') permit **IF**:

- 'Construction' activities have been confirmed to have occurred between February 16, 2015 – February 16, 2016; **OR**
- 'Construction' activities have been confirmed to have commenced between February 16, 2016 – August 13, 2016; **AND**
- All permits or approvals that are needed to implement the design that was initially approved are issued within 5 years - by February 16, 2021; **AND**
- All storm water drainage systems, including all TCBMPs and HMPs remain in substantial conformance with the 'old' permit.

1.11 Project Review Procedures

Local jurisdictions review project plans for compliance with applicable requirements of this manual and the MS4 Permit.

Specific submittal requirements for documentation of permanent, post-construction storm water BMPs may vary by jurisdiction and project type; however, in all cases the project applicant must provide sufficient documentation to demonstrate that applicable requirements of the BMP Design manual and the MS4 Permit will be met.

For SDPs, this typically means using forms and/or checklist or other equivalent documents as determined by the City. Documentation must adequately demonstrate the following general requirements of the MS4 Permit, and depict applicable features on site grading, building, improvement and landscaping plans:

- BMP Requirements for All Development Projects, which includes general requirements, source control BMP requirements, and narrative (i.e. not numerically-sized) site design requirements (MS4 Permit Provision E.3.a).

For PDPs, this typically means preparing a SWQMP to document that the following general requirements of the MS4 Permit are met, and showing applicable features on site grading and landscaping plans:

- BMP Requirements for All Development Projects, which includes general requirements for siting of permanent, post-construction BMPs, source control BMP requirements, and narrative (i.e. not numerically-sized) site design requirements (MS4 Permit Provision E.3.a);
- Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP Requirements, for numerically sized onsite structural BMPs to control pollutants in storm water (MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(1)); and

- Hydromodification Management BMP Requirements, which includes protection of critical sediment yield areas and numerically sized onsite BMPs to manage hydromodification that may be caused by storm water runoff discharged from a project (MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(2)).

1.12 PDP Structural BMP Verification

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.e.(1)



Structural BMPs must be verified by the local jurisdiction prior to project occupancy.

Pursuant to MS4 Permit Provision E.3.e.(1), each Copermittee must require and confirm the following with respect to PDPs constructed within their jurisdiction:

- (a) Each Copermittee must require and confirm that appropriate easements and ownerships are properly recorded in public records and the information is conveyed to all appropriate parties when there is a change in project or site ownership.
- (b) Each Copermittee must require and confirm that prior to occupancy and/or intended use of ANY portion of the PDP, each structural BMP is inspected to verify that it has been constructed and is operating in compliance with all of its specifications, plans, permits, ordinances, and the requirements of the MS4 Permit.

For PDPs, this means that after structural BMPs have been constructed, the City Engineer will request the project engineer (Engineer of Record) certify that each water quality site improvement for the project has been constructed in conformance with the approved storm water management documents and drawings. This certification form can be found at www.santeeh2o.org

The City will also require inspection of the structural BMPs at each significant construction stage and at completion. Following construction, the City may require an addendum to the SWQMP and As Builts to address any changes to the structural BMPs that occurred during construction and that were approved by the City Engineer. Depending on the extent of changes, the City may also require a final update to the O&M Plan. All PDPs are required to have a fully executed and recorded Facility Maintenance Agreement. The Facility Maintenance Agreement, which is recorded with the property title, will be transferred to all future owners.

Certification of structural BMPs, updates to reports, and recordation of a maintenance agreement typically occur concurrently with project closeout, but could be required sooner at the City's discretion. In all cases, it is required prior to occupancy and/or intended use of the project. Specific procedures are provided in Chapter 8 of this manual.

Performance Standards and Concepts

Projects must meet three separate performance standards, as applicable.

The MS4 Permit establishes separate performance standards for (1) source control and site design practices, (2) storm water pollutant control BMPs, and (3) hydromodification management BMPs. Chapter 1 provided guidance for determining which performance standards apply to a given project. This chapter defines these performance standards based on the MS4 Permit, and presents concepts that provide the project applicant with technical background, explains why the performance standards are important, and gives a general description of how these performance standards can be met. Detailed procedures for meeting the performance standards are presented in Chapters 4, 5, and 6.

Performance standards can be met through an integrated approach.

While three separate performance standards are defined by this manual, an overlapping set of design features can be used as part of demonstrating conformance to each standard. Further discussion of the relationship between performance standards is provided in Section 2.4.

2.1 Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

2.1.1 Performance Standards

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.a

This section defines performance standards for source control and site design practices that are applicable to all projects (regardless of project type or size; both SDPs and PDPs) when local permits are issued, including unpaved roads and flood management projects.

2.1.1.1 General Requirements

All projects shall meet the following general requirements:

- (a) Onsite BMPs must be located so as to remove pollutants from runoff prior to its discharge to any receiving waters, and as close to the source as possible;
- (b) Structural BMPs must not be constructed within waters of the United States (U.S.); and

- (c) Onsite BMPs must be designed and implemented with measures to avoid the creation of nuisance or pollution associated with vectors (e.g. mosquitos, rodents, or flies).

2.1.1.2 Source Control Requirements

Pollutant source control BMPs are features that must be implemented to address project specific sources of pollutants.

The following source control BMPs must be implemented at all development projects where applicable and technically feasible:

- (a) Prevention of illicit discharges into the MS4;
- (b) Storm drain system stenciling or signage;
- (c) Protection of outdoor material storage areas from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal;
- (d) Protection of materials stored in outdoor work areas from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal;
- (e) Protection of trash storage areas from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal; and
- (f) Use of any additional BMPs determined to be necessary by the Copermittee to minimize pollutant generation at each project.

Further guidance is provided in Section 2.1.2 and Chapter 4.

2.1.1.3 Site Design Requirements

Site design requirements are qualitative requirements that apply to the layout and design of ALL development project sites (SDPs and PDPs). Site design is critical for feasibility of storm water pollutant control BMPs.

Site design performance standards define minimum requirements for how a site must incorporate LID BMPs, including the location of BMPs and the use of integrated site design practices. The following site design practices must be implemented at all development projects, where applicable and technically feasible:

- (a) Maintenance or restoration of natural storage reservoirs and drainage corridors (including topographic depressions, areas of permeable soils, natural swales, and ephemeral and intermittent streams)¹;
- (b) Buffer zones for natural water bodies (where buffer zones are technically infeasible, require project applicant to include other buffers such as trees, access restrictions, etc.);
- (c) Conservation of natural areas within the project footprint including existing trees, other vegetation, and soils;

¹ Development projects proposing to dredge or fill materials in waters of the U.S. must obtain a Clean Water Act Section 401 Water Quality Certification prior to the City's approval of a SWQMP . Projects proposing to dredge or fill waters of the state must also obtain waste discharge requirements.

Chapter 2: Performance Standards and Concepts

- (d) Construction of streets, sidewalks, or parking lot aisles to the minimum widths necessary, provided public safety is not compromised;
- (e) Minimization of the impervious footprint of the project;
- (f) Minimization of soil compaction to landscaped areas;
- (g) Disconnection of impervious surfaces through distributed pervious areas;
- (h) Landscaped or other pervious areas designed and constructed to effectively receive and infiltrate, retain and/or treat runoff from impervious areas, prior to discharging to the MS4;
- (i) Small collection strategies located at, or as close as possible to, the source (i.e. the point where storm water initially meets the ground) to minimize the transport of runoff and pollutants to the MS4 and receiving waters;
- (j) Use of permeable materials for projects with low traffic areas and appropriate soil conditions;
- (k) Landscaping with native or drought tolerant species; and
- (l) Harvesting and using precipitation.

A key aspect of this performance standard is that these design features must be used where applicable and feasible. Responsible implementation of this performance standard depends on evaluating applicability and feasibility in concurrence with the City. Further guidance is provided in Section 2.1.2 and Chapter 4.

Additional site design requirements may apply to PDPs.

Site design decisions may influence the ability of a PDP to meet applicable performance standards for pollutant control and hydromodification management BMPs (as defined in Section 2.2 and 2.3). For example, the layout of the site drainage and reservation of areas for BMPs relative to areas of infiltrative soils may influence the feasibility of capturing and managing storm water to meet storm water pollutant control and/or hydromodification management requirements. As such, the City may require additional site design practices, beyond those listed above, to be considered and documented as part of demonstrating conformance to storm water pollutant control and hydromodification management requirements.

2.1.2 Concepts and References

Land development tends to increase the amount of pollutants in storm water runoff.

Land development generally alters the natural conditions of the land by removing vegetative cover, compacting soil, and/or by the addition of concrete, asphalt, or other impervious surfaces. These impervious surfaces facilitate entrainment of urban pollutants in storm water runoff (such as pesticides, petroleum hydrocarbons, heavy metals, and pathogens) that are otherwise not generally found in high concentrations in the runoff from the natural environment. Pollutants that accumulate on impervious surfaces and actively landscaped pervious surfaces may contribute to elevated levels of pollutants in runoff when compared to the natural condition.

Land development also impacts site hydrology.

Impervious surfaces greatly affect the natural hydrology of the land because they do not allow natural infiltration, retention, evapotranspiration and treatment of storm water runoff to take place. Instead, storm water runoff from impervious surfaces is typically and has traditionally been directed through pipes, curbs, gutters, and other hardscape into receiving waters, with little treatment, at significantly increased volumes and accelerated flow rates over what would occur naturally. The increased pollutant loads, storm water volume, discharge rates and velocities, and discharge durations from the MS4 adversely impact stream habitat by causing accelerated, unnatural erosion and scouring within creek beds and banks. Compaction of pervious areas can have a similar effect to impervious surfaces on natural hydrology.

Site Design LID involves attempting to maintain or restore the predevelopment hydrologic regime.

LID is a comprehensive land planning and engineering design approach with a goal of maintaining and enhancing the pre-development hydrologic regime of urban and developing watersheds. LID designs seeks to control storm water at the source, using small-scale integrated site design and management practices to mimic the natural hydrology of a site, retain storm water runoff by minimizing soil compaction and impervious surfaces, and disconnecting storm water runoff from conveyances to the storm drain system. Site Design LID BMPs may utilize interception, storage, evaporation, evapotranspiration, infiltration, and filtration processes to retain and/or treat pollutants in storm water before it is discharged from a site. Examples of Site Design LID BMPs include using permeable pavements, rain gardens, rain barrels, grassy swales, soil amendments, and native plants.

Site design must be considered early in the design process.

Site designs tend to be more flexible in the early stages of project planning than later on when plans become more detailed. Because of the importance of the location of BMPs, site design shall be considered during the planning/tentative design stages. Site design is critical for feasibility of storm water pollutant control BMPs (Section 2.2) as well as coarse sediment supply considerations associated with hydromodification management (introduced in Section 2.3).

Source control and site design (LID) requirements help avoid impacts by controlling pollutant sources and changes in hydrology.

Source control and site design practices prescribed by the MS4 Permit are the minimum management practices, control techniques and system, design and engineering methods to be included in the planning procedures to reduce the discharge of pollutants from development projects, regardless of size or purpose of the development. In contrast to storm water pollutant control BMPs and hydromodification control BMPs which are intended to mitigate impacts, source control and site design BMPs are intended to avoid or minimize these impacts by managing site hydrology, providing treatment features integrated within the site, and reducing or preventing the introduction of pollutants from specific sources. Implementation of site design BMPs will result in reduction in storm water runoff generated by the site. Methods to estimate effective runoff coefficients and the storm water runoff produced by the site after site design BMPs are implemented are presented in Appendix B.2. This methodology is applicable for PDPs that are required to estimate runoff produced from the site with site design BMPs implemented so that they can appropriately size storm water pollutant control BMPs and hydromodification control BMPs.

The location of BMPs matters.

The site design BMPs listed in the performance standard include practices that either prevent runoff from occurring or manage runoff as close to the source as possible. This helps create a more hydrologically effective site and reduces the requirements that pollutant control and hydromodification control BMPs must meet, where required. Additionally, because sites may have spatially-variable conditions, the locations reserved for structural BMPs within the site can influence whether these BMPs can feasibly retain, treat, and/or detain storm water to comply with structural pollutant control and hydromodification control requirements. Finally, the performance standard specifies that onsite BMPs must remove pollutants from runoff prior to discharge to any receiving waters or the MS4, be located/constructed as close to the pollutant generating source as possible and must not be constructed within waters of the U.S.

The selection of BMPs also matters.

The lists of source control and site design BMPs specified in the performance standard must be used “where applicable and feasible.” This is an important concept – BMPs should be selected to meet the R9-2013-0001 permit requirements and are feasible with consideration of site conditions and project type. By using BMPs that are applicable and feasible, the project can achieve benefits of these practices, while not incurring unnecessary expenses (associated with using practices that do not apply or would not be effective) or creating undesirable conditions (for example, infiltration-related issues, vector concerns including mosquito breeding, etc.).

Methods to select and design BMPs and demonstrate compliance with source control and site design requirements are presented in Chapter 4 of this manual.

2.2 Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs

2.2.1 Storm Water Pollutant Control Performance Standard

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(1)

Storm Water Pollutant Control BMPs for PDPs shall meet the following performance standards:

- (a) Each PDP shall implement BMPs that are designed to retain (i.e. intercept, store, infiltrate, evaporate, and evapotranspire) onsite the pollutants contained in the volume of storm water runoff produced from a 24-hour, 85th percentile storm event (Design Capture Volume (DCV)). The 24-hour, 85th percentile storm event shall be based on Figure B.1-1 in Appendix B or an approved site-specific rainfall analysis.
 - (i) If it is not technically feasible to implement retention BMPs for the full DCV onsite for a PDP, then the PDP shall utilize biofiltration BMPs for the remaining volume not reliably retained. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed as described in Appendix F to have an appropriate hydraulic loading rate to maximize storm water retention and pollutant removal, as well as to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP, and must be sized to:

Chapter 2: Performance Standards and Concepts

- [a]. Treat 1.5 times the DCV not reliably retained onsite, OR
 - [b]. Treat the DCV not reliably retained onsite with a flow-thru design that has a total volume, including pore spaces and pre-filter detention volume, sized to hold at least 0.75 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite.
- (ii) If biofiltration BMPs are not technically feasible, then the PDP shall utilize flow-thru treatment control BMPs (selected and designed per Appendix B.6) to treat runoff leaving the site, AND participate in alternative compliance to mitigate for the pollutants from the DCV not reliably retained onsite pursuant to Section 2.2.1.(b). Flow-thru treatment control BMPs must be sized and designed to:
- [a]. Remove pollutants from storm water to the MEP (defined by the MS4 Permit) by following the guidance in Appendix B.6; and
 - [b]. Filter or treat either: 1) the maximum flow rate of runoff produced from a rainfall intensity of 0.2 inch of rainfall per hour, for each hour of a storm event, or, 2) the maximum flow rate of runoff produced by the 85th percentile hourly rainfall intensity (for each hour of a storm event), as determined from the local historical rainfall record, multiplied by a factor of two (both methods may be adjusted for the portion of the DCV retained onsite as described in Appendix B.6) and
 - [c]. Meet the flow-thru treatment control BMP treatment performance standard described in Appendix B.6.
- (b) With approval from the City, a PDP may be allowed to participate in an alternative compliance program in lieu of fully complying with the performance standards for storm water pollutant control BMPs onsite if an alternative compliance program is available in the jurisdiction the project is located, see Section 1.8. When an alternative compliance program is utilized:
- (i) The PDP must mitigate for the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite, and
 - (ii) Flow-thru treatment control BMPs must be implemented to treat the portion of the DCV that is not reliably retained onsite. Flow-thru treatment control BMPs must be selected and sized in accordance with Appendix B.6.
 - (iii) A PDP may be allowed to propose an alternative compliance project not identified in the WMAA of the WQIP if the requirements in Section 1.8 are met at the discretion of the City.

Demonstrations of feasibility findings and calculations to justify BMP selection and design shall be provided by the project applicant in the SWQMP or jurisdiction's equivalent document(s) to the satisfaction of the City. Methodology to demonstrate compliance with the performance standards, described above, applicable to storm water pollutant control BMPs for PDPs is detailed in Chapter 5.

2.2.2 Concepts and References

Retention BMPs are the most effective type of BMPs to reduce pollutants discharging to MS4s when they are sited and designed appropriately.

Chapter 2: Performance Standards and Concepts

Retention of the required DCV will achieve 100 percent pollutant removal efficiency (i.e. prevent pollutants from discharging directly to the MS4). Thus, retention of as much storm water onsite as technically feasible is the most effective way to reduce pollutants in storm water discharges to, and consequently from the MS4, and remove pollutants in storm water discharges from a site to the MEP.

However, in order to accrue these benefits, retention BMPs must be technically feasible and suitable for the project. Retention BMPs that fail prematurely, under-perform, or result in unintended consequences as a result of improper selection or siting, may achieve performance that is inferior to other BMP types while posing additional issues for property owners. Therefore, this manual provides criteria for evaluating feasibility and provides options for other types of BMPs to be used if retention is not technically feasible.

Biofiltration BMPs can be sized to achieve approximately the same pollutant removal as retention BMPs.

In the case where the entire DCV cannot be retained onsite because it is not technically feasible, PDPs are required to use biofiltration BMPs with the specific sizing and design criteria listed in Appendix B.5 and Appendix F. These sizing and design criteria are intended to provide a level of long term pollutant removal that is reasonably equivalent to retention of the DCV.

Flow-thru treatment BMPs are required to treat the pollutant loads in the DCV not retained or biofiltered onsite to the MEP.

If the pollutant loads from the full DCV cannot feasibly be retained or biofiltered onsite, then PDPs are required to implement flow-thru treatment control BMPs to remove the pollutants to the MEP for the portion of the DCV that could not be feasibly retained or biofiltered. Flow-thru treatment BMPs may only be implemented to address onsite storm water pollutant control requirements if coupled with an offsite alternative compliance project that mitigates for the portion of the pollutant load in the DCV not retained or biofiltered onsite.

Offsite Alternative Compliance Program may be available.

The MS4 Permit allows the City to grant PDPs permission to utilize an alternative compliance program for meeting the pollutant control performance standard. Both onsite and offsite mitigation is required when a PDP is permitted to participate in an alternative compliance program. The existence and specific parameters of an alternative compliance program are specific to each jurisdiction, if one is available (Refer to Section 1.8).

Methods to design and demonstrate compliance with storm water pollutant control BMPs are presented in Chapter 5 of this manual. Definitions and concepts that should be understood when sizing storm water pollutant control BMPs to be in compliance with the performance standards are explained below.

2.2.2.1 Best Management Practices

To minimize confusion, this manual considers all references to “facilities,” “features,” or “controls” to be incorporated into development projects as BMPs.

2.2.2.2 DCV

The MS4 Permit requires pollutants be addressed for the runoff from the 24-hour 85th percentile storm event (“DCV”) as the design standard to which PDPs must comply.

The 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event is the event that has a precipitation total greater than or equal to 85 percent of all storm events over a given period of record in a specific area or location. For example, to determine what the 85th percentile storm event is in a specific location, the following steps would be followed:

- Obtain representative precipitation data, preferably no less than 30-years period if possible.
- Divide the recorded precipitation into 24-hour precipitation totals.
- Filter out events with no measurable precipitation (less than 0.01 inches of precipitation).
- Of the remaining events, calculate the 85th percentile value (i.e. 15 percent of the storms would be greater than the number determined to be the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm).

An exhibit showing the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm depth across San Diego County and the methodology used to develop this exhibit is included in Appendix B.1.3. Guidance to estimate the DCV is presented in Appendix B.1.

2.2.2.3 Implementation of Storm Water Pollutant Control BMPs

The MS4 Permit requires that the PDP applicants proposing to meet the performance standards onsite implement storm water pollutant control BMPs in the order listed below. That is, the PDP applicant first needs to implement **all** feasible onsite retention BMPs needed to meet the storm water pollutant control BMP requirements prior to installing onsite biofiltration BMPs, and then onsite biofiltration BMPs prior to installing any onsite flow-thru treatment control BMPs.

PDPs may also be allowed to participate in an alternative compliance program. Refer to Section 1.8 for additional guidance.

Retention BMPs: Structural measures that provide retention (i.e. intercept, store, infiltrate, evaporate and evapotranspire) of storm water as part of pollutant control strategy. Examples include infiltration BMPs and cisterns, bioretention BMP’s and biofiltration with partial retention BMP’s.

Biofiltration BMPs: Structural measures that provide biofiltration of storm water as part of the pollutant control strategy. Example includes biofiltration BMP’s.

Flow-thru treatment control BMPs: Structural measures that provide flow-thru treatment as part of the pollutant control strategy. Examples include vegetated swales and media filters.

For example, if the DCV from a site is 10,000 cubic feet (ft³) and it is technically feasible to implement 2,000 ft³ of retention BMPs and 9,000 ft³ of biofiltration BMPs sized using Section 2.2.1.(a)(i)[a], **and** the jurisdiction has an alternative compliance program to satisfy the requirements of this manual, then the project applicant should:

- 1) First, design retention BMPs for 2,000 ft³.

- 2) Then complete a technical feasibility form for retention BMPs (included in Appendix C and D) demonstrating that it's only technically feasible to implement retention BMPs for 2,000 ft³.
- 3) Then design biofiltration BMPs for 9,000 ft³ (calculate equivalent volume for which the pollutants are retained = $9,000/1.5 = 6,000$ ft³).
- 4) Then complete a technical feasibility for biofiltration BMPs demonstrating that its only technically feasible to implement biofiltration BMPS for 9,000 ft³.
- 5) Estimate the DCV that could not be retained or biofiltered = $10,000$ ft³ – ($2,000$ ft³ + $6,000$ ft³) = $2,000$ ft³.
- 6) Implement flow-thru treatment control BMPs to treat the pollutants in the remaining 2,000 ft³. Refer to Appendix B.6 for guidance for designing flow-thru treatment control BMPs.
- 7) Also participate in an alternative compliance project for 2,000 ft³. Refer to Section 1.8 for additional guidance on participation in an alternative compliance program.

2.2.2.4 Technical Feasibility

MS4 Permit Requirement E.3.c.(5)

Analysis of technical feasibility is necessary to select the appropriate BMPs for a site.

PDPs are required to implement pollutant control BMPs in the order of priority in Section 2.2.2.3 based on determinations of technical feasibility. In order to assist the project applicant in selecting BMPs, this manual includes a defined process for evaluating feasibility. Conceptually, the feasibility criteria contained in this manual are intended to:

- Promote reliable and effective long term operations of BMPs by providing a BMP selection process that eliminates the use of BMPs that are not suitable for site conditions, project type or other factors;
- Minimize significant risks to property, human health, and/or environmental degradation (e.g. geotechnical stability, groundwater quality) as a result of selection of BMPs that are undesirable for a given site; and
- Describe circumstances under which regional and watershed-based strategies, as part of an approved WMAA **and** an alternative compliance program developed by the jurisdiction where the project resides, may be selected.

Steps for performing technical feasibility analyses are described in detail in Chapter 5. More specific guidance related to geotechnical investigation guidelines for feasibility of storm water infiltration and groundwater quality and water balance factors is provided in Appendices C and D, respectively.

2.2.2.5 Biofiltration BMPs

The MS4 Permit requires Biofiltration BMPs be designed to have an appropriate hydraulic loading rate to maximize storm water retention and pollutant removal, as well as to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP. Appendix F of this manual has guidance for hydraulic loading rates

and other biofiltration design criteria to meet these required goals. Appendix F also has a checklist that will need to be completed and included within the SWQMP. Guidance for sizing biofiltration BMPs is included in Chapter 5 and Appendices B.5 and F.

2.2.2.6 Flow-thru Treatment Control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance)

MS4 Permit Requirement E.3.d.2-3

The MS4 Permit requires that the flow-thru treatment control BMP selected by the PDP applicant be ranked with high or medium pollutant removal efficiency for the most significant pollutant of concern. Steps to select the flow-thru treatment control BMP include:

- Step 1: At a minimum, identify the pollutant(s) of concern by considering: a) receiving water quality; b) highest priority water quality conditions identified in the Watershed Management Areas Water Quality Improvement Plan; c) land use type of the project and pollutants associated with that land use type, and, d) pollutants expected to be present onsite
- Step 2: Identify the most significant pollutant of concern. A project could have multiple most significant pollutants of concerns and shall include the highest priority water quality condition identified in the San Diego River WQIP and pollutants expected to be presented onsite/from land use.
- Step 3: Effectiveness of the flow-thru treatment control BMP for the identified most significant pollutant of concern

Methodology for sizing flow-thru treatment control BMPs and the resources required to identify the pollutant(s) of concern and effectiveness of flow-thru treatment control BMPs are included in Chapter 5 and Appendix B.6.

2.3 Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

2.3.1 Hydromodification Management Performance Standards

MS4 Permit Provision E.3.c.(2)

This section defines performance standards for hydromodification management, including flow control of post-project storm water runoff and protection of critical sediment yield areas, that shall be met by all PDPs unless exempt from hydromodification management requirements per Section 1.6 of this manual. Each PDP shall implement onsite BMPs to manage hydromodification that may be caused by storm water runoff discharged from a project as follows:

- (a) Post-project runoff conditions (flow rates and durations) must not exceed pre-development runoff conditions by more than 10 percent (for the range of flows that result in increased potential for erosion, or degraded instream habitat downstream of PDPs).

Chapter 2: Performance Standards and Concepts

- (b)
- (i) In evaluating the range of flows that results in increased potential for erosion of natural (non-hardened) channels, the lower boundary must correspond with the critical channel flow that produces the critical shear stress that initiates channel bed movement or that erodes the toe of channel banks.
 - (ii) The Copermittees may use monitoring results collected pursuant to Provision D.1.a.(2) [of the MS4 Permit] to re-define the range of flows resulting in increased potential for erosion, or degraded instream habitat conditions, as warranted by the data.
- (c) Each PDP must avoid critical coarse sediment yield areas known to the Copermittee or identified by the optional WMAA pursuant to Provision B.3.b.(4) [of the MS4 Permit], or implement measures that allow critical coarse sediment to be discharged to receiving waters, such that there is no net impact to the receiving water.
- (d) If approved by the City, a PDP may be allowed to utilize alternative compliance under Provision E.3.c.(3) [of the MS4 Permit] in lieu of complying with the performance requirements of Provision E.3.c.(2)(a). The PDP must mitigate for the post-project runoff conditions not fully managed onsite if Provision E.3.c.(3) is utilized.

Hydromodification management requirements apply to both new development and redevelopment PDPs, except those that are exempt based on discharging to downstream channels or water bodies that are not subject to erosion, as defined in either the MS4 Permit (Provision E.3.c.(2).(d)) or the WMAA for the watershed in which the project resides. Exemptions from hydromodification management requirements are described in Section 1.6 of this manual.

For undisturbed sites, the existing condition shall be taken to be the pre-development runoff condition. For redevelopment PDPs or sites that have been previously disturbed, pre-development runoff conditions shall be approximated by applying the parameters of a pervious area rather than an impervious area to the existing site, using the existing onsite grade and assuming the infiltration characteristics of the underlying soil.

For San Diego area watersheds, the range of flows that result in increased potential for erosion or degraded instream habitat downstream of PDPs and the critical channel flow shall be based on the "Final Hydromodification Management Plan Prepared for County of San Diego, California March 2011" (herein, "March 2011 Final HMP"). For PDPs subject to hydromodification management requirements, the range of flows to control depends on the erosion susceptibility of the receiving stream and shall be:

- 0.1Q₂ to Q₁₀ for streams with high susceptibility to erosion (this is the default range of flows to control when a stream susceptibility study has not been prepared);
- 0.3Q₂ to Q₁₀ for streams with medium susceptibility to erosion and which has a stream susceptibility study prepared and approved by the City Engineer; or
- 0.5Q₂ to Q₁₀ for streams with low susceptibility to erosion and which has a stream susceptibility study prepared and approved by the City Engineer.

Tools for assessing stream susceptibility to erosion have been developed by Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP). The tools are presented in the March 2011 Final HMP and are also available through SCCWRP's website. If a PDP intends to select 0.3Q2 or 0.5Q2 threshold, the SCCWRP screening tool must be completed and submitted along with other project documentation.

The March 2011 Final HMP does not provide criteria for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas. The standard, as presented in the MS4 Permit, and shown above is: avoid critical coarse sediment yield areas or implement measures that allow critical coarse sediment to be discharged to receiving waters, such that there is no net impact to the receiving water.

Methods to demonstrate compliance with hydromodification management requirements, including protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas and flow control for post-project runoff from the project site, are presented in Chapter 6 of this manual. Hydromodification management concepts, theories, and references are described below.

2.3.2 Hydromodification Management Concepts and References

2.3.2.1 What is Hydromodification?

The MS4 Permit defines hydromodification as the change in the natural watershed hydrologic processes and runoff characteristics (i.e. interception, infiltration, overland flow, and groundwater flow) caused by urbanization or other land use changes that result in increased stream flows and sediment transport. In addition, alteration of stream and river channels, such as stream channelization, concrete lining, installation of dams and water impoundments, and excessive streambank and shoreline erosion are also considered hydromodification, due to their disruption of natural watershed hydrologic processes.

Typical impacts to natural watershed hydrologic processes and runoff characteristics resulting from new development and redevelopment include:

- Decreased interception and infiltration of rainfall at the project site due to removal of native vegetation, compaction of pervious area soils, and the addition of impervious area;
- Increased connectivity and efficiency of drainage systems serving the project site, including concentration of project-site runoff to discrete outfalls;
- Increased runoff volume, flow rate, and duration from the project site due to addition of impervious area, removal of native vegetation, and compaction of pervious area soils;
- Reduction of critical coarse sediment supply from the project site to downstream natural systems (e.g. streams) due to stabilization of developed areas, stabilization of streams, and addition of basins that trap sediment (either by design as a permanent desilting basin or storm water quality treatment basin that settles sediment, or incidentally as a peak flow management basin); and
- Interruption of critical coarse sediment transport in streams due to stream crossings such as culverts or ford crossings that incidentally slow stream flow and allow coarse sediment to

settle upstream of the crossing.

Any of these changes can result in increased potential for erosion, or degraded instream habitat downstream of PDPs. The changes to delivery of runoff to streams typically modify the timing, frequency, magnitude, and duration of both storm flows and baseflow. Changes to delivery of coarse sediment and transport of coarse sediment result in increased transport capacity and the potential for adverse channel erosion.

Note that this manual is intended for design of permanent, post-construction BMPs, therefore this discussion is focused on the permanent, post-construction effects of development. The process of construction also has impacts, such as a temporary increase in sediment load produced from surfaces exposed by vegetation removal and grading, which is often deposited within stream channels, initiating aggradation and/or channel widening. Temporary construction BMPs to mitigate the sediment delivery are outside the purview of this manual.

Channel erosion resulting from PDP storm water discharge can begin at the point where runoff is discharged to natural systems, regardless of the distance from the PDP to the natural system. It could also begin some distance downstream from the actual discharge point if the stream condition is stable at the discharge point but more susceptible to erosion at a downstream location. The March 2011 HMP defines a domain of analysis for evaluation of stream susceptibility to erosion from PDP storm water discharge.

2.3.2.2 How Can Hydromodification be Controlled?

In the big picture, watershed-scale solutions are necessary to address hydromodification. Factors causing hydromodification are watershed-wide, and all of San Diego's major watersheds include some degree of legacy hydromodification effects from existing development and existing channel modifications, which cannot be reversed by onsite measures implemented at new development and redevelopment projects alone. As recommended by SCCWRP in Technical Report 667, "Hydromodification Assessment and Management in California," dated April 2012, "management strategies should be tailored to meet the objectives, desired future conditions, and constraints of the specific channel reach being addressed," and "potential objectives for specific stream reaches may include: protect, restore, or manage as a new channel form."

Development of such management strategies and objectives for San Diego watersheds will evolve over successive MS4 Permit cycles. The current MS4 Permit requires the Copermitees to prepare WQIPs for all Watershed Management Areas within the San Diego Region. The WQIPs may include WMAAs which would assess watershed-wide hydrologic processes. These documents may be used to develop watershed-specific requirements for structural BMP implementation, including watershed-scale hydromodification management strategies.

This manual addresses development and redevelopment project-level hydromodification management measures currently required for PDPs by the MS4 Permit. Until optional watershed-specific performance recommendations or alternative compliance programs are developed, hydromodification management strategies for new development and redevelopment projects will consist of onsite measures designed to meet the performance requirements of Provisions E.3.c.(2).(a) and (b) of the MS4 Permit shown in Section 2.3.1. While development project-level measures alone will not reverse hydromodification of major streams, onsite measures are a necessary

component of a watershed-wide solution, particularly while watershed-wide management strategies are still being developed. Also, development project-level measures are necessary to protect a project's specific storm water discharge points, which are typically discharging in smaller tributaries not studied in detail in larger watershed studies. Typical measures for development projects include:

- Protecting critical coarse sediment yield areas by designing the project to avoid them or implementing measures that would allow coarse sediment to be discharged to receiving waters, such that the natural sediment supply is unaffected by the project;
- Using site design/LID measures to minimize impervious areas onsite and reduce post-project runoff; and
- Providing structural BMPs designed using continuous simulation hydrologic modeling to provide flow control of post-project runoff (e.g. BMPs that store post-project runoff and infiltrate, evaporate, harvest and use, or discharge excess runoff at a rate below the critical flow rate).

Structural BMPs for hydromodification management provide volume to control a range of flows from a fraction of Q₂ to Q₁₀. The volume determined for hydromodification management is different from the DCV for pollutant control. Methodology to demonstrate compliance with hydromodification management requirements are presented in Chapter 6 of this BMP Design manual. See Section 2.4 regarding the relationship between pollutant control and hydromodification management performance standards.

2.4 Relationship between Performance Standards

An integrated approach can provide significant cost savings by utilizing design features that meet multiple standards.

Site design/LID, storm water pollutant control, and hydromodification management are separate requirements to be addressed in development project design. Each has its own purpose and each has separate performance standards that must be met. However, effective project planning involves understanding the ways in which these standards are related and how single suites of design features can meet more than one standard.

Site design features (LID) can be effective at reducing the runoff to downstream BMPs.

Site design BMPs serve the purpose of minimizing impervious areas and therefore reducing post-project runoff, and reducing the potential transport of pollutants offsite and reducing the potential for downstream erosion caused by increased flow rates and durations. By reducing post-project runoff through site design BMPs, the amount of runoff that must be managed for pollutant control and hydromodification flow control can be reduced.

Single structural BMPs, particularly retention BMPs, can meet or contribute to both pollutant control and hydromodification management objectives.

The objective of structural BMPs for pollutant control is to reduce offsite transport of pollutants, and the objective of structural BMPs for hydromodification management is to control flow rates and durations for control of downstream erosion. In either case, the most effective structural BMP to

Chapter 2: Performance Standards and Concepts

meet the objective are BMPs that are based on retention of storm water runoff where feasible. Both storm water pollutant control and flow control for hydromodification management can be achieved within the same structural BMP(s). However, demonstrating that the separate performance requirements for pollutant control and hydromodification management are met must be shown separately.

The design process should start with an assessment of the feasibility to retain or partially retain the DCV for pollutant control, then determine what kind of BMPs will be used for pollutant control and hydromodification management.

A typical design process for a single structural BMP to meet two separate performance standards at once involves: (1) initiating the structural BMP design based on the performance standard that is expected to require the largest volume of storm water to be retained, (2) checking whether the initial design incidentally meets the second performance standard, and (3) adjusting the design as necessary until it can be demonstrated that both performance standards are met.

Chapter
3

Development Project Planning and Design

Compliance with source control/site design, pollutant control, and hydromodification management BMPs, as applicable, requires coordination of the whole project team to develop complimentary site, landscape, and project storm water plans. It also involves provisions for O&M of structural BMPs. In order to effectively comply with applicable requirements, a step-wise approach is recommended. This chapter outlines a step-wise, systematic approach to preparing a comprehensive storm water management design for SDPs and PDPs (Figure 3-1).

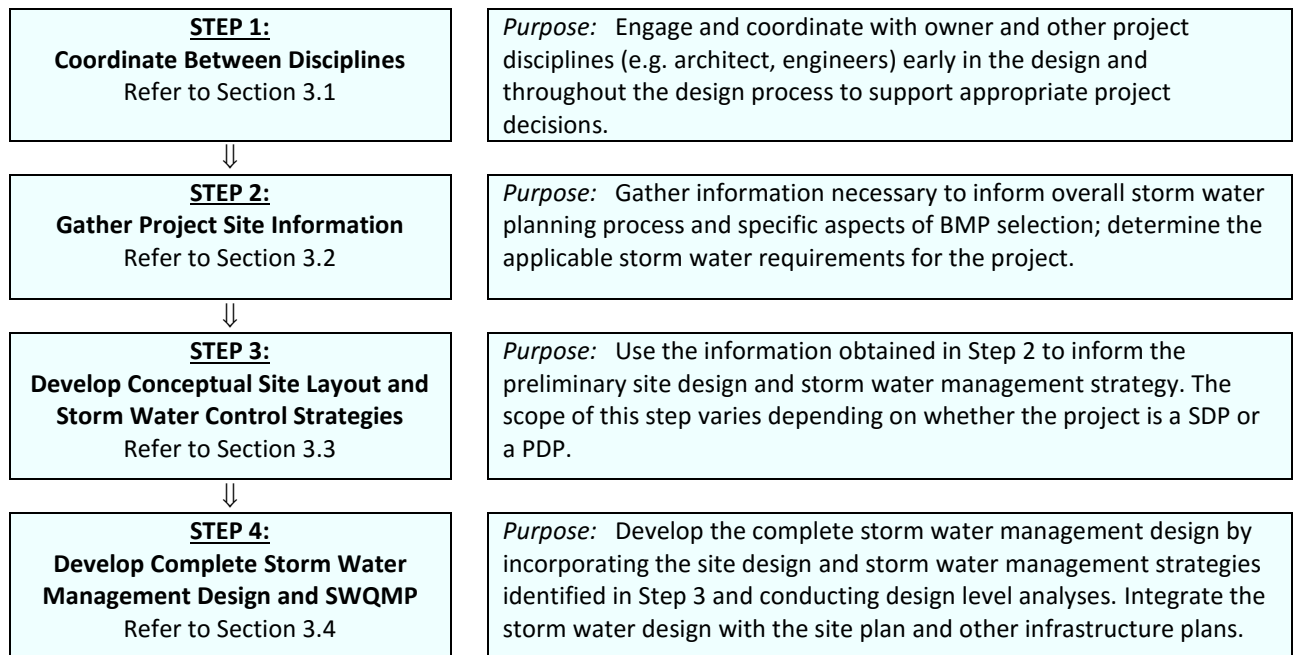


FIGURE 1-1. Approach for Developing a Comprehensive Storm Water Management Design

A step-wise approach is not mandatory, however adaptation of this step-wise approach to fit unique project features is encouraged. Taking a step-wise, systematic approach of for planning and design has a number of advantages. First, it helps ensure that applicable requirements and design goals are identified early in the process. Secondly, it helps ensure that key data about the site, watershed, and project are collected at the appropriate stage, and that the analyses are adequate for the decisions that need to be made at each phase. Third, taking a systematic approach helps identify opportunities

for retention of storm water that may not be otherwise identified. Finally, a systematic approach helps ensure that constraints and unintended consequences are considered and used to inform the optimal BMP selection and design..

Jurisdictional specific requirements are listed in Section 3.5 and requirements for phased projects are in Section 3.6.

3.1 Coordination Between Disciplines

Storm water management design requires close coordination between multiple disciplines, as storm water management design will affect the site layout and should therefore be coordinated among the project team from the start. The following list describes entities/disciplines that are typically involved with storm water management design, and the potential roles that these entities/disciplines may take.

Owner:

- Engage and coordinate the appropriate disciplines needed for the project and facilitate exchange of information between disciplines.
- Identify who will be responsible for long term O&M and financing mechanisms of all storm water management features..
- Ensure that whole lifecycle costs are considered in the selection and design of storm water management features and that a reasonable source of funding is provided for long term maintenance.
- Identify the party responsible to inspect structural BMPs at each significant construction stage and at completion in order to provide certification of structural BMPs following construction.

Planner:

- Communicate overall project planning criteria to the team, such as planned development density, parking requirements, project-specific planning conditions, conditions of approval from prior entitlement actions (e.g. CEQA, 401 certifications), etc. and locations of open space and conservation easements and environmentally sensitive areas that are protected from disturbance), etc.
- Consider location of storm water facilities early in the conceptual site layout process.
- Assist in developing the site plan.

Architect:

- Participate in siting and design (architectural elements) of storm water BMPs.

Civil Engineer:

- Determine storm water requirements applicable to the site (e.g. Standard Project vs. PDP).
- Obtain site-specific information (e.g. watershed information, infiltration rates) and develop viable storm water management options that meet project requirements.

Chapter 3: Development Project Planning and Design

- Reconcile storm water management requirements with other site requirements (e.g. utilities, fire access, Americans with Disabilities Act accessibility, parking, open space).
- Develop site layout and site design including preliminary and final design documents or plans.
- Select and design BMPs; conduct and document associated analyses; prepare BMP design sheets, details, specifications, and certifications.
- Prepare all project SWQMP submittals.

Landscape Architect and/or Horticulturist/Agronomist/Arborist:

- Select appropriate soil matrix and plants for vegetated storm water features, pollutant removal needs, BMPs, and prepare landscape planting plans.
- Develop specifications for planting, vegetation establishment, and long term maintenance.
- Assist in developing irrigation plans/rates to minimize water application, ensure irrigation is applied to intended areas only (not pavement), and implement controls to prevent non-storm water runoff from the project site.

Geotechnical Engineer

- Assist in preliminary infiltration feasibility screening of the site to help inform project layout, siting, and selection, including characterizing soil, groundwater, geotechnical hazards, utilities, and any other factors, as applicable for the site.
- Conduct detailed analyses at proposed infiltration BMP locations to confirm or revise feasibility findings and provide design infiltration rates.
- Provide recommendations for infiltration testing that must be conducted during the construction phase, if needed to confirm pre-construction infiltration estimates.

Geomorphologist and/or Geologist

- Provide specialized services, as needed, related to soils type, infiltration feasibility, presence of critical coarse sediment, channel stability, and/ or sensitivity assessment.

3.2 Gathering Project Site Information

In order to make successful decisions related to selection and design of storm water management BMPs, it is necessary to compile all relevant project and site specific information. This includes physical site information, proposed uses of the site, level of storm water management requirements (i.e.: is it a SDP or a PDP – see Figure 1-1), proposed storm water discharge locations, potential/anticipated storm water pollutants based on the proposed uses of the site, receiving water sensitivity to pollutants and susceptibility to erosion, hydromodification management requirements, and other site requirements and constraints.

Information should be gathered to the extent necessary to inform effective storm water quality management design. In some cases, it is not necessary to conduct in depth analyses to precisely characterize conditions. For example, if depth to groundwater is known to be approximately 100 feet based on regional surveys, it is not necessary to also conduct site specific assessment of depth to groundwater; because whether it is actually 90 feet or 110 feet, the difference between the values

would not influence the storm water management design. In other cases, some information will not be applicable. For example, on an existing development site, there may be no natural hydrologic features remaining, therefore these features do not need to be characterized. The lack of natural hydrologic features can be simply noted without further effort required.

Checklists (in Appendix I) and submittal templates (in Appendix A) are provided to facilitate gathering information about the project site for BMP selection and design. As part of planning for site investigation, it is helpful to review the subsequent steps (Section 3.3 and 3.4) to gain familiarity with how the site information will be used in making decisions about site layout and storm water BMP selection and design. This can help prioritize the data that are collected.

3.3 Developing Conceptual Site Layout and Storm Water Control Strategies

Once preliminary site information has been obtained, the site can be assessed for storm water management opportunities and constraints which will inform the overall site layout. Considering the project site data discussed above, it is essential to identify potential locations for storm water management features at a conceptual level during the site planning phase. Preliminary design of permanent storm water BMPs is partially influenced by whether the project is a SDP or a PDP. Table 3-1 presents the applicability of different subsections in this manual based on project type and must be used to determine which requirements apply to a given project.

TABLE 1-1. Applicability of Section 3.3 Sub-sections for Different Project Types

Project Type	Section 3.3.1	Section 3.3.2	Section 3.3.3	Section 3.3.4
SDP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	NA	NA	NA
PDP with only Pollutant Control Requirements	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	NA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
PDP with Pollutant and Hydromodification Management Requirements	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

3.3.1 Preliminary Design Steps for All Development Projects

All projects must incorporate source control and site design BMPs. The following systematic approach outlines these site planning considerations for all development projects:

- 1 Review Chapter 4 of this manual to become familiar with the minimum source control and site design practices that are required.

Chapter 3: Development Project Planning and Design

- 2 Review the preliminary site information gathered in Section 3.2, specifically related to:
 - a. Natural hydrologic features that can be preserved and/or protected;
 - b. Soil information;
 - c. General drainage patterns (i.e. general topography, points of connection to the storm drain or receiving water);
 - d. Pollutant sources that require source controls; and
 - e. Information gathered and summarized in the Site Information Checklist for Standard Projects (Appendix I-3A).
- 3 Create opportunities for source control and site design BMPs by developing an overall conceptual site layout that allocates space for site design BMPs and promotes drainage patterns that are effective for both hydrologic control and pollutant source control.
 - a. Locate pervious areas down gradient from buildings where possible to allow for dispersion.
 - b. Identify parts of the project that could be drained via overland vegetated conveyance rather than piped connections.
 - c. Develop traffic circulation patterns that are compatible with minimizing street widths.
- 4 As part of Section 3.4, refine the selection and placement of source control and site design BMPs and incorporate them into project plans. Compliance with site design and source control requirements shall be documented as described in Chapter 4.

3.3.2 Evaluation of Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas

For PDPs that are required to meet hydromodification management requirements, it must be determined whether critical coarse sediment yield areas exist within or upstream of the project site. Identification of critical coarse sediment yield areas is discussed in Chapter 6 of this manual. Conceptual layout of the project site must consider the following items:

- a. Can onsite critical coarse sediment yield areas be avoided?
- b. What measures will be necessary to ensure that the conveyance of coarse sediment from critical coarse sediment yield areas within the site is uninterrupted?
- c. If critical coarse sediment yield areas within the site are not avoided, or conveyance of critical coarse sediment will be interrupted, how will this be mitigated?
- d. If runoff from upstream, offsite critical coarse sediment yield areas will be conveyed through the project site, what measures will be necessary to ensure the conveyance of coarse sediment from offsite is uninterrupted?

3.3.3 Drainage Management Areas

Drainage management areas (DMAs) provide an important framework for feasibility screening, BMP prioritization, and storm water management system configuration. BMP selection, sizing, and

feasibility determinations must be made at the DMA level; therefore it is recommended that DMAs are delineated at the conceptual site planning phase. DMAs must be determined prior to completing the project design and meeting submittal requirements. This section provides guidance on delineating DMAs and is intended to be used as part of Section 3.3 and 3.4.

DMAs are defined based on the existing and proposed drainage patterns of the site and the BMPs to which they drain. DMAs should not overlap and should be similar with respect to BMP opportunities and feasibility constraints. More than one DMA can drain to the same BMP. However, because the BMP sizes are determined by the runoff from the DMA, a single DMA may not drain to more than one BMP. See Figure 3-2.

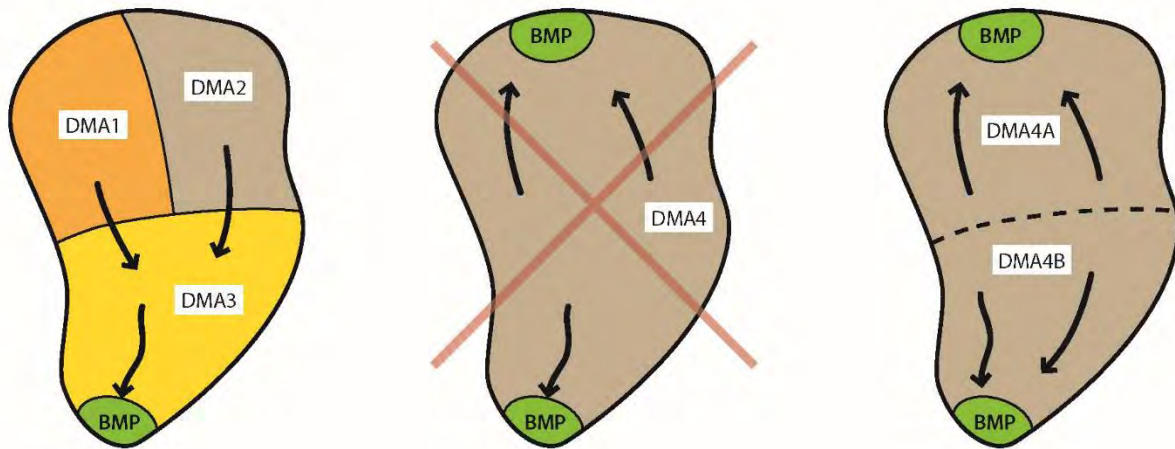


FIGURE 1-2. DMA Delineation

In early planning phases, it may be appropriate to generalize the proposed treatment plan by simply assigning a certain BMP type to an entire planning area (e.g. parking lot X will be treated with bioretention) and calculating the total sizing requirement without identifying the specific BMP locations at that time. This planning area would be later subdivided for design-level calculations. Section 5.2 provides additional guidance on DMA delineation. A runoff factor (similar to a “C” factor used in the rational method) should be used to estimate the runoff draining to the BMP. Appendix B.1 provides guidance in estimating the runoff factor for the drainage area draining to a BMP.

BMPs must be sized to treat the DCV from the total area draining to the BMP, including any offsite or onsite areas that comeingle with project runoff and drains to the BMP. To minimize offsite flows treated by project BMPs, consider diverting upgradient flows subject to local drainage and flood control regulation. An example is shown in Figure 3-3.

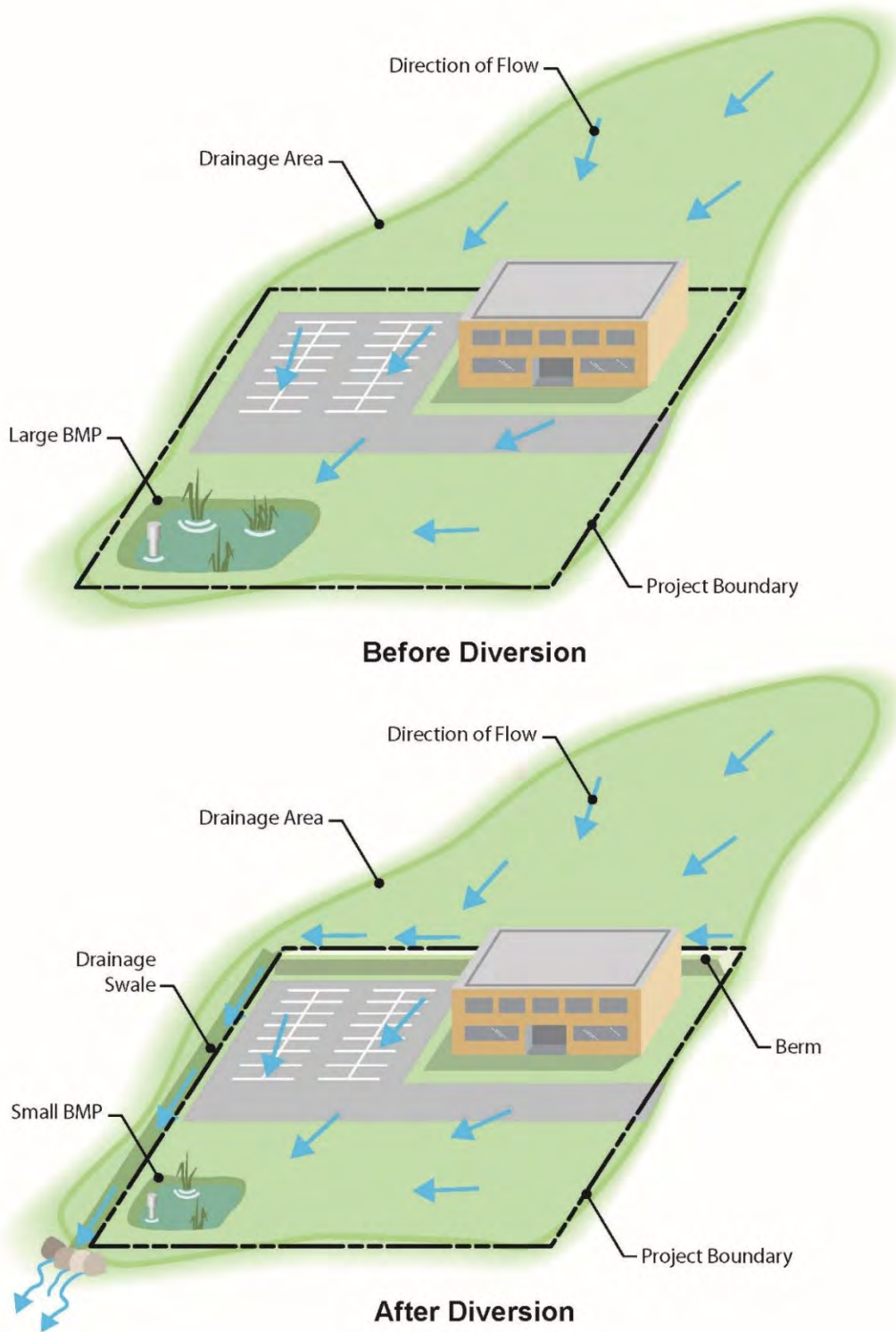


FIGURE 1-3. Tributary Area for BMP Sizing

3.3.4 Developing Conceptual Storm Water Control Strategies

This section applies to PDPs only and will guide the development and conceptual storm water control strategies that are compatible with the site conditions, including siting and preliminary selection of structural BMPs. At this phase of project planning, it is still possible for storm water considerations to influence the site layout to better accommodate storm water design requirements. The end product of this step should be a general, but concrete understanding of the storm water management parameters for each DMA, the compatibility of this approach with the site design, and preliminary estimates of BMP selection.

The following systematic approach is recommended:

1. Review the preliminary site information gathered in Section 3.2 and as summarized in the Site Information Checklist for PDPs (Appendix I-3B).
2. Identify self-mitigating, de minimis areas, and/or potential self-retaining DMAs that can be isolated from the remainder of the site (See Section 5.2).
3. Estimate DCV for each remaining DMAs (See Appendix B.1).
4. Determine if there is a potential opportunity for harvest and use of storm water from the project site. See Section 5.4.1 for harvest and use feasibility screening, which is based on water demand at the project site.
5. Estimate potential runoff reduction and the DCV that could be achieved with site design BMPs (See Section 5.3 and Appendix B.2) and harvest and use BMPs (See Appendix B.3).
6. Based on the remaining runoff after accounting for steps 2 to 5, estimate BMP space requirements. Identify applicable structural BMP requirements (i.e. storm water pollutant control versus hydromodification management) and conduct approximate sizing calculations to determine the overall amount of storage volume and/or footprint area required for each BMP. Use the worksheets presented in Appendices B.4 and B.5 to estimate sizing requirements for different types of BMPs.
7. Perform a preliminary screening of infiltration feasibility as part of site planning to identify areas that are more or less conducive to infiltration. Recommended factors to consider include:
 - a. Soil types (determined from available geotechnical testing data, soil maps, site observations, and/or other data sources)
 - b. Approximate infiltration rates at various points on the site, obtained via approximate methods (e.g. simple pit test), if practicable
 - c. Groundwater elevations
 - d. Proposed depths of fill
 - e. New or existing utilities that will remain with development
 - f. Soil or groundwater contamination within the site or in the vicinity of the site
 - g. Slopes and other potential geotechnical hazards that are unavoidable as part of site development
 - h. Safety and accessibility considerations

Chapter 3: Development Project Planning and Design

This assessment is not intended to be final or account for all potential factors. Rather, it is intended to help in identifying site opportunities and constraints as they relate to site planning. After potential BMP locations are established, a more detailed feasibility analysis is necessary (see Section 3.4 and 5.4.2). Additionally, Appendix C and D provide methods for geotechnical and groundwater assessment applicable for screening at the planning level and design-level requirements. Alternate assessment methods may be permitted with appropriate documentation and at the discretion of the City Engineer; written approval must be obtained prior to utilizing alternate methods.

8. Identify tentative BMP locations based on preliminary feasibility screening, natural opportunities for BMPs (e.g. low areas of the site, areas near storm drain or stream connections), and other BMP sites that can potentially be created through effective site design (e.g. oddly configured or otherwise unbuildable parcels, easements and landscape amenities including open space and buffers which can double as locations for bioretention or biofiltration facilities).
9. Determine tentative BMP feasibility categories for infiltration for each DMA or specific BMP location. Based on the results of feasibility screening and tentative BMP locations, determine the general feasibility categories that would apply to BMPs in these locations. Categories are described in Section 5.4.2 and include:
 - a. Full infiltration condition;
 - b. Partial infiltration condition; and
 - c. No infiltration condition.

Adapt the site layout to attempt to achieve infiltration to the greatest extent feasible.

10. Structural BMPs must be located so that they are readily accessible for maintenance from either an easement or the public right of way. When determining final placement, consider how BMPs will be accessed for both inspection and maintenance and plan for any necessary allowances (access roads, inspection openings, setbacks, etc.) and coordinate with the Department of Development Services for additional design requirements for BMPs in public easements or as part of a Community Facilities District (CFD). Some BMPs may not be suitable for maintenance by individual home owners. The use of a CFD must be proposed and approved prior to plan approval.
11. Document all site planning, feasibility, and opportunity assessment activities as a record of the decisions that led to the development of the final storm water management plan. The SWQMP primarily shows the complete design rather than the preliminary steps in the process. However, to comply with the requirements of this manual, the applicant is required to describe how storm water management objectives have been considered as early as possible in the site planning process and how opportunities to incorporate BMPs have been identified.

3.4 Developing Complete Storm Water Management Design

A complete storm water management design is attained by taking into consideration the opportunities and/or constraints identified during the site planning phase of the project and then performing the final design level analysis. This will ensure that the BMPs are integrated into the site design and infrastructure. The scope of this step varies depending on whether the project is an SDP or, PDP with only pollutant control BMP requirements, or a PDP with pollutant control and hydromodification management requirements. Table 3-2 presents the applicability of different subsections of this plan based on the project type..

TABLE 1-2. Applicability of Section 3.4 Sub-sections for Different Project Types

Project Type	Section 3.4.1	Section 3.4.2	Section 3.4.3
SDP	☑	NA	NA
PDP with only Pollutant Control Requirements	☑	☑	NA
PDP with Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements	☑	NA	☑

3.4.1 Steps for All Development Projects

SDPs need to satisfy the source control and site design requirements of Chapter 4 of this manual, and then proceed to Chapter 8 to determine submittal requirements.

1. Select, identify, and detail specific source control BMPs. See Section 4.2.
2. Select, identify, and detail specific site design BMPs. See Section 4.3.
3. Document that all applicable source control and site design BMPs have been used. See Chapter 8.

3.4.2 Steps for PDPs with only Pollutant Control Requirements

The following steps build on the steps completed as part of Section 3.3, and will support design-level detail and calculations. Instructions for selection and design of storm water pollutant treatment BMPs are provided in Chapter 5.

1. Select locations for storm water pollutant control BMPs, and delineate and characterize DMAs using information gathered during the site planning phase.
2. Conduct feasibility analysis for rain water harvest and use BMPs (Section 5.4.1).

Chapter 3: Development Project Planning and Design

3. Conduct feasibility analysis for infiltration (Section 5.4.2).
4. Based on the results of steps 2 and 3, select the BMP category that is most appropriate for the site (Section 5.5).
5. Calculate required BMP sizes and footprints (Appendix B (sizing methods) and Appendix E (design criteria).
6. Evaluate whether the required BMP footprints will fit within the site constraints; if not, then document infeasibility and move to the next step.
7. If using biofiltration BMPs, document conformance with the criteria for biofiltration BMPs found in Appendix F, including Appendix F.1, as applicable.
8. If needed, implement flow-thru treatment control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance) for the remaining DCV. See Section 5.5.4 and Appendix B.6 for additional guidance.
9. If flow-thru treatment control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance) were implemented refer to Section 1.8.
10. Prepare SWQMP which documents all site planning and opportunity assessment activities, final site layout and storm water management design (Chapter 8).
11. Define and document O&M requirements for each BMP (Chapters 7 and 8).

3.4.3 Steps for Projects with Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements

The following steps consist of refinements made to the conceptual steps completed as part of Section 3.3, accompanied by design-level detail and calculations. More detailed instruction for selection and design of storm water pollutant treatment and hydromodification control BMPs are provided in Chapter 5 and 6, respectively.

1. If critical coarse sediment yield areas were determined to exist within or upstream of the project site (Section 3.3.2) incorporate mitigation measures when applicable (Section 6.2).
2. Delineate and characterize DMAs using information gathered during the site planning phase and select locations for storm water pollutant control and hydromodification management BMPs.
3. Conduct feasibility analysis for rain water harvest and use BMPs (Section 5.4.1).
4. Conduct infiltration feasibility analysis (Section 5.4.2).
5. Based on the results of steps 3 and 4, select the BMP category for pollutant treatment BMPs that is most appropriate for the site (Section 5.5).
6. Where possible, integrate storm water pollutant treatment and hydromodification control into the project design. In many cases, the same location(s) can serve both functions (e.g. a biofiltration area that provides both pollutant control and flow control), or separate pollutant control and flow control locations may be identified (e.g. several dispersed retention areas for pollutant control, with overflow directed to a single location of additional

Chapter 3: Development Project Planning and Design

storage for flow control).

7. Calculate BMP sizing requirements for both pollutant control and flow control. See Appendix B (sizing methods) and Appendix E (design criteria).
 - a. When the same BMP will serve both pollutant and flow control functions, Section 6.3.6 of this manual provides recommendations for assessing the controlling design factor and initiating the design process.
8. Evaluate if the required BMP footprints will fit within the site considering the site constraints:
 - a. If they fit within the site, design BMPs to meet applicable sizing and design criteria. Document sizing and design separately for pollutant control and hydromodification management even when the same BMP is serving both functions.
 - b. If they do not fit the site then document infeasibility and move to the next step.
9. Implement flow-thru treatment control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance) for the remaining DCV. See Section 5.5.4 and Appendix B.6 for additional guidance.
10. If flow-thru treatment control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance) were implemented refer to Section 1.8.
11. Prepare a SWQMP documenting all site planning and opportunity assessment activities, final site layout, storm water pollutant control design and hydromodification management design. See Chapter 8.
12. Define and document O&M requirements for each BMP (Chapters 7 and 8).

3.5 Project Planning and Design Requirements Specific the City of Santee

Typically BMPs should be located within common areas, and not on private lots. Should the applicant demonstrate infeasibility, the City will consider alternative placement and financing options (such as CFDs).

When a BMP is placed on a private lot, the area of the BMP shall be clearly delineated by the placement of curbs or other methods satisfactory to the City Engineer to clearly delineate the area of the BMP.

"Offsite improvements" must be included within the total project footprint and be addressed within onsite storm water management features. Offsite improvements includes but is not limited to any new impervious areas offsite such as necessary right of way, intersection improvements, or road widening resulting from the project. Any "temporary" improvements or construction changes which may generate pollutants and excess runoff must be addressed with storm water management features.

3.6 Phased Projects

A pre-application meeting can be helpful to determine submittal requirements for phased projects. A pre-application meeting may be requested to determine submittal requirements for phased projects. Phasing of a project must be proposed and approved to the City prior to issuance of a Grading Permit. Phased projects typically require a master SWQMP addressing the project in its entirety, followed by more detailed submittals for each phase.

Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

This chapter presents the source control and site design requirements that ALL projects must meet.. Checklists I.4 for source control and I.5 for site design included in Appendix I should be used by both SDPs and PDPs to document conformance with the requirements.

4.1 General Requirements (GR)

GR-1: Onsite BMPs must be located so as to remove pollutants from runoff prior to its discharge to the storm water conveyance system and/or any receiving waters, and as close to the source as possible.

The placement of the BMP greatly affects the ability of the BMP to retain, and/or treat, the pollutants from the contributing drainage area. BMPs must remove pollutants from runoff and should be placed as close to the pollutant source as possible.

How to comply: Projects shall comply with this requirement by implementing source control (Section 4.2) and site design BMPs (Section 4.3) that are applicable to their project and site conditions.

GR-2: Structural BMPs must not be constructed within the Waters of the U.S.

Construction, operation, and maintenance of a structural BMP in a water body can negatively impact the physical, chemical, and biological integrity, as well as the beneficial uses, of the water body. However, alternative compliance opportunities involving restoration of areas within Waters of the U.S. may be identified by local jurisdictions. This opportunity would only be considered if the project is accepted into the City's Alternative Compliance Program.

How to comply: Projects shall comply with this requirement by preparing project plans that illustrate the location of all storm water BMPs and describing or depicting the location of receiving waters.

Chapter 4: Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

GR-3: Onsite BMPs must be designed and implemented with measures to prevent the creation of nuisances or pollution associated with vectors (e.g. mosquitos, rodents, or flies).

According to the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health, standing water left for over 72 hours may facilitate mosquito breeding, and create a public nuisance. Therefore, certain site design features which retain and temporarily hold water may produce mosquitoes.

How to comply: Projects shall comply with this requirement by incorporating design, construction, and maintenance principles to drain all retained water within **72 hours** and minimize any standing water to the maximum extent practicable. Design calculations shall be provided to demonstrate that the potential for standing water ponding at surface level has been addressed. For water retained in biofiltration facilities that are not accessible to mosquitoes this criteria is not applicable (i.e. water ponding within the gravel layer, water retained in the amended soil, etc.).

4.2 Source Control (SC) BMP Requirements

Source control BMPs prevent and pollutants from being introduced in storm water runoff. Everyday activities, such as recycling, trash disposal and irrigation, generate pollutants that have the potential to contribute residues which drain to the storm water conveyance system. Source control BMPs are defined as an activity that reduces the potential for storm water runoff to come into contact with pollutants. Source Control BMPs may include an administrative action, design of a structural facility, usage of alternative products, and routine operation, maintenance and inspection of an area. Where applicable and feasible, all development projects are required to implement source control BMPs. Source control BMPs (SC-1 through SC-6) are discussed below.

How to comply: Projects shall comply with this requirement by implementing source control BMPs listed in this section that are applicable to their project. Applicability shall be determined through consideration of the development project's features and anticipated pollutant sources. Appendix E provides guidance for identifying source control BMPs applicable to a project. The "Source Control BMP Checklist for All Development Projects" located in Appendix I-4 shall be used to document compliance with source control BMP requirements.

SC-1: Prevent illegal discharges into the storm water conveyance system

Discharges of anything other than rain water to the storm water conveyance system is illegal. The only exception to this prohibition include individually permitted discharges, pursuant to a National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (such as Padre Dam Municipal Water District) and discharges resulting from emergency firefighting activities. All projects must effectively eliminate discharges of non-storm water into the storm water conveyance system. This may involve a suite of housekeeping BMPs which could include effective irrigation, dispersion of non-storm water discharges into landscaping for infiltration, and containing wash water from vehicle washing.

SC-2: Identify the storm drain system using stenciling or signage

Storm drain signs and stencils are visual reminders which are typically placed adjacent to the inlets. Posting notices regarding discharge prohibitions at storm drain inlets can prevent waste dumping, and bring awareness to the community that storm drains are connected to the river system, not a sewer system. Labeling shall be provided for all storm water conveyance system inlets and catch basins within the project area. Inlet stenciling may include concrete stamping, concrete painting,

Chapter 4: Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

placards, or other methods as approved by the City. In addition to storm drain stenciling, projects are encouraged to post interpretive signage and prohibitive language (with graphical icons) which prohibit littering or dumping at trailheads, parks, building entrances and public access points within the project area.

SC-3: Protect all outdoor material storage areas from both rainfall run-on and runoff, and wind dispersal

Materials with the potential to pollute storm water runoff shall be stored in a manner that prevents contact with rainfall and all water runoff. Any contaminated runoff shall be managed for treatment and disposal (e.g. secondary containment directed to sanitary sewer). All development projects shall incorporate the following structural or pollutant control BMPs for outdoor material storage areas, as applicable and feasible:

- Materials with the potential to contaminate storm water shall be:
 - Placed in an enclosure such as a cabinet or similar structure, or under a roof or awning that prevents contact with rainfall runoff or spillage to the storm water conveyance system; or
 - Protected by secondary containment structures such as berms, dikes, or curbs.
- The storage areas shall be paved and sufficiently impervious to contain leaks and spills, where necessary.
- The storage area shall be sloped towards a sump or another equivalent measure that is effective to contain spills.
- Runoff from downspouts/roofs shall be directed away from storage areas and toward landscaping.
- The storage area shall have a roof or awning that extends beyond the storage area to minimize collection of storm water within the secondary containment area. A manufactured storage shed may be used for small containers.

SC-4: Protect materials stored in outdoor work areas from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal

Outdoor work areas have an elevated potential for pollutant loading and spills. In addition to the requirements outlined within the Santee Municipal Code, all development projects shall include the following structural or pollutant control BMPs for any outdoor work areas with potential for pollutant generation, as applicable and feasible:

- Create an impermeable surface such as concrete or asphalt, or a prefabricated metal drip pan, depending on the size needed to protect the materials.
- Cover the area with a roof or other acceptable cover.
- Berm the perimeter of the area to prevent water from adjacent areas from flowing on to the surface of the work area.

Chapter 4: Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

- Directly connect runoff to sanitary sewer or other specialized containment system(s), as needed and where feasible. This allows the more highly concentrated pollutants from these areas to receive special treatment that removes particular constituents. Approval for this connection must be obtained from Padre Dam Municipal Water District.
- Locate the work area away from and downstream from storm drains or catch basins.

SC-5: Protect *trash storage areas* from rainfall, run-on, runoff, and wind dispersal

Storm water runoff from areas where trash is stored or disposed of can be polluted. In addition, loose trash and debris can be easily transported by water, wind, or vermin into nearby storm drain inlets, channels, and/or creeks. All development projects shall include the following structural BMPs:

- Ensure trash enclosure areas are fully contained (three walls, door, and roof).
- Provide attached lids on all trash containers to prevent wind or vermin dispersal.
- Locate storm drains away from immediate vicinity of the trash storage area and vice versa.
- Post signs on all enclosures and/or dumpsters informing users to keep lids closed and not to dispose of liquids or hazardous materials.

SC-6: Use any additional BMPs determined to be necessary by the Copermittee to minimize pollutant generation at each project site

Appendix E provides guidance on permanent controls and operational BMPs that are applicable at a project site based on potential sources of runoff pollutants at the project site. The applicant shall implement all applicable and feasible source control BMPs listed in Appendix E.

Please Note:

- Only gravel bags should be used for inlet protection. Sand bags are intended to be used to stop or redirect water.
- Dry cleaning methods should be utilized to the maximum extent feasible. If needed, minimize water use and contain all runoff. For example, use sand bags to contain water onsite, then use a device such as a ‘wet vac’ and towels to remove and properly dispose.
- Erosion controls must be implemented whenever there is a chance for erosion to occur. For example, bare soil areas, or areas with minimal plant coverage should have temporary erosion controls in place until the soil is stabilized by vegetation, mulch, rock, etc., or until permanent erosion controls are implemented.

4.3 Site Design (SD) BMP Requirements

Site design BMPs (also referred to as LID BMPs) are intended to reduce the rate and volume of storm water runoff and associated pollutant loads. Site design BMPs include minimizing surface soil compaction, reducing impervious surfaces, and/or providing flow pathways that are “disconnected” from the storm drain system, such as by routing flow over pervious surfaces. Site design BMPs may incorporate interception, storage, evaporation, evapotranspiration, infiltration, and/or filtration processes to retain and/or treat pollutants in storm water before it is discharged from a site.



To enhance a site's ability to support source control and reduce runoff, the conservation and restoration of natural areas must be considered early in the site design process. By conserving or restoring the natural drainage features, natural processes are able to intercept storm water, thereby reducing the amount of runoff.

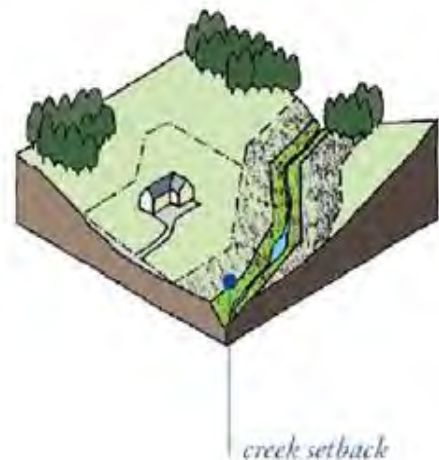
Site design BMPs shall be applied to all development projects as appropriate and practicable for the project site and project conditions. Site design BMPs are described in the following subsections.

How to comply: Projects shall comply with this requirement by using all of the site design BMPs listed in this section that are applicable and practicable to their project type and site conditions. Applicability of a given site design BMP shall be determined based on project type, soil conditions, presence of natural features (e.g. streams), and presence of site features (e.g. parking areas). Explanation shall be provided by the applicant when a certain site design BMP is considered to be inapplicable or not practicable/feasible. Site plans shall show site design BMPs and provide adequate details necessary for effective implementation of site design BMPs. The "Site Design BMP Checklist for All Development Projects" located in Appendix I-5 shall be used to document compliance with site design BMP requirements.

SD-1: Maintain natural drainage pathways and hydrologic features

- Maintain or restore natural storage reservoirs and drainage corridors (including topographic depressions, areas of permeable soils, natural swales, and ephemeral and intermittent streams)
- Buffer zones for natural water bodies (where buffer zones are technically infeasible, a project applicant must include other buffers such as trees, access restrictions, etc.)

During the site assessment, natural drainages must be identified along with their connection to creeks and/or streams, if any. Natural drainages offer a benefit to storm water management as the soils and habitat already function as a natural filtering/infiltrating swale. When determining the development footprint of the site, altering natural drainages should be avoided. By providing a development envelope set back from natural drainages, the drainage can retain some water quality benefits to the watershed. In some situations, site constraints, regulations, economics, or other factors may not allow avoidance of drainages and sensitive areas. Projects proposing to dredge or fill materials in Waters of the U.S. (as defined by the EPA) must obtain a Clean Water Act, Section 401 Permit and Water Quality Certification. Projects proposing to dredge or fill waters of the State must obtain a Waste Discharge Requirements permit. Both the 401 Certification and the Waste Discharge Requirements are administered by the San Diego Water Board. The project applicant shall consult the local jurisdiction for any other specific requirements and provide a copy of these permits or certifications to the City.



Source: County of San Diego LID Handbook

Chapter 4: Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

In addition, all projects are required to evaluate their proximity to ESAs and/or 303(d) impaired waterways and must consider site design and BMP strategies that reasonably address the ESA feature,

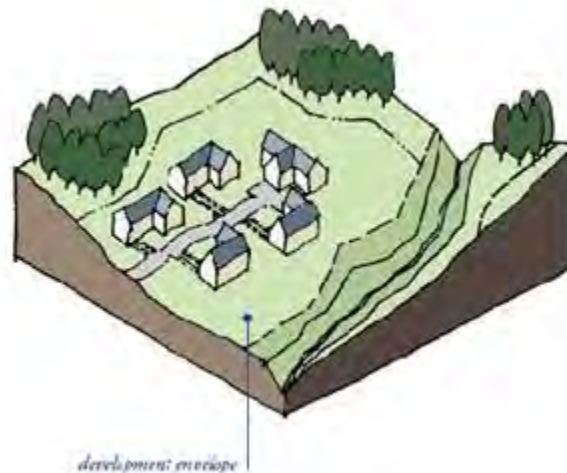
Projects can incorporate SD-1 into a project by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:

- Evaluate surface drainage and topography in considering selection of Site Design BMPs that will be most beneficial for a given project site. Where feasible, maintain topographic depressions for infiltration.
- Optimize the site layout and reduce the need for grading. Where possible, conform the site layout along natural landforms, avoid grading and disturbance of vegetation and soils, and replicate the site's natural drainage patterns. Integrating existing drainage patterns into the site plan will help maintain the site's predevelopment hydrologic function.
- Preserve existing top soils, drainage paths, and depressions, to help maintain the time of concentration and infiltration rates of runoff, and decrease peak flow.
- Structural BMPs cannot be located in buffer zones if a State and/or Federal resource agency (e.g. San Diego Water Board, California Department of Fish and Wildlife; U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, etc.) prohibits maintenance or activity in the area.

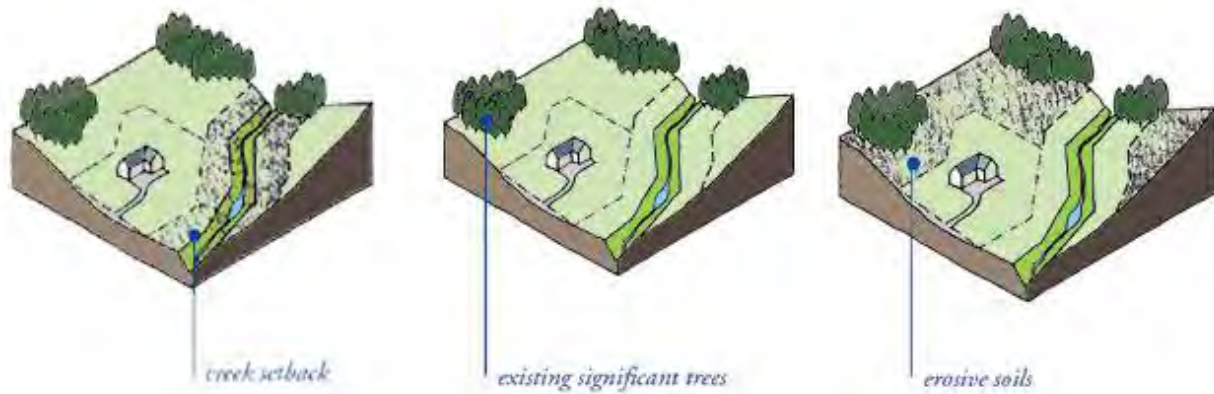
SD-2: Conserve natural areas, soils and vegetation

- Conserve natural areas within the project footprint including existing trees, vegetation, and soils

To enhance a site's ability to support source control and reduce runoff, the conservation and restoration of natural areas must be considered early in the site design process. By conserving or restoring the natural drainage features, natural processes are able to intercept storm water, thereby reducing the amount of runoff.



Chapter 4: Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects



Source: County of San Diego LID Handbook

The upper soil layers of undisturbed land contain organic material, soil biota, vegetation, and a configuration favorable for both storing and slowly conveying storm water and establishing vegetation to stabilize the site after construction. The canopy of existing native trees and shrubs also provide a water conservation benefit by intercepting rain water before it hits the ground. By minimizing disturbances in these areas, natural processes are able to intercept storm water, providing a natural water quality benefit. By keeping the development concentrated to the least environmentally sensitive areas of the site, storm water runoff is reduced, water quality can be improved, environmental impacts can be decreased, and many of the site's most attractive native landscape features can be retained. In some situations, site constraints, regulations, economics, and/or other factors may not allow avoidance of all sensitive areas on a project site. Project applicants should consult the City for project specific requirements regarding the mitigation or removal of sensitive areas.

Projects can incorporate SD-2 by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:

- Identify areas most suitable for development and areas that should be left undisturbed. Additionally, by increasing building density and increasing height, the development will disturb less land area..
- Cluster development on least-sensitive portions of a site while leaving the remaining land in a natural undisturbed condition.
- Avoid areas with thick, undisturbed vegetation. Soils in these areas have a much higher capacity to store and infiltrate runoff than disturbed soils; reestablishment of a mature vegetative community can take decades. Vegetative cover can also provide additional volume storage of rainfall by retaining water on the surfaces of leaves, branches, and trunks of trees during and after storm events.

LEAST SENSITIVE



MOST SENSITIVE

1. AREAS DEVOID OF VEGETATION, INCLUDING PREVIOUSLY GRADED AREAS AND AGRICULTURAL FIELDS
2. AREAS OF NON-NATIVE VEGETATION, DISTURBED HABITATS AND EUCALYPTUS WOODLANDS WHERE RECEIVING WATERS ARE NOT PRESENT
3. AREAS OF CHAMISE OR MIXED CHAPARRAL, AND NON-NATIVE GRASSLANDS.
4. AREAS CONTAINING COASTAL SCRUB COMMUNITIES
5. ALL OTHER UPLAND COMMUNITIES
6. OCCUPIED HABITAT OF SENSITIVE SPECIES AND ALL WETLANDS (AS BOTH ARE DEFINED BY THE LOCAL JURISDICTION)

Chapter 4: Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

- Preserve trees, especially native trees and shrubs, and identify locations for planting additional native or drought tolerant trees and large shrubs.
- Topsoil should be removed before grading and construction and replaced after the project is completed. When handled carefully, such an approach limits the disturbance to native soils and reduces the need for additional (purchased) topsoil during later phases.
- Avoid sensitive areas, such as wetlands, biological open space areas, biological mitigation sites, streams, floodplains, or particular vegetation communities, such as coastal sage scrub and intact forest. Also, avoid areas that are habitat for sensitive plants and animals, particularly those, State or federally listed as endangered, threatened, or rare. Development in these areas is often restricted by federal, state and local laws.

SD-3: Minimize impervious area

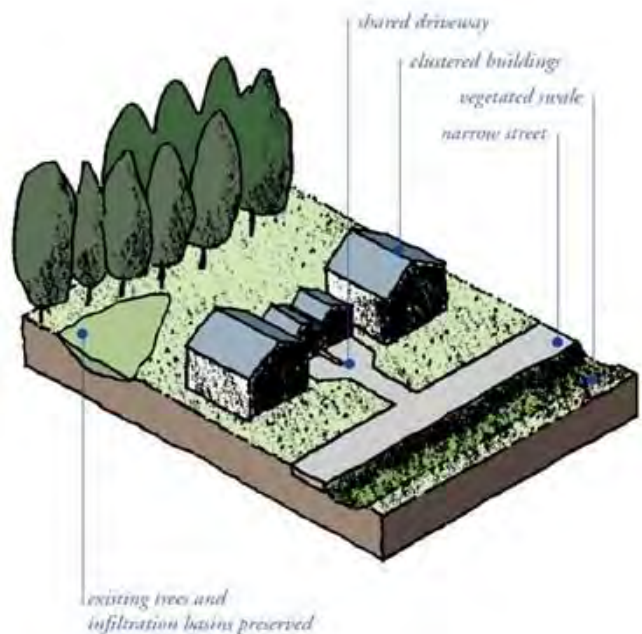
- Construct streets, sidewalks and parking lots aisles to the minimum widths necessary, provided public safety is not compromised
- Minimize the impervious footprint of the project

One of the principal causes of environmental impacts by development is the creation of impervious surfaces. Imperviousness links urban land development to degradation of aquatic ecosystems in two ways:

- First, the combination of paved surfaces and piped runoff efficiently collects urban pollutants and transports them, in suspended or dissolved form, directly to surface waters. These pollutants may originate as airborne dust, be washed from the atmosphere during rains, or may be generated by automobiles and outdoor work activities.
- Second, increased peak flows and runoff durations typically cause an increased erosion of stream banks and beds, transport of fine sediments, and disruption of aquatic habitat. Further, measures which may be taken to control stream erosion, such as hardening banks with riprap or concrete, may permanently eliminate habitat.

Impervious cover can be minimized by identifying the smallest possible land area that can be practically impacted or disturbed during site development. Reducing impervious surfaces retains the permeability of the project site, allowing natural processes to filter and reduce sources of pollution, thereby reducing the need for additional structural controls

Projects can incorporate SD-3 by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:



Source: County of San Diego LID Handbook

Chapter 4: Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

- Decrease building footprint through (the design of compact and taller structures when allowed by local zoning and design standards and provided public safety is not compromised).
- Construct walkways, trails, patios, overflow parking lots, alleys and other low-traffic areas with permeable surfaces.
- Construct streets, sidewalks and parking lot aisles to the minimum widths necessary, provided that public safety and alternative transportation (e.g. pedestrians, bikes) are not compromised.
- Consider the implementation of shared parking lots and driveways where possible.
- Landscaped area in the center of a cul-de-sac can reduce impervious area depending on configuration. Design of a landscaped cul-de-sac must be coordinated with fire department personnel to accommodate turning radii and other operational needs.
- Design smaller parking lots with fewer stalls, smaller stalls, more efficient lanes.
- Design indoor or underground parking.
- Minimize the use of impervious surfaces in the landscape design.

SD-4: Minimize soil compaction

- Minimize soil compaction in landscaped areas

The upper soil layers contain organic material, soil biota, and a configuration favorable for storing and slowly conveying storm water down gradient. By protecting native soils and vegetation in appropriate areas during the clearing and grading phase of development the site can retain some of its existing beneficial hydrologic function. Soil compaction resulting from the movement of heavy construction equipment can reduce soil infiltration rates. It is important to recognize that areas adjacent to and under building foundations, roads and manufactured slopes must be compacted with minimum soil density requirements in compliance with local building and grading ordinances.

Projects can incorporate SD-4 by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:

- Avoid disturbance in planned green space and proposed landscaped areas where feasible. These areas can serve a dual purpose; to retain the area's beneficial hydrological function the area should be protected during the grading/construction phase so that vehicles and construction equipment do not intrude and inadvertently compact the area.
- In areas planned for landscaping where compaction could not be avoided, re-till the soil surface to allow for better infiltration capacity. Soil amendments are recommended and may be necessary to increase permeability and organic content. Soil stability, density requirements, and other geotechnical considerations associated with soil compaction must be reviewed by a qualified landscape architect, and/or licensed geotechnical, civil or other professional engineer.

Chapter 4: Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

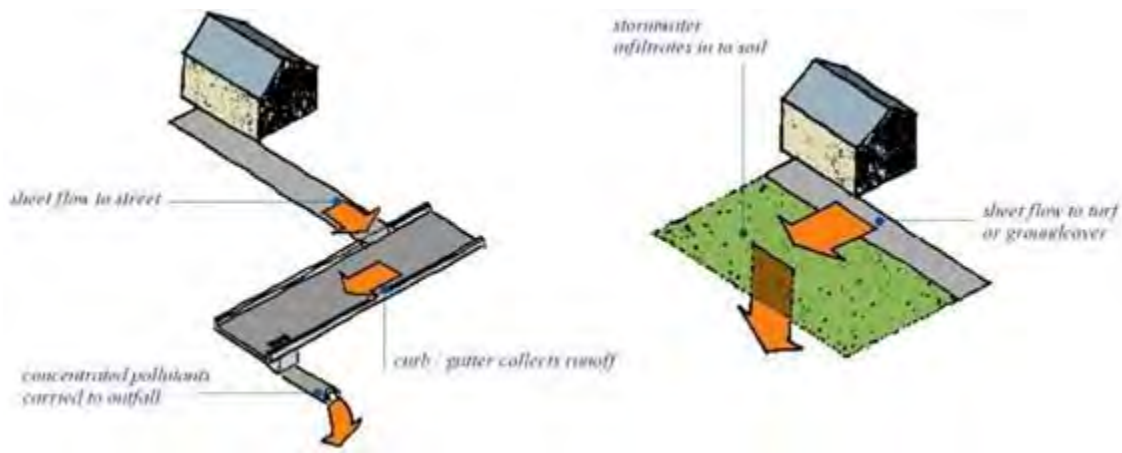
SD-5: Disperse impervious areas

- Disconnect impervious surfaces through dispersion of pervious areas
- Design and construct landscaped or other pervious areas to effectively receive and infiltrate, retain and/or treat runoff from impervious areas prior to discharging to the MS4

Dispersion refers to the practice of disconnecting impervious areas from directly draining to the storm water conveyance system by routing runoff from impervious areas such as rooftops, walkways, and driveways onto the surface of adjacent pervious areas. The intent is to slow runoff discharges, and reduce volumes while achieving incidental treatment. Volume reduction from dispersion is dependent on the infiltration characteristics of the pervious area and the amount of impervious area draining to the pervious area. Treatment is achieved through filtration, shallow sedimentation, sorption, infiltration, evapotranspiration, biochemical processes and plant uptake.

The effects of imperviousness can be mitigated by disconnecting impervious areas from the drainage system and by encouraging detention and retention of runoff near the point where it is generated. Detention and retention of runoff reduces peak flows and volumes and allows pollutants to settle out or adhere to soils before they can be transported downstream. Disconnection practices may be applied in almost any location, but impervious surfaces must discharge into a suitably sized receiving area for the practices to be effective. Information gathered during the site assessment will help determine appropriate receiving areas.

Project designs should direct runoff from impervious areas to adjacent landscaping areas that have higher potential for infiltration and surface water storage. This will limit the amount of runoff generated, and therefore the size of the mitigation BMPs downstream. The design, including consideration of slopes and soils, must reflect a reasonable expectation that runoff will soak into the soil and produce no runoff of the DCV. On hillside sites, drainage from upper areas may be collected in conventional catch basins and piped to landscaped areas that have higher potential for infiltration. Or use low retaining walls to create terraces that can accommodate BMPs.



Source: County of San Diego LID Handbook

Chapter 4: Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

Projects can incorporate SD-5 by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:

- Implement design criteria and considerations listed in impervious area dispersion fact sheet (SD-5) presented in Appendix E.
- Drain rooftops into adjacent landscape areas.
- Drain impervious parking lots, sidewalks, walkways, trails, and patios into adjacent landscape areas.
- Reduce or eliminate curb and gutters from roadway sections, thus allowing roadway runoff to drain to adjacent pervious areas.
- Replace curbs and gutters with roadside vegetated swales and direct runoff from the paved street or parking areas to adjacent LID facilities. Such an approach for alternative design can reduce the overall capital cost of the site development while improving the storm water quantity and quality issues and the site's aesthetics.
- Plan site layout and grading to allow for runoff from impervious surfaces to be directed into distributed permeable areas such as landscaped or permeable recreational areas, medians, parking islands, planter boxes, etc.
- Detain and retain runoff throughout the site. On flatter sites, landscaped areas can be interspersed among the buildings and pavement areas. On hillside sites, drainage from upper areas may be collected in conventional catch basins and conveyed to landscaped areas in lower areas of the site.
- Pervious areas that receives run on from impervious surfaces shall have a minimum width of 10 feet and a maximum slope of 5%.

SD-6: Collect runoff

- Use small collection strategies located at, or as close as possible to the sources (i.e. the point where storm water initially meets the ground) to minimize the transport of runoff and pollutants to the MS4 and receiving waters
- Use permeable material for projects with low traffic areas and appropriate soil conditions

Distributed control of storm water runoff from the site can be accomplished by applying small collection techniques (e.g. green roofs), or integrated management practices, on small sub-catchments or on residential lots. Small collection techniques foster opportunities to maintain the natural hydrology provide a much greater range of control practices. Integration of storm water management into landscape design and natural features of the site, reduce site development and long-term maintenance costs, and provide redundancy if one technique fails. On flatter sites, it typically works best to intersperse landscaped areas and integrate small scale retention practices among the buildings and paving.

Permeable pavements contain small voids that allow water to pass through to a gravel base. They come in a variety of forms; they may be a modular paving system (concrete pavers, grass-pave, or gravel-pave) or poured in place pavement (porous concrete, permeable asphalt). Project applicants should identify locations where permeable pavements could be substituted for impervious concrete or asphalt paving. The O&M of the site must ensure that permeable pavements will not be sealed in

Chapter 4: Source Control and Site Design Requirements for All Development Projects

the future. In areas where infiltration is not appropriate, permeable paving systems can be fitted with an under drain to allow filtration, storage, and evaporation, prior to drainage into the storm drain system.

Projects can incorporate SD-6 by implementing the following planning and design phase techniques as applicable and practicable:

- Implementing distributed small collection techniques to collect and retain runoff
- Installing permeable pavements (see SD-6B in Appendix E)

SD-7: Landscape with native and drought tolerant species

All development projects are required to select a landscape design and plant palette that minimizes required resources (irrigation, fertilizers and pesticides) and pollutants generated from landscape areas. Native plants require less fertilizers and pesticides because they are already adapted to the rainfall patterns and soils conditions. Plants should be selected to be drought tolerant and not require much watering after establishment (2 to 3 years). Watering should only be required during prolonged dry periods after plants are established. Final selection of plant material needs to be made by a landscape architect experienced with LID techniques. Microclimates vary significantly throughout the region and consulting local municipal resources will help to select plant material suitable for a specific geographic location.

Projects can incorporate SD-7 by landscaping with native and drought tolerant species. Recommended plant list is included in Appendix E (Fact Sheet PL).

SD-8: Harvest and use precipitation

Harvest and use BMPs captures and stores storm water runoff for later use. Harvest and use can be applied at smaller scales (SDPs) using rain barrels or at larger scales (PDPs) using cisterns. This harvest and use technique has been successful in reducing runoff discharged to the storm drain system, conserving potable water, and recharging the groundwater table.

Rain barrels are above ground storage vessels that capture runoff from roof downspouts during rain events and detain that runoff for irrigating landscaped areas. The temporary storage of roof runoff reduces the runoff volume from a property and may reduce the peak runoff velocity for small, frequently occurring storms. In addition, by reducing the amount of storm water runoff that flows overland into a storm water conveyance system (driveways, sidewalks, gutters, streets, storm drain inlets, and drain pipes), less pollutants are transported through the conveyance system into local creeks, rivers, and the ocean. The reuse of the detained water for irrigation purposes leads to the conservation of potable water and the recharge of groundwater. SD-8 fact sheet in Appendix E provides additional detail for designing Harvest and Use BMPs. Projects can incorporate SD-8 by installing rain barrels or cisterns, as applicable.

Photograph Courtesy of Arid Solutions, Inc.



Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs

In addition to the site design and source control BMPs discussed in Chapter 4, PDPs are required to implement storm water pollutant control BMPs to reduce the quantity of pollutants in storm water discharges. Storm water pollutant control BMPs are engineered facilities that are designed to retain (i.e. intercept, store, infiltrate, evaporate and evapotranspire), biofilter, and/or provide flow-thru treatment of storm water runoff generated on the project site.

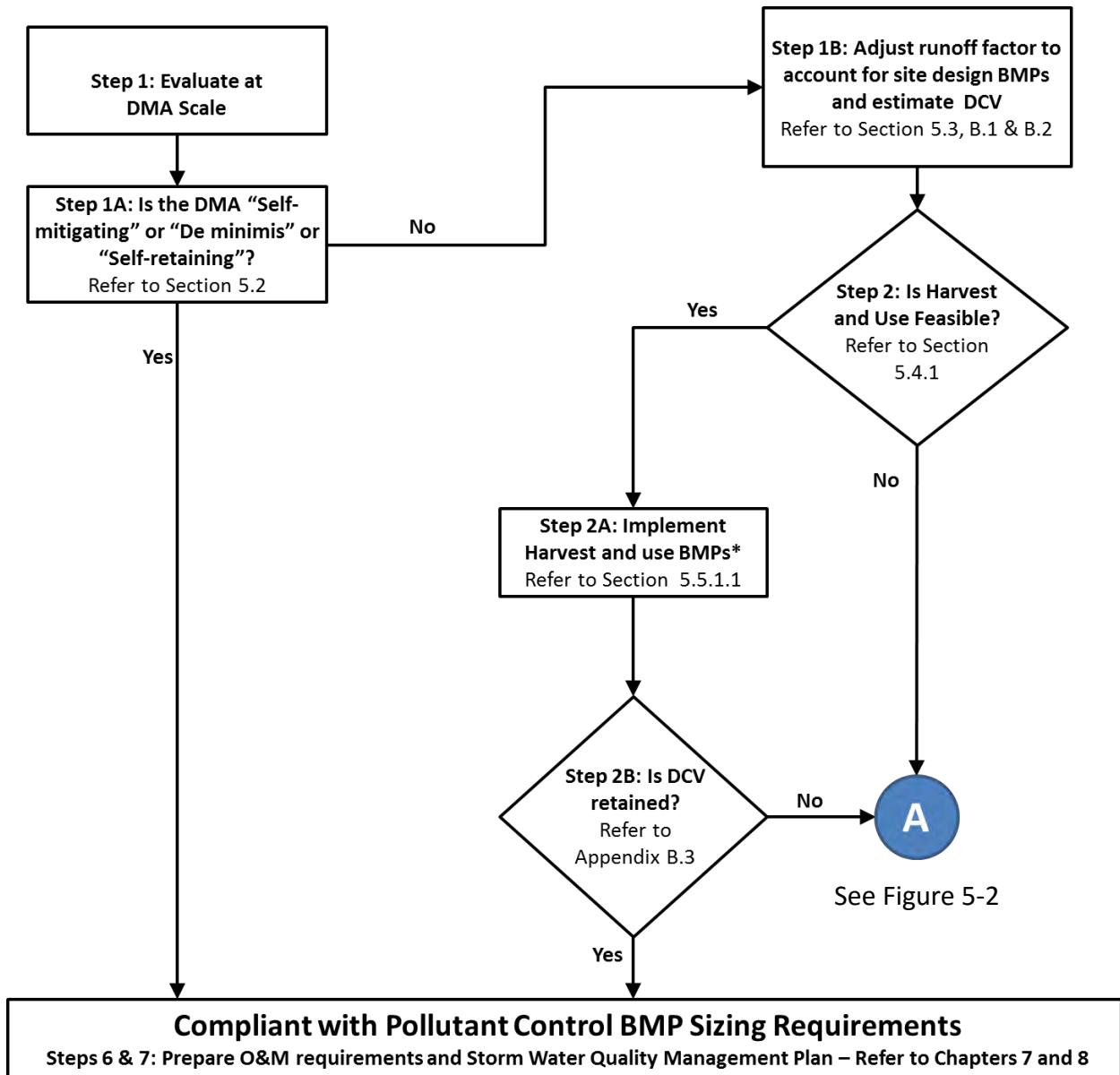
This chapter describes the specific process for determining which category of pollutant control BMP, or combination of BMPs, is most appropriate for the PDP site and how to design the BMP to meet the storm water pollutant control performance standard (per Section 2.2).

This chapter by itself is not a complete design guide for project development. It is intended to provide guidance for selecting and designing storm water pollutant control BMPs. Specifically:

- This chapter should be followed after having conducted site planning that maximizes opportunities for storm water retention and biofiltration as discussed in Chapter 3.
- The steps in this chapter pertain specifically to storm water pollutant control BMPs. **These criteria must be met regardless of whether or not hydromodification management applies**, however the overall sequencing of project development may be different if hydromodification management applies. For guidance on how to integrate both hydromodification management and pollutant control BMPs (in cases where both requirements apply), see Sections 3.4.3, 5.6 and Chapter 6.

5.1 Steps for Selecting and Designing Storm Water Pollutant Control BMPs

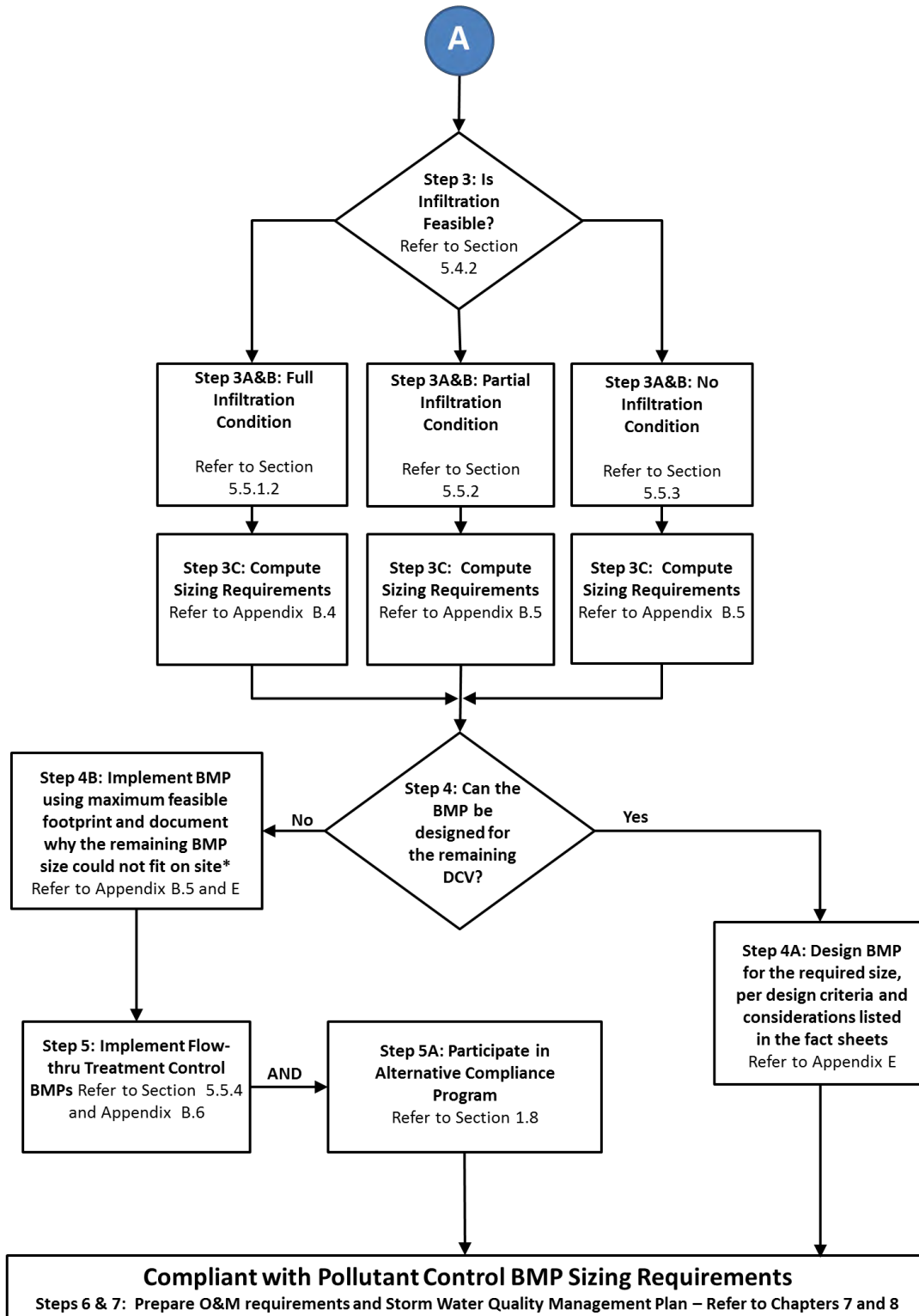
Figures 5-1 and 5-2 present the flow chart for complying with storm water pollutant control BMP requirements. The steps associated with this flow chart are described below. A project is considered to be in compliance with storm water pollutant control performance standards if it follows and implements this flow chart and follows the supporting technical guidance referenced from this flow chart. This section is applicable whether or not hydromodification management requirements apply, however the overall sequencing of project development may be different if hydromodification management requirements apply.



* Step 2C: Project applicant has an option to also conduct feasibility analysis for infiltration and if infiltration is fully or partially feasible has an option to choose between infiltration and harvest and use BMPs. But if infiltration is not feasible and harvest and use is feasible, project applicant must implement harvest and use BMPs

FIGURE 0-1. Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP Selection Flow Chart

Chapter 5: Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs



* Project approval at the discretion of [City Engineer]

FIGURE 0-2. Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP Selection Flow Chart

Chapter 5: Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs

Description of Steps:

- Step 1. Based on the locations for storm water pollutant control BMPs and the DMA delineations developed during the site planning phase (See Section 3.3.3), calculate the DCV.
 - A. Identify DMAs that meet the criteria in Section 5.2 (self-mitigating and/or de minimis areas and/or self-retaining via qualifying site design BMPs).
 - B. Estimate DCV for each remaining DMA. See Section 5.3.
- Step 2. Conduct feasibility screening analysis for harvest and use BMPs. See Section 5.4.1.
 - A. If it is feasible, implement harvest and use BMPs (See Section 5.5.1.1) or go to Step 3.
 - B. Evaluate if the DCV can be retained onsite using harvest and use BMPs. See Appendix B.3. If the DCV can be retained onsite then the pollutant control performance standards are met.
 - C. The applicant has an option to also conduct a feasibility analysis for infiltration and if infiltration is feasible has an option to choose between infiltration and harvest and use BMPs. But if infiltration is not feasible and harvest and use is feasible, the applicant must implement harvest and use BMPs.
- Step 3. Conduct feasibility analysis for infiltration for the BMP locations selected. See Section 5.4.2.
 - A. Determine the preliminary feasibility categories of BMP locations based on available site information. Determine the additional information needed to conclusively support findings. Use the "Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition" checklist located in Appendix I-8 to conduct preliminary feasibility screening.
 - B. Select the storm water pollutant control BMP category based on preliminary feasibility condition.
 - i. Full Infiltration Condition— Implement infiltration BMP category, See Section 5.5.1.2
 - ii. Partial Infiltration Condition – Implement partial retention BMP category. See Section 5.5.2
 - iii. No Infiltration Condition – Implement biofiltration BMP category. See Section 5.5.3
 - C. After selecting BMPs, conduct design level feasibility analyses at BMP locations. The purpose of these analyses is to conform or adapt selected BMPs to maximize storm water retention and develop design parameters (e.g. infiltration rates, elevations). Document findings to substantiate BMP selection, feasibility, and design in the SWQMP. See Appendix C and D for additional guidance.
- Step 4. Evaluate if the required BMP footprint will fit considering the site design and constraints.

Chapter 5: Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs

- A. If the calculated footprint fits, then size and design the selected BMPs accordingly using design criteria and considerations from fact sheets presented in Appendix E. The project has met the pollutant control performance standards.
 - B. If the calculated BMP footprint does not fit, evaluate additional options to make space for BMPs. Examples include potential design revisions, reconfiguring DMAs, evaluating other or additional BMP locations and evaluating other BMP types. If no additional options are practicable for making adequate space for the BMPs, then document why the remaining DCV could not be treated onsite and then implement the BMP using the maximum feasible footprint, design criteria and considerations from fact sheets presented in Appendix E then continue to the next step. Project approval if the entire DCV could not be treated because the BMP size could not fit within the project footprint is at the discretion of the City Engineer.
- Step 5. If an Alternative Compliance Program exists, implement flow-thru treatment control BMPs for the remaining DCV. See Section 5.5.4 and B.6 for additional guidance.
- A. When flow-thru treatment control BMPs are implemented the project applicant must also participate in an Alternative Compliance Program. See Section 1.8.
- Step 6. Prepare a SWQMP documenting site planning and opportunity assessment activities, final site layout and storm water management design. See Chapter 8.
- Step 7. Identify and document O&M requirements and confirm that it is acceptable to the responsible party. See Chapters 7 and Chapter 8.

5.2 DMAs Excluded from DCV Calculation

This manual provides project applicants the option to exclude DMAs from DCV calculations **if** they meet the criteria specified below. These DMAs must implement source control and site design BMPs from Chapter 4 as applicable and feasible. These exclusions will be evaluated on a case-by-case basis and approvals of these exclusions are at the discretion of the City Engineer.

5.2.1 Self-mitigating DMAs

Self-mitigating DMAs consist of natural or landscaped areas that drain directly offsite or to the public storm drain system. Self-mitigating DMAs must meet **ALL** the following characteristics to be eligible for exclusion:

- Vegetation in the natural or landscaped area is native and/or non-native/non-invasive drought tolerant species that do not require regular application of fertilizers and pesticides.
- Soils are undisturbed native topsoil, or disturbed soils that have been amended and aerated to promote water retention characteristics equivalent to undisturbed native topsoil.
- The incidental impervious areas are less than 5 percent of the self-mitigating area.
- Impervious area within the self-mitigated area should not be hydraulically connected to other impervious areas unless it is a storm water conveyance system (such as brow ditches).
- The self-mitigating area is hydraulically separate from DMAs that contain permanent storm water pollutant control BMPs.

Figure 5.3 illustrates the concept of self-mitigating DMAs.

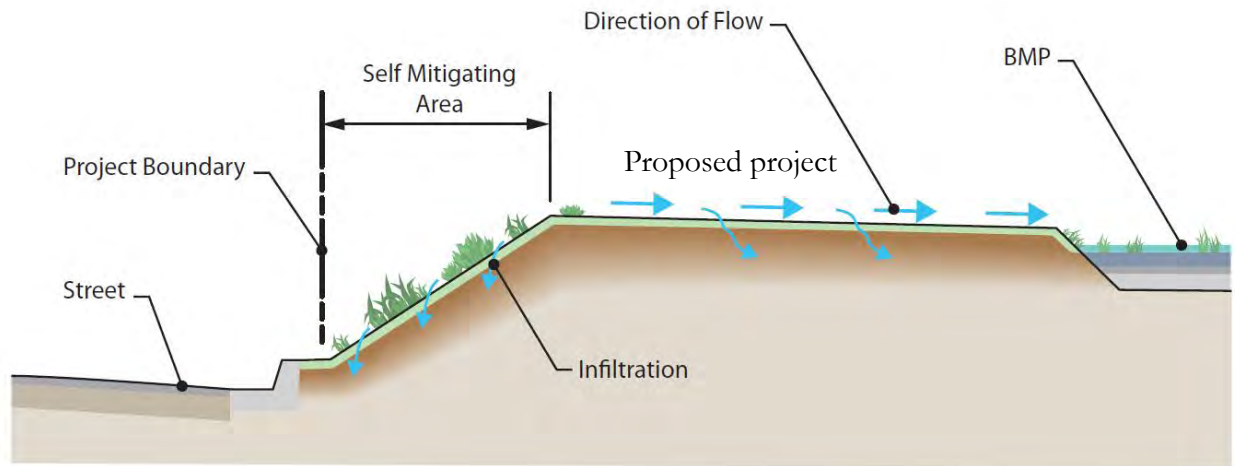


FIGURE 0-3. Self Mitigating Area

5.2.2 De Minimis DMAs

De minimis DMAs consist of areas that are very small, and therefore are not considered to be significant contributors of pollutants, and are considered by the owner, with concurrence of the City Engineer to be impracticable to drain to a BMP. It is anticipated that only a small subset of projects will qualify for de minimis DMA exclusion. Examples include driveway aprons connecting to existing streets, portions of sidewalks, retaining walls at the external boundaries of a project, and similar features. De minimis DMAs must include **ALL** of the following characteristics to be eligible for exclusion:

- Areas around the perimeter of the development site.
- Topography and land ownership constraints make BMP construction to reasonably capture runoff technically infeasible.
- The portion of the site falling into this category is minimized through effective site design
- Each DMA should be less than 250 square feet and the sum of all de minimis DMAs should represent less than 2 percent of the total added or replaced impervious surface of the project. Except for projects where 2 percent of the total added or replaced impervious surface of the project is less than 250 square feet, a de minimis DMA of 250 square feet or less is allowed.
- Two de minimis DMAs cannot be adjacent to each other and hydraulically connected.
- The SWQMP must document the reason that each de minimis area could not be addressed otherwise.

5.2.3 Self-retaining DMAs via Qualifying Site Design BMPs

Self-retaining DMAs are areas that are designed with site design BMPs to retain runoff to a level equivalent to pervious land. BMP Fact Sheets for impervious area dispersion (SD-5 in Appendix E)

Chapter 5: Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs

and permeable pavement (SD-6B in Appendix E) describe the design criteria by which BMPs can be considered self-retaining. DMAs that are categorized as self-retaining DMAs are considered to **only** meet the storm water pollutant control obligations.

Requirements for utilizing this category of DMA:

- Site design BMPs such as impervious area dispersion and permeable pavement may be used individually or in combination to reduce or eliminate runoff from a portion of a PDP.
- If a site design BMP is used to create a self-retaining DMA, then the site design BMPs must be designed and implemented per the criteria in the applicable fact sheet. These criteria are conservatively developed to anticipate potential changes in DMA characteristics with time. The fact sheet criteria for impervious area dispersion and permeable pavement for meeting pollutant control requirement developed using continuous simulation are summarized below:
 - SD-5 Impervious Area Dispersion: a DMA is considered self-retaining if the impervious to pervious ratio is:
 - 2:1 when the pervious area is composed of Hydrologic Soil Group A
 - 1:1 when the pervious area is composed of Hydrologic Soil Group B
 - SD-6B Self-retaining permeable pavement: a DMA is considered self-retaining if the ratio of total drainage area (including permeable pavement) to area of permeable pavement of 1.5:1 or less.
 - Note: Left side of ratios presented above represents the portion of the site that receives volume reduction and the right side of the ratio represents the site design BMP that promotes the achieved volume reduction.
- Site design BMPs used as part of a self-retaining DMA or as part of reducing runoff coefficients from a DMA must be clearly called out on project plans and in the SWQMP.
- The City Engineer may accept or reject a proposed self-retaining DMA meeting these criteria at its discretion. Examples of rationale for rejection may include the potential for negative impacts (such as infiltration or vector issues), potential for significant future alteration of this feature, inability to visually inspect and confirm the feature, etc.
- PDPs subject to hydromodification requirements should note that Self-retaining DMAs must be included in hydromodification analysis. Reductions in DCV realized through Site Design BMPs are applicable to treatment control only and do not relax hydromodification requirements.

Other site design BMPs can be considered self-retaining for meeting storm water pollutant control obligations if the long term annual runoff volume (estimated using continuous simulation following guidelines listed in Appendix G) from the DMA is reduced to a level equivalent to pervious land and the applicant provides supporting analysis and rationale for the reduction in long term runoff volume. Approval of other self-retaining areas is at the discretion of the City Engineer. Figure 5.4 illustrates the concept of self-retaining DMAs.

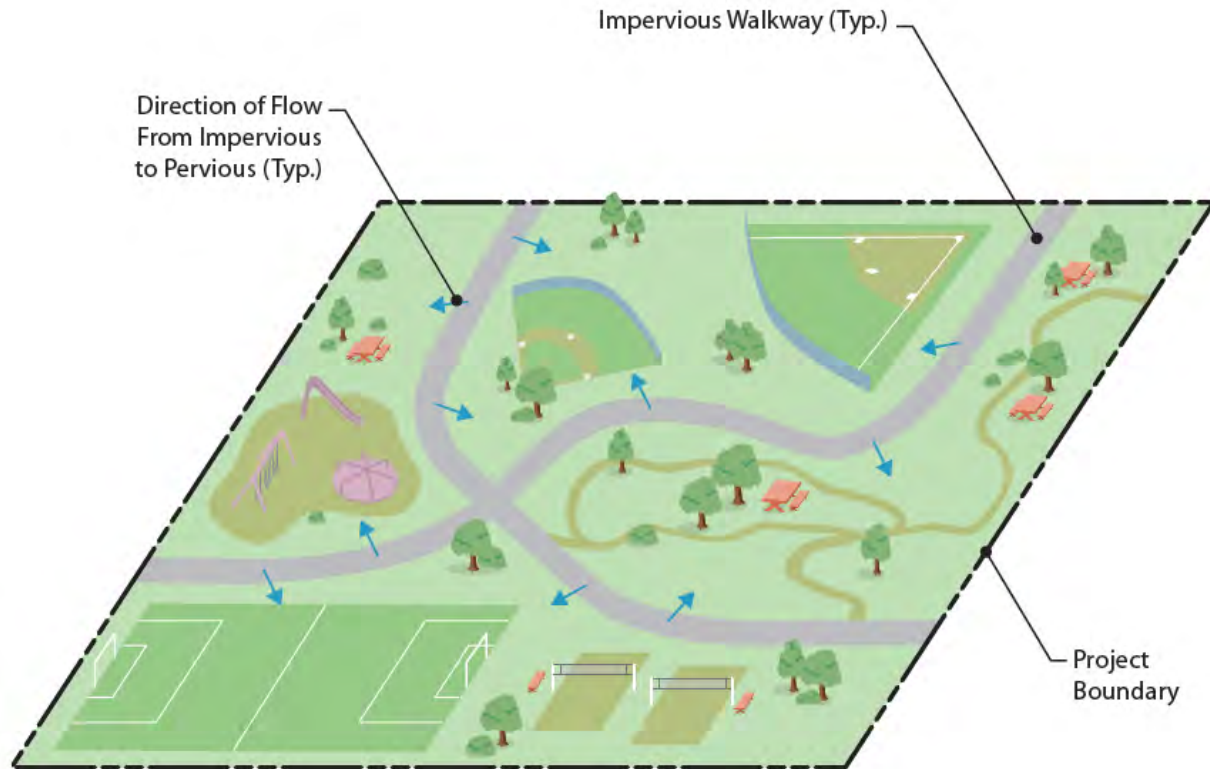


FIGURE 0-4. Self-retaining Site

5.3 DCV Reduction through Site Design BMPs

Site design BMPs as discussed in Chapter 4 reduce the rate and volume of storm water runoff from the project site. This manual provides adjustments to runoff factors for the following site design BMPs that may be incorporated into the project as part of an effective site design so that the downstream structural BMPs can be sized appropriately:

- SD-1 Street trees
- SD-5 Impervious area dispersion
- SD-6A Green roofs
- SD-6B Permeable pavement
- SD-8 Rain barrels

Methods for adjusting runoff factors for the above listed site design BMPs are presented in Appendix B.2. Site design BMPs used for reducing runoff coefficients from a DMA must be clearly called out on project plans and in the SWQMP. Approval of the claimed reduction of runoff factors is at the discretion of the City Engineer.

5.4 Evaluating Feasibility of Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP Options

This section provides the fundamental process to establish which category, or combination of categories, of pollutant control BMPs are feasible and to determine the volume of onsite retention that is feasible, either through harvest and use, or infiltration of the DCV. The feasibility screening process presented below establishes the volume of retention that can be achieved to fully or partially meet the pollutant control performance standards.

5.4.1 Feasibility Screening for Harvest and Use Category BMPs

Harvest and use is a BMP that captures and stores storm water runoff for later use. The primary question to be evaluated is:

- Is there a demand for harvested water within the project or project vicinity that can be met or partially met with rainwater harvesting in a practical manner?

Appendix B.3 provides guidance for determining the feasibility for using harvested storm water based on onsite demand. Step 2 from Section 5.1 describes how the feasibility results need to be considered in the pollutant control BMP selection process.

5.4.2 Feasibility Screening for Infiltration Category BMPs

After accounting for any potential onsite use of storm water, the next step is to evaluate how much storm water can be retained onsite primarily through infiltration of the DCV. Infiltration of storm water is dependent on many important factors that must be evaluated as part of infiltration feasibility screening. The key questions to determining the degree of infiltration that can be accomplished onsite are:

- Is infiltration potentially feasible and desirable?
- If so, what quantity of infiltration is potentially feasible and desirable?

These questions must be addressed in a systematic fashion to determine if full infiltration of the DCV is potentially feasible. If when answering these questions it is determined that full infiltration is not feasible, then the portion of the DCV that could be infiltrated must be quantified, or a determination that infiltration in any appreciable quantity is infeasible or must be avoided. **This process is illustrated in Figure 5-5.** As a result of this process, conditions can be characterized as one of the three categories listed and defined below.

- **Full Infiltration Condition:** Infiltration of the full DCV is potentially feasible and desirable. More rigorous design-level analyses should be used to confirm this classification and establish specific design parameters such as infiltration rate and factor of safety. BMPs in this category may include bioretention and infiltration basins. See Section 5.5.1.2.
- **Partial Infiltration Condition:** Infiltration of a significant portion of the DCV may be possible, but site factors may indicate that infiltration of the full DCV is either infeasible or not desirable. Select BMPs that provide opportunity for partial infiltration, e.g. biofiltration with partial retention. See Section 5.5.2.

Chapter 5: Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs

- **No Infiltration Condition:** Infiltration of any appreciable volume should be avoided. Some incidental volume losses may still be possible, but any appreciable quantity of infiltration would introduce undesirable conditions. Other pollutant control BMPs should be considered e.g. biofiltration or flow-thru treatment control BMPs and participation in an Alternative Compliance Program (Section 1.8) for the portion of the DCV that is not retained or biofiltered onsite. See Section 5.5.3 and 5.5.4.

The “Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition” checklist located in Appendix I must be used to document the findings of the infiltration feasibility assessment and must be supported by all associated information used in the feasibility findings. Appendix C and D in this manual provides additional guidance and criteria for performing feasibility analysis for infiltration. All PDPs are required to complete this worksheet. At the site planning phase, this worksheet can help guide the design process by influencing project layout and selection of infiltration BMPs, and identifying whether more detailed studies are needed. At the design and final report submittal phase, planning level categorizations related to infiltration must be confirmed or revised and rigorously documented and supported based on design-level investigations and analyses, as needed. A Geological Investigation Report must be prepared for all PDPs implementing onsite structural BMPs. This report should be attached to the SWQMP. Geotechnical and groundwater investigation report requirements are listed in Appendix C.

Chapter 5: Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs

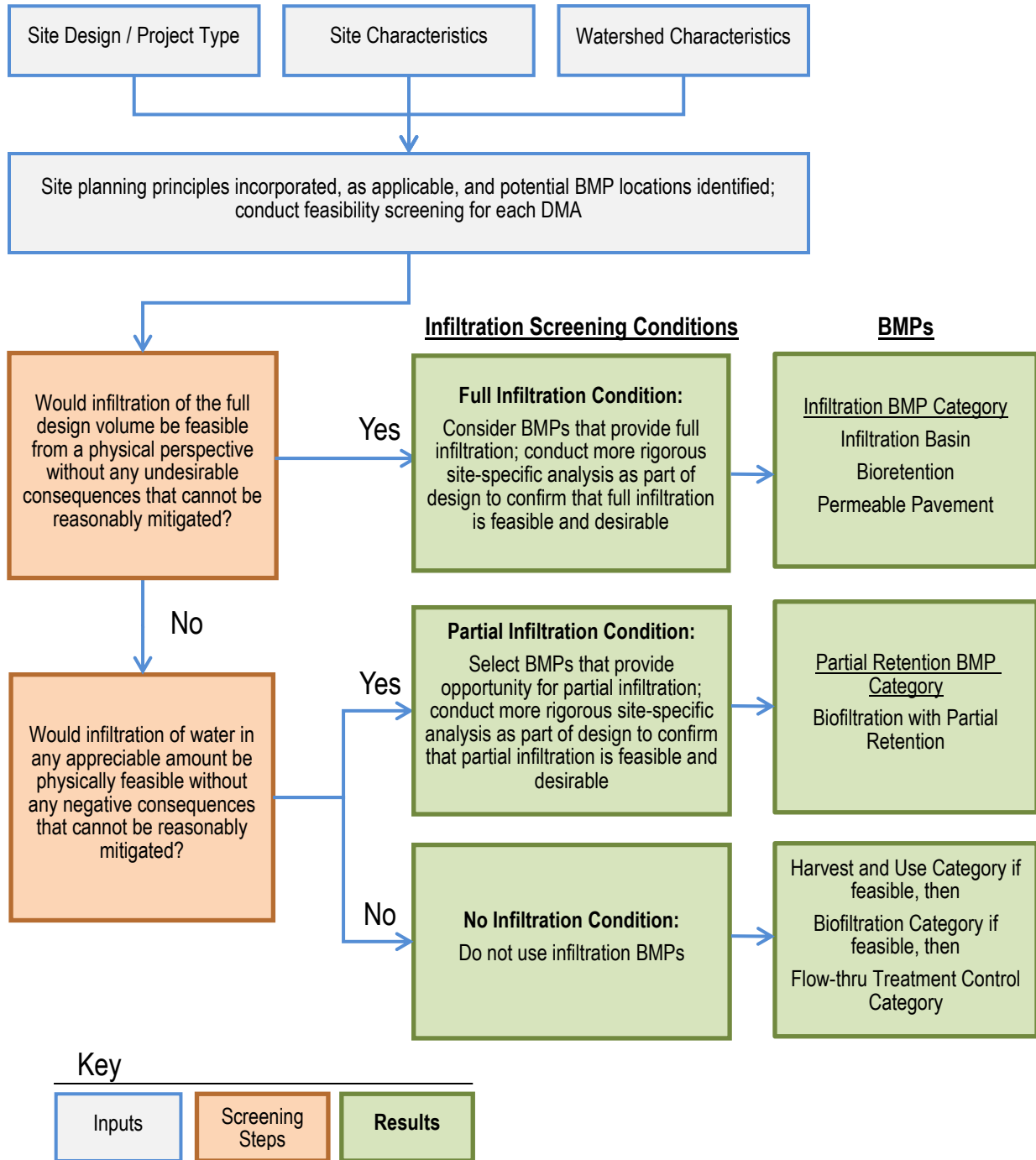


FIGURE 0-5. Infiltration Feasibility and Desirability Screening Flow Chart

5.5 BMP Selection and Design

BMP selection shall be based on steps listed in Section 5.1 and the feasibility screening process described in Section 5.4. When selecting BMPs designated for placement within public agency land, such as easements or rights-of-way, it is important to contact that public agency for prior approval and to inquire about additional design requirements that must be met. Selected BMPs must be designed based on accepted design standards. The BMP designs described in the BMP Fact Sheets (Appendix E) shall constitute the allowable storm water pollutant control BMPs for the purpose of meeting storm water management requirements. Other BMP types and variations on these designs may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if documentation is provided demonstrating that the BMP is functionally equivalent or better than those described in this manual.

This section provides an introduction to each category of BMP and provides links to fact sheets that contain recommended criteria for the design and implementation of BMPs. Table 5-1 maps the BMP category to the fact sheets provided in Appendix E. Criteria specifically described in these fact sheets override guidance contained in outside referenced source documents. Where criteria are not specified, the applicant and the project review staff should use best professional judgment based on the recommendations of the referenced guidance material or other published and generally accepted sources. When an outside source is used, the preparer must document the source in the SWQMP.

TABLE 0-1. Permanent Structural BMPs for PDPs

MS4 Permit Category	Manual Category	BMPs
Retention	Harvest and Use (HU)	HU-1: Cistern
Retention	Infiltration (INF)	INF-1: Infiltration basin INF-2: Bioretention INF-3: Permeable pavement
NA	Partial Retention (PR)	PR-1: Biofiltration with partial retention
Biofiltration	Biofiltration (BF)	BF-1: Biofiltration BF-2: Nutrient Sensitive Media Design BF-3: Proprietary Biofiltration
Flow-thru treatment control	Flow-thru treatment control with Alternative Compliance (FT)	FT-1: Vegetated swales FT-2: Media filters FT-3: Sand filters FT-4: Dry extended detention basins FT-5: Proprietary flow-thru treatment control

5.5.1 Retention Category

5.5.1.1 Harvest and Use BMP Category

Harvest and use (typically referred to as rainwater harvesting) BMPs capture and store storm water runoff for later use. These BMPs are engineered to store a specified volume of water and have no design surface discharge until this volume is exceeded. Uses of captured water shall not result in runoff to storm drains or receiving waters. Potential uses of captured water may include irrigation demand, indoor non-potable demand, industrial process water demand, or other demands as approved.

Selection: Harvest and use BMPs shall be selected after performing a feasibility analysis per Section 5.4.1. Based on findings from Section 5.4 if both harvest and use and full infiltration of the DCV is feasible onsite the project applicant has an option to implement either harvest and use BMPs and/or infiltration BMPs to meet the storm water requirements.

Design: A worksheet for sizing harvest and use BMPs is presented in Appendix B.3 and the fact sheet for sizing and designing the harvest and use BMP is presented in Appendix E. Figure 5-6 shows a schematic of a harvest and use BMP.

BMP option under this category:

- HU-1: Cistern

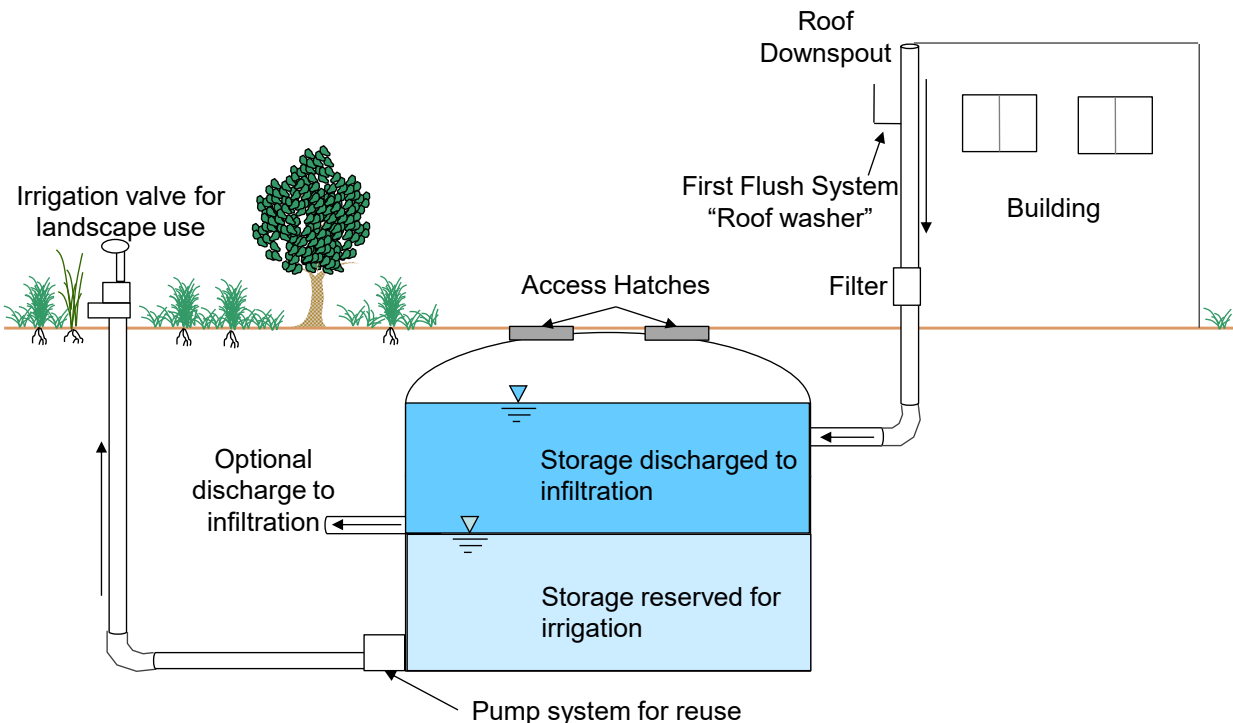


FIGURE 0-6. Schematic of a Typical Cistern

5.5.1.2 Infiltration BMP Category

Infiltration BMPs are structural measures that capture, store and infiltrate storm water runoff. These BMPs are engineered to store a specified volume of water and have no design surface discharge (underdrain or outlet structure) until this volume is exceeded. These types of BMPs may also support evapotranspiration processes, but are characterized by having their most dominant volume losses due to infiltration. Pollution prevention and source control BMPs shall be implemented at a level appropriate to protect groundwater quality for areas draining to infiltration BMPs and runoff must undergo pretreatment such as sedimentation or filtration prior to infiltration.

Selection: Selection of this BMP category shall be based on analysis according to Sections 5.1 and 5.4.2.

Design: Appendix B.4 has a worksheet for sizing infiltration BMPs, Appendix D has guidance for estimating infiltration rates for use in design the BMP, and Appendix E provides fact sheets to design the infiltration BMPs. Appendices B.6.2.1, B.6.2.2 and D.5.3 have guidance for selecting appropriate pretreatment for infiltration BMPs. Figure 5-7 shows a schematic of an infiltration basin.

BMP options under this category:

- INF-1: Infiltration basins
- INF-2: Bioretention
- INF-3: Permeable pavement.

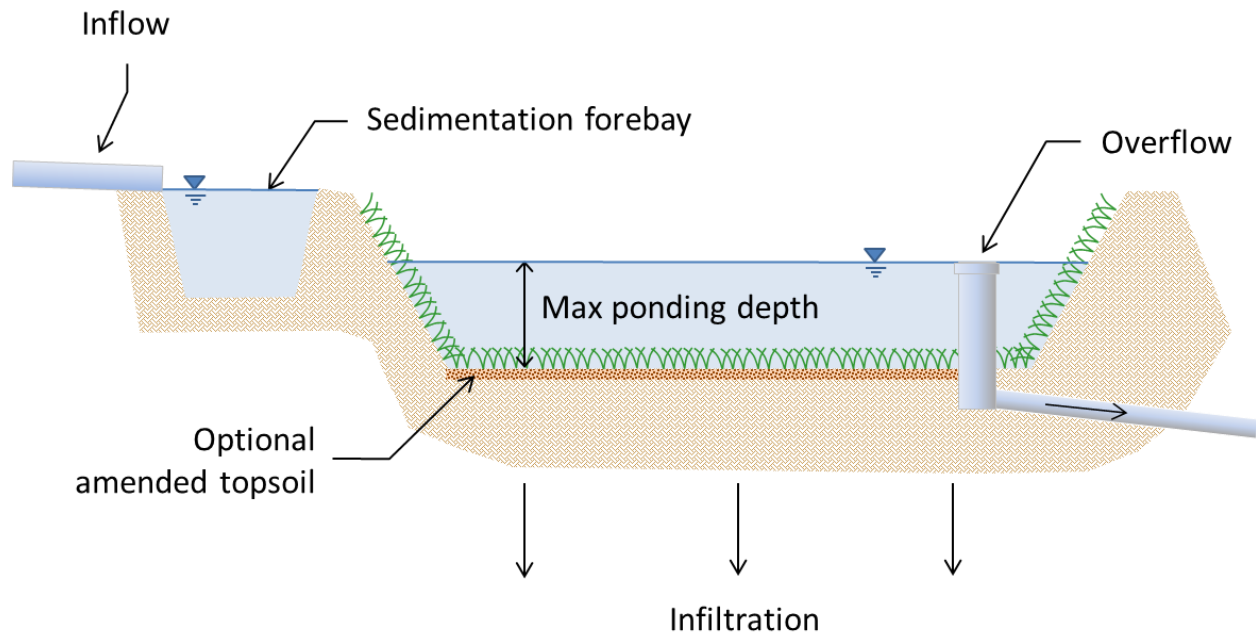


FIGURE 0-7. Schematic of a Typical Infiltration Basin

* Minimum ponding depth is 6"

5.5.2 Partial Retention BMP Category

Partial retention category is defined by structural measures that incorporate both infiltration (in the lower treatment zone) and biofiltration (in the upper treatment zone). Example includes biofiltration with partial retention BMP.

5.5.2.1 Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMP

Biofiltration with partial retention BMPs are shallow basins filled with treatment media and drainage rock that manage storm water runoff through infiltration, evapotranspiration, and biofiltration. These BMPs are characterized by a subsurface stone infiltration storage zone in the bottom of the BMP below the elevation of the discharge from the underdrains. The discharge of biofiltered water from the underdrain occurs when the water level in the infiltration storage zone exceeds the elevation of the underdrain outlet. The storage volume can be controlled by the elevation of the underdrain outlet (shown in Figure 5-8), or other configurations. Other typical biofiltration with partial retention components include a media layer and associated filtration rates, drainage layer with associated in-situ soil infiltration rates, vegetation.

Selection: Biofiltration with partial retention BMP shall be selected if the project site feasibility analysis performed according to Section 5.4.2 determines a partial infiltration feasibility condition.

Design: Appendix B.5 provides guidance for sizing biofiltration with partial retention BMP and Appendix E provides a fact sheet to design biofiltration with partial retention BMP.

BMP option under this category:

- PR-1: Biofiltration with partial retention

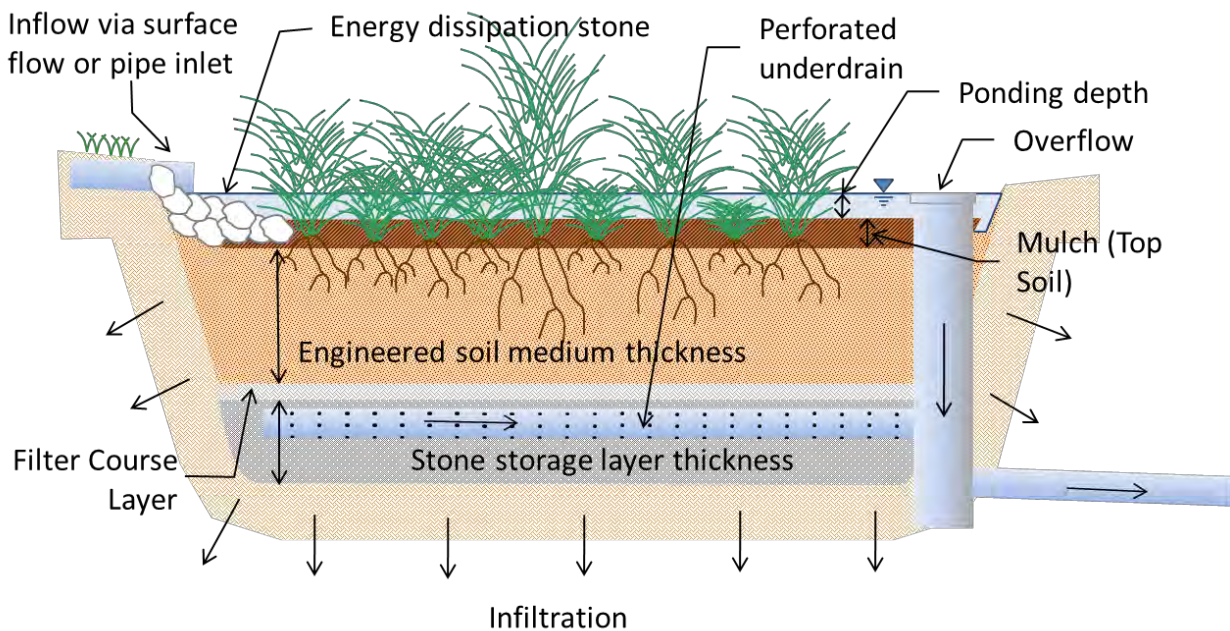


FIGURE 0-8. Schematic of a Typical Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMP

5.5.3 Biofiltration BMP Category

Biofiltration BMPs are shallow basins filled with treatment media and drainage rock that treat storm water runoff by capturing and detaining inflows prior to controlled release through minimal incidental infiltration, evapotranspiration, or discharge via underdrain or surface outlet structure. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, biochemical processes and/or vegetative uptake. Biofiltration BMPs can be designed with or without vegetation, provided that biological treatment processes are present throughout the life of the BMP via maintenance of plants, media base flow, or other biota-supporting elements. By default, BMP BF-1 shall include vegetation unless it is demonstrated, to the satisfaction of the City Engineer, that effective biological treatment process will be maintained without vegetation. Typical biofiltration components include a media layer with associated filtration rates, drainage layer with associated in-situ soil infiltration rates, underdrain, inflow and outflow control structures, and vegetation, with an optional impermeable liner installed on an as needed basis due to site constraints.

Selection: Biofiltration BMPs shall be selected if the project site feasibility analysis performed according to Section 5.4.2 determines a No Infiltration Feasibility Condition.

Design: Appendix B.5 has a worksheet for sizing biofiltration BMPs and Appendix E provides fact sheets to design the biofiltration BMP. Figure 5-9 shows the schematic of a biofiltration Basin.

BMP option under this category:

- BF-1: Biofiltration
- BF-2: Nutrient Sensitive Media Design
- BF-3: Proprietary Biofiltration

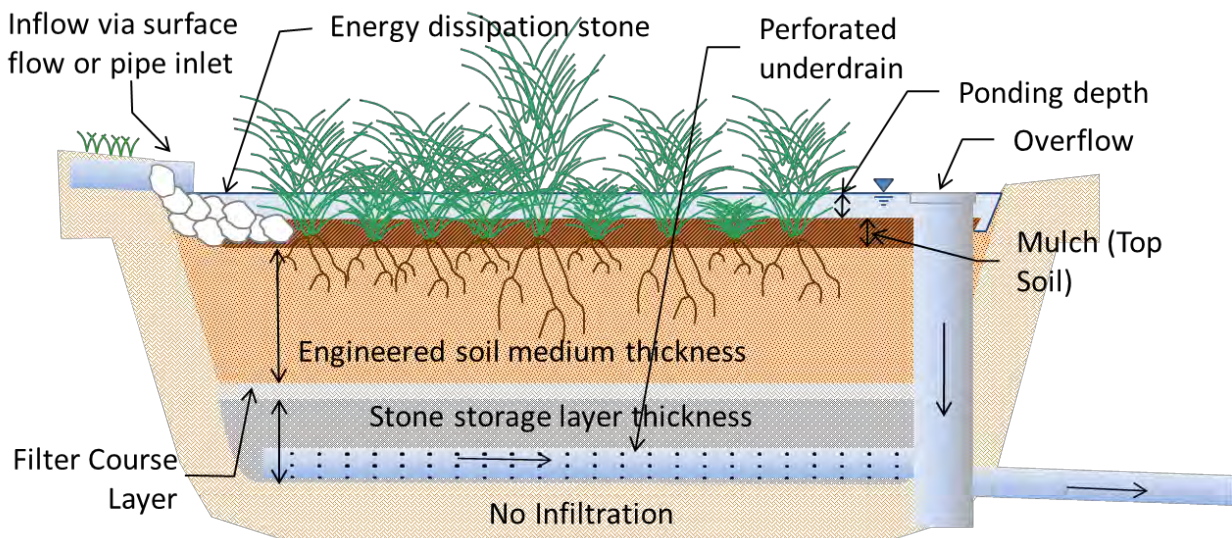


FIGURE 0-9. Schematic of a Typical Biofiltration Basin

Chapter 5: Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs

Alternative Biofiltration Options: Other BMPs, including proprietary BMPs (See fact sheet BF-3) may be classified as biofiltration BMPs if they (1) meet the minimum design criteria listed in Appendix F, including the pollutant treatment performance standard in Appendix F.1, (2) are designed and maintained in a manner consistent with their performance certifications, if applicable, and (3) are acceptable at the discretion of the City Engineer. The applicant may be required to provide additional studies and/or required to meet additional design criteria beyond the scope of this document in order to demonstrate that these criteria are met.

5.5.4 Flow-thru Treatment Control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance) Category

Flow-thru treatment control BMPs are structural, engineered facilities that are designed to remove pollutants from storm water runoff using treatment processes that do not incorporate significant biological methods.

Selection: Flow-thru treatment control BMPs shall be selected based on the criteria in Appendix B.6. Flow-thru treatment control BMPs may only be implemented to satisfy PDP structural BMP performance requirements if an appropriate offsite Alternative Compliance Project is also constructed to mitigate for the pollutant load in the portion of the DCV not retained onsite. The alternative compliance program is an optional element that may be developed by each jurisdiction (See Section 1.8).

Design: Appendix B.6 provides the methodology, required tables and worksheet for sizing flow-thru treatment control BMPs and Appendix E provides fact sheets to design the following flow-thru treatment control BMPs. Figure 5-10 shows a schematic of a Vegetated Swale as an example of a flow-thru treatment control BMP.

BMP options under this category:

- FT-1: Vegetated swales
- FT-2: Media filters
- FT-3: Sand filters
- FT-4: Dry extended detention basin
- FT-5: Proprietary flow-thru treatment control

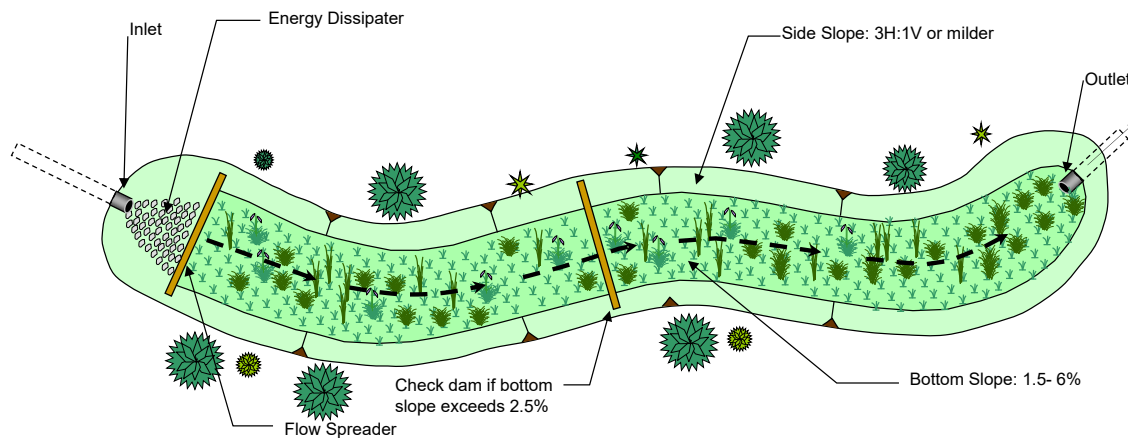


FIGURE 0-10. Schematic of a Vegetated Swale

Chapter 5: Storm Water Pollutant Control Requirements for PDPs

Use of Proprietary BMP Options: A proprietary BMP (see fact sheet FT-5) can be classified as a flow-thru treatment control BMP if (1) it is demonstrated to meet the flow-thru treatment performance criteria in Appendix B.6, (2) is designed and maintained in a manner consistent with its applicable performance certifications, and (3) is acceptable at the discretion of the City Engineer. The applicant may be required to provide additional studies and/or required to meet additional design criteria beyond the scope of this document in order to justify the use of a proprietary flow-thru treatment control BMP.

5.5.5 Alternate BMPs

New and proprietary BMP technologies may be available that meet the performance standards in Chapter 2 but are not discussed in this manual. Use of these alternate BMPs to comply with permit obligations is at the discretion of the City Engineer. Alternate BMPs must meet the standards for biofiltration BMPs or flow-thru BMPs (depending on how they are used), as described in Appendix F and Appendix B.6, respectively.

5.6 Documenting Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP Compliance when Hydromodification Management Applies

The steps and guidance presented in Chapter 5 apply to all PDPs for demonstrating conformance to storm water pollutant control requirements regardless of whether hydromodification management applies. However, when hydromodification management applies, the approach for project design may be different. The following process can be used to document compliance with storm water pollutant control BMPs in cases when hydromodification management also applies:

1. Develop a combined BMP or treatment train (BMPs constructed in series) based on both storm water pollutant control and hydromodification management requirements. Appendix E provides specific examples of how storm water pollutant control BMPs can be configured to also address hydromodification management.
2. Dedicate a portion of the combined BMP or treatment train as the portion that is intended to comply with storm water pollutant control requirements.
3. Follow all of the steps in this chapter related to demonstrating that the dedicated portion of the BMP or treatment train meets the applicable storm water pollutant control criteria.
4. Check BMP design criteria in Appendix E and F to ensure that the hydromodification management design features (additional footprint, additional depth, modified outlet structure, lower discharge rates, etc.) do not compromise the treatment function of the BMP.
5. On project plans and in the O&M manual, clearly denote the portion of the BMP that serves the storm water pollutant control function.

Alternative approaches that meet both the storm water pollutant control and hydromodification management requirements may be acceptable at the discretion of the City Engineer and shall be documented in the SWQMP. Also refer to Section 6.3.6 for additional guidance.

Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

The purpose of hydromodification management requirements for PDPs is to minimize the potential of storm water discharges from the MS4 from causing altered flow regimes and excessive downstream erosion in receiving waters. Hydromodification management implementation for PDPs includes two components: 1) protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas, and 2) flow control for post-project runoff from the project site. For PDPs subject to hydromodification management requirements, this Chapter provides guidance to meet the performance standards for the two components of hydromodification management.

The civil engineer preparing the hydromodification management study for a project will find within this Chapter and Appendix G of this manual, along with watershed-specific information in the WMAA, all necessary information to meet the MS4 Permit standards. Should unique project circumstances require an understanding beyond what is provided in this manual, then consult the March 2011 Final HMP, which documents the historical development of the hydromodification management requirements.

Guidance for flow control of post-project runoff is based on the March 2011 Final HMP, with modifications in this manual based on updated requirements in the MS4 Permit. The March 2011 Final HMP was prepared based on the 2007 MS4 Permit, not the MS4 Permit that drives this manual. In instances where there are changes to hydromodification management criteria or procedures based on the MS4 Permit, the criteria and procedures presented in this manual supersede the March 2011 Final HMP.

Protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas is a new requirement of the MS4 Permit and is not covered in the March 2011 Final HMP. The standards and management practices for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas are presented here in the manual.

6.1 Hydromodification Management Applicability and Exemptions

As noted in Chapter 1, Section 1.6, a project may be exempt from hydromodification management requirements if it meets any one of the following conditions:

- The project is not a PDP;
- The proposed project will discharge runoff directly to existing underground storm drains discharging directly to water storage reservoirs, lakes, enclosed embayments, or the Pacific Ocean;
- The proposed project will discharge runoff directly to conveyance channels whose bed and bank are concrete lined all the way from the point of discharge to water storage reservoirs, lakes, enclosed embayments, or the Pacific Ocean; or
- The proposed project will discharge runoff directly to an area identified by the Copermittees as appropriate for an exemption by the WMAA for the watershed in which the project resides.

The above criteria reflects the latest list of exemptions that are allowed under the MS4 Permit and therefore supersedes criteria found in earlier publications.

Exempt water storage reservoirs and lakes in San Diego County are shown in the WMAA for each watershed. To qualify for the potential exemption, the outlet elevation of the storm water conveyance system discharging to the water storage reservoir or lake must be at or below either the normal operating water surface elevation or the reservoir spillway elevation, and properly designed energy dissipation must be provided.

6.2 Protection of Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas

When hydromodification management requirements are applicable according to Section 6.1, the applicant must determine if the project will impact any areas that are determined to be critical coarse sediment yield areas. A critical coarse sediment yield area is an area that has been identified as an active or potential source of coarse sediment to downstream channel reaches. Potential critical coarse sediment yield areas for each watershed management area are delineated in the associated WMAA.

If potential critical coarse sediment yield areas are identified within the project drainage boundaries based on the maps included in the WMAA, the areas should be assumed to be critical coarse sediment yield areas requiring protection unless further study determines either: (1) based on detailed project-level verification of Geomorphic Landscape Units (GLUs) described in Section 6.2.1, the areas are not actually potential critical coarse sediment yield areas, or (2) based on the flow chart in Section 6.2.2, the receiving water system is not sensitive to reduction of coarse sediment yield, or (3) based on detailed investigation described in Section 6.2.3, the areas are not producing sediment that is critical to receiving streams.

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

For projects with critical coarse sediment yield areas identified within the project drainage boundaries, Section 6.2.4 provides management measures for areas that are onsite, and Section 6.2.5 provides management measures for areas that are offsite and draining through the project. If no potential critical coarse sediment yield areas are identified within the project drainage boundaries, no measures for protection of critical coarse sediment are necessary. The project will require measures for flow control only (see Section 6.3).

The first step to determine if the project will impact any critical coarse sediment yield areas is to consult the map included in the WMAA. The outcome of that initial analysis will determine the need for subsequent analysis as follows:

- If the project is shown to not impact any potential critical coarse sediment yield areas according to the WMAA map, typically no further analysis is required. This includes reviewing the entire drainage area draining through the project site for nearby potential critical coarse sediment yield areas where the runoff will travel through the project site. Because the WMAA maps are macro-level maps that may not represent project-level detail, the City Engineer may require additional project-level investigation described in Section 6.2.1 even when the maps included in the WMAA do not indicate the presence of potential critical coarse sediment yield areas.
- If the project is shown to impact potential critical coarse sediment yield areas according to the WMAA map, then the applicant may conduct one or further analyses described in Sections 6.2.1, 6.2.2, and 6.2.3. The additional analyses are optional. The result of any of the additional analyses may invalidate the finding or modify the finding of the WMAA map, or it may confirm the finding of the WMAA map.
- If it is determined that the project will impact critical coarse sediment yield areas after the applicant has exercised all elected options for further analyses, then management measures described in Sections 6.2.4 and 6.2.5 are required.

6.2.1 Verification of GLUs Onsite

The Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Area maps in the WMAAs identify areas that are considered potential critical coarse sediment yield areas based on their GLU. A GLU is a combination of slope, geology, and land cover. A regional-level WMAA was prepared that determined GLUs that are considered to be potential critical coarse sediment yield areas. These GLUs are areas with a combination of open (undeveloped) land cover, high relative sediment production based on a normalized revised universal soil loss equation analysis, and coarse grained geologic material (material that is expected to produce greater than 50% sand when weathered).

The maps included in the WMAA are macro-level maps that may not represent project-level detail. If the WMAA maps indicate the presence of potential critical coarse sediment yield areas within the project site, detailed project-level review of GLUs onsite may be performed to verify the presence or absence of potential critical coarse sediment yield areas within the project site. Some jurisdictions may require verification of GLUs for all projects (including projects where the WMAA maps do not indicate the presence of potential critical coarse sediment yield areas).

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

The following data are needed to verify the GLUs onsite:

- Project boundary
- Classification of pre-project slopes within the project boundary into four (4) categories defined in Appendix H
- Classification of underlying geology within the project boundary into seven (7) categories defined in Appendix H
- Classification of pre-project land cover within the project boundary into six (6) categories defined in Appendix H. In this context, use “pre-project” land cover, including any existing impervious areas. Assumption of “pre-development” land cover is not required for GLU analysis

Intersect the geologic categories, land cover categories, and slope categories within the project boundary to create GLUs. This is a similar procedure to intersecting land uses with soil types to determine runoff coefficients or runoff curve numbers for hydrologic studies, but there are three categories to consider for the GLU analysis (slope, geology, and land cover), and the GLUs are not to be composited into a single GLU. When GLUs have been created, determine whether any of the GLUs listed in Table 6-1 are found within the project boundary. The GLUs listed in Table 6-1 are considered to be potential critical coarse sediment yield areas.

TABLE 1-1. Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas

GLU	Geology	Land Cover	Slope (%)
CB-Agricultural/Grass-3	Coarse Bedrock	Agricultural/Grass	20% - 40%
CB-Agricultural/Grass-4	Coarse Bedrock	Agricultural/Grass	>40%
CB-Forest-2	Coarse Bedrock	Forest	10 – 20%
CB-Forest-3	Coarse Bedrock	Forest	20% - 40%
CB-Forest-4	Coarse Bedrock	Forest	>40%
CB-Scrub/Shrub-4	Coarse Bedrock	Scrub/Shrub	>40%
CB-Unknown-4	Coarse Bedrock	Unknown	>40%
CSI-Agricultural/Grass-2	Coarse Sedimentary Impermeable	Agricultural/Grass	10 – 20%
CSI-Agricultural/Grass-3	Coarse Sedimentary Impermeable	Agricultural/Grass	20% - 40%
CSI-Agricultural/Grass-4	Coarse Sedimentary Impermeable	Agricultural/Grass	>40%
CSP-Agricultural/Grass-4	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Agricultural/Grass	>40%
CSP-Forest-3	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Forest	20% - 40%
CSP-Forest-4	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Forest	>40%
CSP-Scrub/Shrub-4	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Scrub/Shrub	>40%

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

If none of the GLUs listed in Table 6-1 are present within the project boundary, no measures for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas onsite are necessary. If one or more GLUs listed in Table 6-1 are present within the project boundary, they shall be considered critical coarse sediment yield areas and protected with measures described in Section 6.2.4, or the project applicant may elect to continue to Section 6.2.2 to determine whether downstream systems would be sensitive to reduction of coarse sediment yield from the project site. If any of the GLUs listed in Table 6-1 are present offsite within area that drains through the project site, see Section 6.2.5 for management measures for critical coarse sediment yield areas offsite and draining through the project.

6.2.2 Downstream Systems Sensitivity to Coarse Sediment

If it has been determined that potential critical coarse sediment yield areas exist within the project site, the next step is to determine whether downstream systems would be sensitive to reduction of coarse sediment yield from the project site. Protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas is a necessary element of hydromodification management because coarse sediment supply is as much an issue for causing erosive conditions to receiving streams as are accelerated flows. However, not all downstream systems warrant preservation of coarse sediment supply. In some cases, downstream systems are negatively impacted by coarse sediment. For example, existing MS4 systems that cannot convey coarse sediment and become clogged, resulting in urban flood hazards and on-going maintenance needs. In some cases, downstream channels are aggrading with undesirable results (e.g. impacts to habitat or urban flooding). Use Figure 6-1 and the associated node descriptions to determine whether downstream systems require protection.

A checklist based on Figure 6-1 is provided in Appendix I. If, based on Figure 6-1, downstream systems do not warrant preservation of coarse sediment supply, no measures for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas are necessary. If, based on Figure 6-1, downstream systems must be protected, continue to Section 6.2.3 for optional additional analysis that may refine the extents of critical coarse sediment yield areas onsite, and Section 6.2.4 for management measures.

- Figure 6-1, Node 1 – Determine what type of system receives the project site runoff: does the project connect to an existing hardened MS4 system or discharge to an un-lined channel?
- Figure 6-1, Node 2 – If the project discharges runoff to an existing hardened MS4 system, determine whether the system can convey sediment (self-cleaning system) or will trap (sink) sediment. Existing systems with very low slope, constrictions, existing treatment control (pollutant control) BMPs, or existing detention basins typically will trap sediment, which can result in flooding and increased maintenance costs. When existing systems will trap sediment, measures to allow coarse sediment to be conveyed into the MS4 system are not recommended. Consult the City Engineer to determine if existing MS4 systems are impacted by sediment, and any other criteria defined by the City Engineer.
- Figure 6-1, Node 3 – If the existing MS4 system can convey coarse sediment (self-cleaning system, e.g. velocity will be greater than 6 feet per second in a 2-year storm event), determine what type of system receives the runoff.
- Figure 6-1, Node 4 – Un-lined channels shall be assumed to require protection of coarse sediment supply unless the channel has been identified by the City's maintenance records as impacted by deposition of sediment, and any other criteria defined by the City Engineer.

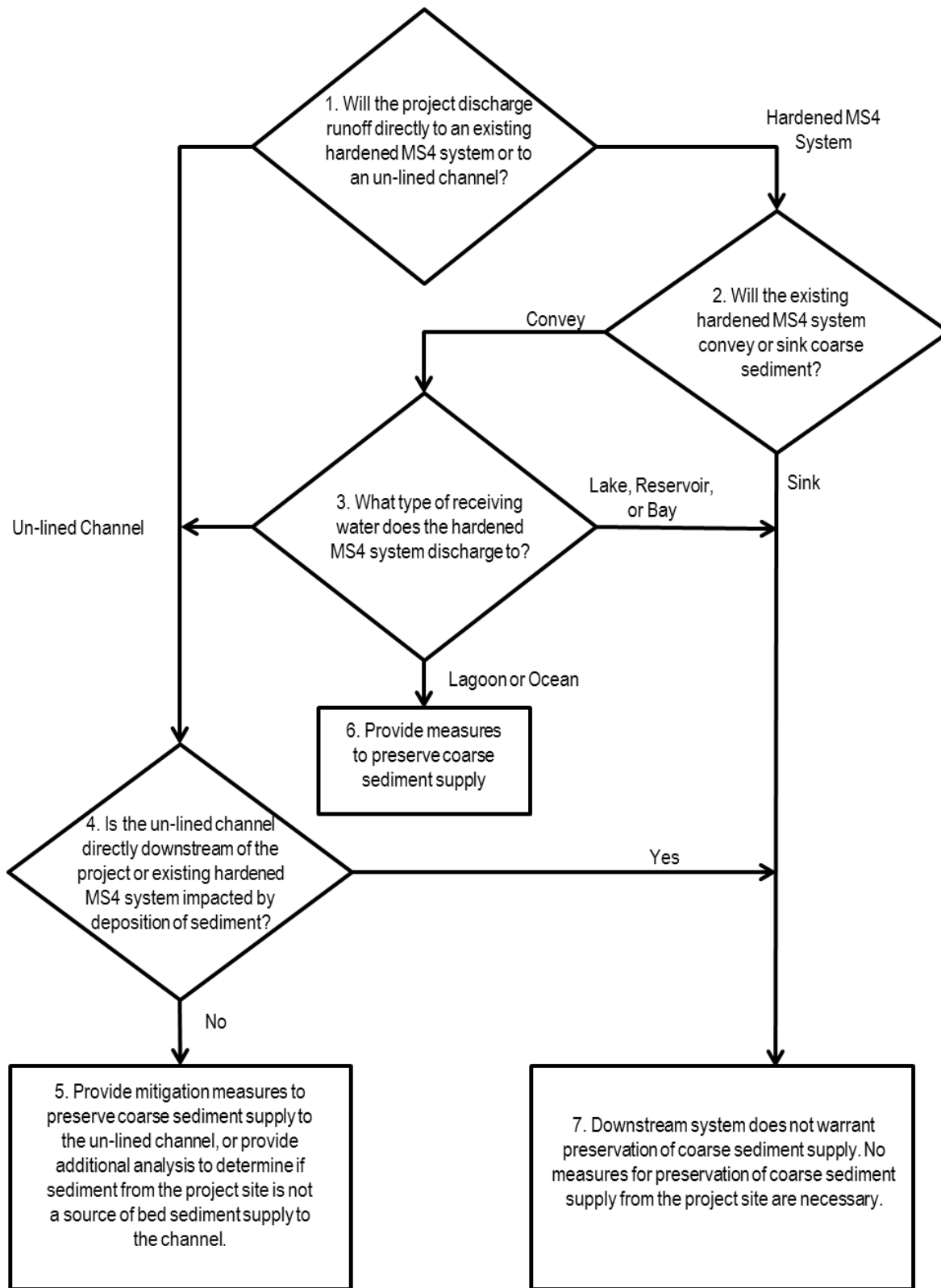


FIGURE 1-1. Evaluation of Downstream Systems Requirements for Preservation of Coarse Sediment Supply

6.2.3 Optional Additional Analysis of Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas Onsite

When it has been determined based on the GLU analysis that potential critical coarse sediment yield areas are present within the project boundary, and it has been determined that downstream systems require protection, additional analysis may be performed that may refine the extents of actual critical coarse sediment yield areas to be protected onsite.

The GLU analysis that identifies potential critical coarse sediment yield areas does not define whether the areas are actually producing sediment that is critical to receiving streams. The GLU analysis identifies "potential" areas, which will be assumed to be critical unless further investigation determines the sediment is not critical to the receiving stream. Sediment that is critical to receiving streams is the sediment that is a significant source of bed material to the receiving stream (bed sediment supply).

Section 2.3.i of the "Santa Margarita Region HMP," dated May 2014 (herein "May 2014 SMR HMP"), provides methods of analysis to determine whether a portion of the site is a significant source of bed material to the receiving stream ("Step 1" of the May 2014 SMR HMP's three-step process for compliance with the sediment supply performance standard). The analysis will identify areas that are a significant source of bed sediment supply to the receiving stream, or eliminate areas that are not expected to be a significant source of bed sediment supply to the receiving stream. A civil engineer designing a PDP in San Diego may opt to prepare this analysis to refine the extents of actual critical coarse sediment yield areas to be protected onsite, using the worksheets that were developed for the Santa Margarita Region Water Quality Management Plan Template. A copy of the relevant portion of the May 2014 SMR HMP is included in Appendix H of this manual. For additional information, consult the May 2014 SMR HMP.

Areas that are not expected to be a significant source of bed sediment supply to the receiving stream do not require protection. If it is determined that the potential critical coarse sediment yield areas are producing sediment that is critical to receiving streams, or if the optional additional analysis presented above has not been performed, the project must provide management measures for protection of critical coarse sediment yield.

6.2.4 Management Measures for Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas Onsite

The following are management measures for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas onsite:

- 1 Avoid disturbing critical coarse sediment yield areas, or
- 1 Subject to jurisdiction approval, provide project-specific onsite measures if critical coarse sediment yield areas will be disturbed.

6.2.4.1 Avoidance of Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas

Avoidance of critical coarse sediment yield areas is the preferred management measure.

The civil engineer shall designate onsite areas that are to be avoided (undisturbed) for the purpose of preserving coarse sediment yield. When feasible, the same areas should be considered as potential habitat preservation areas. If undisturbed critical coarse sediment yield areas will drain through developed portions of the project, these undisturbed areas must not be routed through detention

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

basins or other facilities with restricted outlets that will trap sediment. The project's storm water conveyance system shall be designed to bypass these areas to ensure that critical coarse sediment can be discharged to receiving waters, such that there is no net impact to the receiving water. The bypass shall be designed with sufficient capacity and slope to convey sediment from undisturbed areas and not result in sediment accumulation on developed areas of a site.

6.2.4.2 Project-Specific Onsite Measures

If it is determined that avoidance of critical coarse sediment yield areas is infeasible, the City Engineer may allow the civil engineer to propose project-specific onsite measures to ensure that critical coarse sediment can be discharged to receiving waters, such that there is no net impact to the receiving water.

For example, adjusting the post-project flow duration curve to maintain pre-project conditions in the receiving channel with the expected change in bed sediment supply from the site. The following text excerpted from pages 32-33 of the May 2014 SMR HMP provides potential methods of analysis:

“Alternatively, the User may propose adjusting the flow duration curve to maintain pre-project conditions in the receiving channel with the expected change in Bed Sediment Supply discharge from the project site. The erosion potential (total sediment transported in the proposed condition vs. the baseline) should be modeled and used to adjust the flow duration curve to ensure a condition that does not vary more than 10% from the natural condition. Bledsoe (2002) introduced the index of stream erosion potential (E_p), which compares the erosive power of pre- and post-development streamflows. This index allows comparison of sediment-transport relationships to ensure that an erosion potential that is comparable to pre-development conditions is achieved. Changes in Total Sediment Supply after development are accounted for by changing the target E_p from 1.0 (proposed is the same as pre-project) in proportion to the change in Bed Sediment Supply (post-development/pre-development), calculated using the six steps above. This option may not be practical when changes in Bed Sediment Supply are relatively large (greater than 50%). The User should determine, using best professional judgment, if the alternative modeling approach is applicable.”

“The alternative modeling approach must include the following:

- 1 Continuous hydrologic simulation for the project baseline condition and proposed condition over the range of flow values up to the pre-project 10-year event;
- 2 Sediment transport model of the receiving channel for the PDP baseline condition and proposed condition;
- 3 Analysis of the change in Bed Sediment Supply from the PDP baseline condition to the proposed condition;
- 4 Explanation of method used to control the discharge from the PDP to account for changes in the delivered Bed Sediment Supply; and
- 5 Summary report.”

“The User must demonstrate through a channel stability impact assessment that the changes to both the amount of Bed Sediment Load being transported and the amount of sediment supplied to the receiving channel will maintain the general trends of aggradation and degradation in the different impacted channel reaches, which are representative of the

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

pre-development geomorphologic state of a channel. Typical channel sediment continuity analysis procedures may be performed using moveable bed fluvial models such as HEC-6t or equivalent.”

“Receiving channel monitoring may be required for the project site to verify that the PDP does not result in long-term changes to the receiving channel. The User should make a recommendation if long-term monitoring is required, for concurrence by the Copermittee with jurisdiction over the project site. Some of the considerations in assessing the need for a long-term monitoring program are:

1. Total area of the watershed at the PDP discharge point vs. the PDP area;
2. Condition and type of receiving channel;
3. Magnitude of change in Bed Sediment Supply to the receiving channel;
4. Relief of the land on the project site;
5. Number of channels (density) potentially delivering Bed Sediment Supply to the receiving channel, and the delivery ratio; and
6. Soil characteristics on the project site.”

The project-specific onsite measures described above may be approved subject to the discretion of the City Engineer. Applicants considering such measures should consult the City Engineer to determine study requirements.

6.2.5 Management Measures for Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas Offsite and Draining Through the Project

Critical coarse sediment yield areas that are offsite and draining through the project also require attention in the project design.

When critical coarse sediment yield areas are identified adjacent to the project site (e.g. hillsides that will drain through the site), protection of these areas is similar to protection of undisturbed critical coarse sediment yield areas onsite. These areas must not be routed through detention basins or other facilities with restricted outlets that will trap sediment. The project storm water conveyance system shall be designed to bypass these areas to ensure that critical coarse sediment can be discharged to receiving waters, such that there is no net impact to the receiving water. The bypass shall be designed with sufficient capacity and slope to convey sediment from undisturbed areas and not result in sediment accumulation atop developed areas of a site.

6.3 Flow Control for Hydromodification Management

PDPs subject to hydromodification management requirements must provide flow control for post-project runoff to meet the flow control performance standard.

This is typically accomplished using structural BMPs that may include any combination of infiltration basins; bioretention, biofiltration with partial retention, or biofiltration basins; or detention basins. This Section will discuss design of flow control measures for hydromodification management. This Section is intended to be used following the source control and site design processes described in Chapter 4 and the storm water pollutant control design process described in Chapter 5.

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

The flow control performance standard is as follows (adapted from the March 2011 Final HMP, with modifications to meet the requirements of the MS4 Permit):

- 1 For flow rates ranging from 10 percent, 30 percent or 50 percent of the pre-development 2-year runoff event ($0.1Q_2$, $0.3Q_2$, or $0.5Q_2$) to the pre-development 10-year runoff event (Q_{10}), the post-project discharge rates and durations shall not deviate above the pre-development rates and durations by more than 10 percent over and more than 10 percent of the length of the flow duration curve. The specific lower flow threshold will depend on the erosion susceptibility of the receiving stream for the project site (see Section 6.3.4).
- 2 For flow rates ranging from the lower flow threshold to Q_5 , the post-project peak flows shall not exceed pre-development peak flows. For flow rates from Q_5 to Q_{10} , post-project peak flows may exceed pre-development flows by up to 10 percent for a 1-year frequency interval. For example, post-project flows could exceed pre-development flows by up to 10 percent for the interval from Q_9 to Q_{10} or from $Q_{5.5}$ to $Q_{6.5}$, but not from Q_8 to Q_{10} .

In this context, Q_2 and Q_{10} refer to flow rates determined based on continuous simulation hydrologic modeling. The range from a fraction of Q_2 to Q_{10} represents the range of geomorphically significant flows for hydromodification management in San Diego. The upper bound of the range of flows to control is pre-development Q_{10} for all projects. The lower bound of the range of flows to control, or “lower flow threshold” is a fraction of pre-development Q_2 that is based on the erosion susceptibility of the stream and depends on the specific natural system (stream) that a project will discharge to. Tools have been developed in the March 2011 Final HMP for assessing the erosion susceptibility of the stream (see Section 6.3.4 below for further discussion of the lower flow threshold).

When selecting the type of structural BMP to be used for flow control, consider the types of structural BMPs that will be utilized onsite for pollutant control.

Both storm water pollutant control and flow control for hydromodification management can be achieved within the same structural BMPs. For example, a full infiltration BMP that infiltrates the DCV for pollutant control could include additional storage volume above or below ground to provide either additional infiltration of storm water or control of outflow for hydromodification management. If possible, the structural BMPs for pollutant control should be modified to meet flow control performance standards in addition to the pollutant control performance standards. See Section 6.3.6 for further discussion of integrating structural BMPs for pollutant control and flow control.

6.3.1 Point(s) of Compliance

For PDPs subject to hydromodification management requirements, the flow control performance standard must be met for each natural or un-lined channel that will receive runoff from the project.

This may require multiple structural BMPs within the project site if the project site discharges to multiple discrete outfalls. When runoff is discharged to multiple natural or un-lined channels within a project site, each natural or un-lined channel must be considered separately and points of compliance (POCs) for flow control must be provided for each natural or un-lined channel, including situations where the channels will confluence before leaving the project boundary. When

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

runoff from the project site does not meet a natural or un-lined channel onsite, instead traveling some distance downstream of the project in storm drain systems or lined channels prior to discharge to natural or un-lined channels, the POC(s) for flow control analysis shall be placed at the project boundary (i.e., comparing the pre-development and post-project flows from the project area only, not analyzing the total watershed draining to the offsite POC), unless the project is draining to and accommodated by an approved master planned or regional flow control BMP.

For individual projects draining to approved master planned or regional flow control BMPs, the POC for flow control analysis may be offsite of the specific project application.

In these instances, the individual project draining to a master planned or regional flow control BMP shall reference the approved design documents for the BMP, and shall demonstrate that either (a) the individual project design is consistent with assumptions made for imperviousness and features of the project area when the master planned or regional BMP was designed, or (b) the master planned or regional BMP still meets performance standards when the actual proposed imperviousness and features of the project area are considered.

6.3.2 Offsite Area Restrictions

Runoff from offsite undeveloped areas should be routed around structural BMPs for flow control whenever feasible.

Methods to route flows around structural BMPs include designing the site to avoid natural drainage courses, or using parallel storm drain systems. If geometric constraints prohibit the rerouting of flows from undeveloped areas around a structural BMP, a detailed description of the constraints must be submitted to the City Engineer.

Structural BMPs for flow control must be designed to avoid trapping sediment from natural areas regardless of whether the natural areas are critical coarse sediment yield areas or not.

Reduction in coarse sediment supply contributes to downstream channel instability. Capture and removal of natural sediment from the downstream watercourse can create “hungry water” conditions and the increased potential for downstream erosion. Additionally, coarse or fine sediment from natural areas can quickly fill the available storage volume in the structural BMP and/or clog a small flow control outlet, which can cause the structural BMP to overflow during events that should have been controlled, and will require frequent maintenance. Failure to prevent clogging of the principal control orifice defeats the purpose of a flow control BMP, since basin inflows would simply overtop the control structure and flow unattenuated downstream, potentially worsening downstream erosion.

6.3.3 Requirement to Control to Pre-Development (Not Pre-Project) Condition

The MS4 Permit requires that post-project runoff must be controlled to match pre-development runoff conditions, not pre-project conditions, for the range of flow rates to be controlled.

Pre-development runoff conditions are defined in the MS4 Permit as "approximate flow rates and durations that exist or existed onsite before land development occurs."

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

- **Redevelopment PDPs:** Use available maps or development plans that depict the topography of the site prior to development, otherwise use existing onsite grades if historic topography is not available. Assume the infiltration characteristics of the underlying soil. Use available information pertaining to existing underlying soil type such as soil maps published by the Natural Resource Conservation Service (NRCS). Do not use runoff parameters for concrete or asphalt to estimate pre-development runoff conditions.
- **New development PDPs:** The pre-development condition typically equates to runoff conditions immediately before project construction. However if there is existing impervious area onsite, as with redevelopment, the new development project must not use runoff parameters for concrete or asphalt to estimate pre-development runoff conditions.

When it is necessary for runoff from offsite impervious area (not a part of the project) to co-mingle with project site runoff and be conveyed through a project's structural flow control BMP, the offsite impervious area may be modeled as impervious in both the pre- and post- condition models. A project is not required to provide flow control for storm water from offsite. This also means that for redevelopment projects not subject to the 50% rule (i.e., redevelopment projects that result in the creation or replacement of impervious surface in an amount of less than 50% of the area of impervious surface of the previously existing development), comingled runoff from undisturbed portions of the previously existing development (i.e., areas that are not a part of the project) will not require flow control. Flow control facilities for comingled offsite and onsite runoff would be designed to process the total volume of the comingled runoff through the facility, but would provide mitigation for the excess runoff (difference of developed to pre-developed condition) based on onsite impervious areas only. The project applicant must clearly explain why it was not feasible or practical to provide a bypass system for storm water from offsite. The City Engineer may request that the project applicant provide a supplemental analysis of onsite runoff only (i.e., supplemental model of the project area only).

6.3.4 Determining the Low Flow Threshold for Hydromodification Flow Control

The range of flows to control for hydromodification management depends on the erosion susceptibility of the receiving stream.

The range of flows to control is either:

- $0.1Q_2$ to Q_{10} for projects discharging to streams with high susceptibility to erosion (and this is the default range of flows to control when a stream susceptibility study has not been prepared),
- $0.3Q_2$ to Q_{10} for projects discharging to streams with medium susceptibility to erosion as determined by a stream susceptibility study approved by the City Engineer, or
- $0.5Q_2$ to Q_{10} for projects discharging to streams with low susceptibility to erosion as determined by a stream susceptibility study approved by the City Engineer.

The project applicant may opt to design to the default low flow threshold of $0.1Q_2$, or provide assessment of the receiving stream ("channel screening" a.k.a. "geomorphic assessment"), which may result in a higher low flow threshold of $0.3Q_2$ or $0.5Q_2$ for project hydromodification management.

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

Use of a higher low flow threshold of 0.3Q2 or 0.5Q2 must be supported by a Channel Screening Report. Channel screening is based on a tool developed by the Southern California Coastal Water Research Project (SCCWRP), documented in SCCWRP's Technical Report 606 dated March 2010, "Hydromodification Screening Tools: Field Manual for Assessing Channel Susceptibility." The SCCWRP channel screening tool considers channel conditions including channel braiding, mass wasting, and proximity to the erosion threshold. SCCWRP's Technical Report 606 is included in Appendix B of the March 2011 Final HMP, and can also be accessed through SCCWRP's website. The result of applying the channel screening tool will be classification of high, medium, or low susceptibility to erosion, corresponding to low flow thresholds of 0.1Q2, 0.3Q2, and 0.5Q2, respectively, for the receiving stream. Note that the City Engineer may require that the channel screening study has been completed within a specific time frame prior to their review, and/or may apply a sunset date to their approval of a channel screening study.

The receiving stream is the location where runoff from the project is discharged to natural or un-lined channels.

The receiving stream may be onsite or offsite. The POC for channel screening is the point where runoff initially meets an un-lined or natural channel, regardless of whether the POC for flow control facility sizing is at or within the project boundary or is offsite. A project may have a different POC for channel screening vs. POC for flow control facility sizing if runoff from the project site is conveyed in hardened systems from the project site to the un-lined or natural channel. The erosion susceptibility of the receiving stream must be evaluated at the POC for channel screening, and for an additional distance known as the domain of analysis, defined in SCCWRP's Technical Report 606.

6.3.5 Designing a Flow Control Facility

Flow control facilities for hydromodification management must be designed based on continuous simulation hydrologic modeling.

Continuous simulation hydrologic modeling uses an extended time series of recorded precipitation data and evapotranspiration data as input and generates hydrologic output, such as surface runoff, groundwater recharge, and evapotranspiration, for each model time step. Using the continuous flow output, peak flow frequency and duration statistics can be generated for the pre-development and post-project conditions for the purpose of matching pre-development hydrologic conditions in the range of geomorphically significant flow rates. Peak flow frequency statistics estimate how often flow rates will exceed a given threshold. Flow duration statistics determine how often a particular flow rate is exceeded. To determine if a flow control facility meets hydromodification management performance standards, peak flow frequency and flow duration curves must be generated and compared for pre-development and post-project conditions.

Flow control facilities may be designed using either sizing factors presented in Appendix B of this manual, or using project-specific continuous simulation modeling. The sizing factors were developed based on unit-area continuous simulation models. This means the continuous simulation hydrologic modeling has already been done and the project applicant needs only to apply the sizing factors to the project's effective impervious area to size a facility that meets flow control performance standards. The sizing factor method is intended for simple studies that do not include diversion, do not include significant offsite area draining through the project from upstream, and do not include offsite area downstream of the project area. Use of the sizing factors is limited to the specific

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

structural BMPs for which sizing factors were prepared. Project-specific continuous simulation modeling offers the most flexibility in the design, but requires the project applicant to prepare and submit a complete continuous simulation hydrologic model for review.

6.3.5.1 Sizing Factor Method

A project applicant may use sizing factors that were created to facilitate sizing of certain specific BMPs for hydromodification management.

Unit runoff ratios for determination of pre-development Q_2 and sizing factors for certain specific structural BMPs were previously developed based on continuous simulation hydrologic modeling of hypothetical unit watersheds. Details and descriptions for the sizing factors and specific BMPs are presented in the "San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology," dated January 2012, prepared by Brown and Caldwell (herein "BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology"). Although the sizing factors were developed under the 2007 MS4 Permit, the unit runoff ratios and some sizing factors developed for flow control facility sizing may still be applied. Users should note that due to the MS4 Permit requirement to control flow rates to pre-development condition instead of pre-project condition, unit runoff ratios for "impervious" soil cover categories from Table 1-6 of the BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology shall not be used when determining pre-development Q_2 . Sizing factors are to be applied to the effective impervious area draining to the facility. Calculations may be prepared using either the BMP Sizing Spreadsheet that was developed by the County of San Diego and is available on the Project Clean Water website, or using hand calculations. Refer to Appendix G.2 of this manual for guidance to use the sizing factor method.

6.3.5.2 Project-Specific Continuous Simulation Modeling

A project applicant may prepare a project-specific continuous simulation model to demonstrate compliance with hydromodification management performance standards.

This option offers the most flexibility in the design. In this case, the project applicant shall prepare continuous simulation hydrologic models for pre-development and post-project conditions, and compare the pre-development and post-project (with hydromodification flow control BMPs) runoff peaks and durations until compliance with the flow control performance standards is demonstrated. The project applicant will be required to quantify the long term pre-development and post-project runoff response from the site and establish runoff routing and stage-storage-discharge relationships for the planned flow control BMPs. There are several available hydrologic models that can perform continuous simulation analyses. Refer to Appendix G.1 of this manual for guidance for continuous simulation hydrologic modeling.

6.3.6 Integrating HMP Flow Control Measures with Pollutant Control BMPs

Both storm water pollutant control and flow control for hydromodification management can be achieved within the same structural BMP(s) or by a series of structural BMP(s).

The design process should start with an assessment of the controlling design factor, then the typical design process for an integrated structural BMP or series of BMPs to meet two separate performance standards at once involves (1) initiating the design based on the performance standard that is expected to require the largest volume of storm water to be retained, (2) checking whether the initial design incidentally meets the second performance standard, and (3) adjusting the design as

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

necessary until it can be demonstrated that both performance standards are met. The following are recommendations for initiating the design process:

- **Full infiltration condition:** retention for pollutant control performance standard is the controlling design factor. For a system that is based on full retention for storm water pollutant control, first design an initial retention area to meet storm water pollutant control standards for retention, then check whether the facility meets flow control performance standards. If the initial retention facility does not meet flow control performance standards: increase the volume of the facility, increasing retention if feasible or employing outflow control for runoff to be discharged from the facility; as needed to meet the flow control performance standards.
- **Partial infiltration condition:** retention for pollutant control performance standard is the controlling design factor. For a system that is based on partial retention for storm water pollutant control, first design the retention area to maximize retention as feasible. Then design an additional runoff storage area with outflow control for runoff to be discharged from the facility; as needed to meet the flow control performance standards. Then address pollutant control needs for the portion of the storm water pollutant control DCV that could not be retained onsite.
- **No infiltration condition:** flow control for hydromodification management standard is the controlling design factor. For a system that is based on biofiltration with no infiltration for storm water pollutant control, first design the facility to meet flow control performance standards, then check whether the facility meets biofiltration design standards for storm water pollutant control. If the flow control biofiltration facility does not meet performance standards for storm water pollutant control by biofiltration, increase the volume of the biofiltration facility as needed to meet pollutant control performance standards, or identify other methods to address pollutant control needs for the portion of the storm water pollutant control DCV that could not be processed with biofiltration onsite.

When an integrated structural BMP or series of BMPs is used for both storm water pollutant control and flow control for hydromodification management, separate calculations are required to demonstrate that pollutant control performance standards and hydromodification management standards are met.

When an integrated structural BMP or series of BMPs is proposed to meet the storm water pollutant control and flow control for hydromodification management obligations, the applicant shall either:

- Perform separate calculations to show that both hydromodification management and pollutant control performance standards are met independently by using guidance from Appendices B and G. Calculations performed shall be documented in the SQWMP. **Or**
- Develop an integrated design that meets the separate performance standards presented in Chapter 2 for both hydromodification management and pollutant control. In this option the BMP requirements to meet the pollutant control performance standard are optimized to account for the BMP storage provided for flow control, and vice versa. Calculations performed to develop an integrated design shall be documented in the SQWMP. Project approval when this option is selected is at the discretion of the City Engineer.

6.3.7 Drawdown Time

The maximum recommended drawdown time for hydromodification management facilities is 96 hours based on Section 6.4.6 of the March 2011 Final HMP.

This is based on instruction from the County of San Diego Department of Environmental Health for mitigation of potential vector breeding issues and the subsequent risk to human health. This standard applies to, but is not limited to, detention basins, underground storage vaults, and the above-ground storage portion of LID facilities. When this standard cannot be met due to large stored runoff volumes with limited maximum release rates, a vector management plan may be an acceptable solution if approved by the governing municipality.

In cases where a Vector Management Plan is necessary, it shall be incorporated into the SWQMP as an attachment. A Vector Management Plan will only be accepted after the applicant has proven infeasibility of meeting the required drawdown time using any and all allowable BMPs. The information included in the plan will vary based on the nature, extent and variety of potential vector sources. It is recommended that preparers consult with the Department of Environmental Health Vector Control Program for technical guidance. Plans should include the following information at a minimum:

- Project identification information;
- A description of the project, purpose of the report, and existing environmental conditions;
- A description of the management practices that will be employed to minimize vector breeding sources and any associated employee education required to run facilities and operations;
- A discussion of long term maintenance requirements;
- A summary of mitigation measures;
- References; and
- A list of persons and organizations contacted (project proponents are expected to obtain review and concurrence of proposed management practices from Department of Environmental Health Vector control program staff prior to submission).

The property owner and applicant must include and sign the following statement: “The measures identified herein are considered part of the proposed project design and will be carried out as part of project implementation. I understand the breeding of mosquitoes is unlawful under the State of California Health and Safety Code Section 2060-2067. I will permit the Vector Surveillance and Control program to place adult mosquito monitors and to enforce this document as needed.”

Refer to the sources below for additional guidance:

Report Guidance- http://www.sandiegocounty.gov/dplu/docs/Vector_Report_Formats.pdf

Department of Environmental Health Vector Control Program Department of Environmental Health – http://www.sandiegocounty.gov/deh/pests/vector_disease.html

It should be noted that other design factors may influence the required drawdown when hydromodification management BMPs are integrated with storm water pollutant control BMPs. Since hydromodification flow control BMPs are designed based on continuous simulation modeling, which is based on a continuous rainfall record and analyzes a continuous inflow and outflow of the BMPs, inter-event drawdown time and availability of the BMP for subsequent event inflow has been

Chapter 6: Hydromodification Management Requirements for PDPs

accounted for in the sizing. Therefore, drawdown recommendations for hydromodification management are based on public safety, not availability of the BMP for the next inflow event. Storm water pollutant control BMPs are designed on a single-event basis for a DCV (the 85th percentile storm event). Some of the design standards presented in Chapter 5 or Appendix B require that the pollutant control portion of the BMP drain within a specific time frame to ensure the pollutant control portion of the BMP is available for subsequent storm events. When hydromodification management BMPs are integrated with storm water pollutant control BMPs, the designer must evaluate drawdown time based on both standards.

6.4 In-Stream Rehabilitation

An alternative to onsite flow control for post-project runoff may be in-stream rehabilitation.

If there is an Alternative Compliance Program in place, the project applicant may be allowed to participate in an in-stream rehabilitation project in lieu of implementing onsite flow control BMPs. Refer to section 1.8 and Alternative Compliance Program guidance document to determine if this option is available in the project watershed.

Long Term Operation & Maintenance (O&M)

Permanent structural BMPs require routine inspection and maintenance for perpetuity to preserve the intended pollution control and/or flow control performance.

This Chapter addresses procedural requirements for implementation of long term O&M and the typical maintenance requirements of structural BMPs presented in this manual. Specific requirements for O&M Plan reports will be discussed in Chapter 8 with the Submittal Requirements.

7.1 Need for Permanent Inspection and Maintenance

7.1.1 Permit Requirements

The Permit requires that each Copermitee implement a program that requires and confirms that structural BMPs on all PDPs are designed, constructed, and maintained to remove pollutants in storm water to the MEP.

Routine inspection and maintenance of BMPs will preserve the design and the Permit objective to remove pollutants in storm water to the MEP. The Permit requirement specifically applies to PDP structural BMPs. However, source control BMPs and site design / LID BMPs which are utilized within a PDP are components of the project's storm water management scheme. The existence of such features may have reduced the volume of runoff that is required to be treated by structural BMPs. If source control, site design, or LID BMPs are not maintained, this can lead to decreased infiltration rates, and the clogging or failure of structural BMPs due to increased runoff volumes and more highly concentrated pollutants than intended.

Therefore, the City will also require confirmation of maintenance of source control BMPs and site design / LID BMPs as part of their PDP structural BMP maintenance documentation requirements (see Section 7.4).

7.1.2 Practical Considerations

Why do permanent structural BMPs require on-going inspection and maintenance into perpetuity?

By design, structural BMPs will trap pollutants transported by storm water. Structural BMPs are subject to deposition of solids such as sediment, trash, and other debris. Some structural BMPs are also subject to growth of vegetation, either by design (e.g. biofiltration) or incidentally. The

pollutants, any sediment accumulations, and any overgrown vegetation must be removed on a periodic basis for the life of the BMP to keep the BMP functioning as intended. Structural BMP components are also subject to clogging from trapped pollutants and growth of vegetation. Clogged BMPs can result in or contribute to flooding, standing water and mosquito breeding habitat. Maintenance is critical to ensure the ongoing drainage of the facility. All components of the BMP must be maintained, including both the surface and any sub-surface (i.e.: soil matrix) components.

Vegetated structural BMPs, including vegetated infiltration or partial infiltration BMPs, and above-ground detention basins, also require routine maintenance so that they don't inadvertently become wetlands, waters of the state, or sensitive species habitat under the jurisdiction of the United States Army Corps of Engineers, SDRWQCB, California Department of Fish and Wildlife, or the United States Fish and Wildlife Service. A structural BMP that is constructed in the vicinity of, or connected to, an existing jurisdictional water or wetland could inadvertently result in creation of expanded waters or wetlands. As such, vegetated structural BMPs have the potential to come under the jurisdiction of one or more of the above-mentioned resource agencies. This could result in the need for specific resource agency permits and costly mitigation to perform maintenance of the structural BMP. Along with proper placement of a structural BMP, routine maintenance is key to preventing this scenario.

7.2 Summary of Steps to Maintenance Agreement

Ownership and maintenance responsibility for structural BMPs should be discussed at the beginning of project planning, typically at the pre-application meeting.

Experience has shown provisions to finance and implement maintenance of BMPs can be a major stumbling block to project approval, particularly for *small residential subdivisions*. Project owners shall be aware of their responsibilities regarding storm water BMP maintenance and need to be familiar with the contents of the O&M Plan prepared for the project. Chapter 8 provides the guidelines for preparation of a site specific O&M Plan.



A maintenance mechanism must be determined prior to the issuance of any construction, grading, building permit, site development permit, or any other applicable permit. Below are typical steps and schedule for establishing a plan and mechanism to ensure on-going maintenance of structural BMPs.

TABLE 0-1. Schedule for Developing O&M Plan and Agreement

Item	Description	Time Frame
1	Determine structural BMP ownership, party responsible for permanent O&M, and maintenance funding mechanism	Prior to first submittal of a project application – discuss with staff at pre-application meeting
2	Identify expected maintenance actions	First submittal of a project application – identify in SWQMP
3	Develop detailed O&M Plan	Prior to issuance of construction, grading, building, site development, or other applicable permits
4	Update/finalize O&M Plan to reflect constructed BMPs with as-built plans and prepare an exhibit with baseline photos	Upon completion of construction of structural BMPs
5	Prepare, execute, and record a Facilities Maintenance Agreement (legal agreement to be recorded against the property by the County Assessor)	As required by City Engineer

7.3 Maintenance Responsibility

Who will be responsible for the maintenance of the BMPs into perpetuity?

The property owner and/or homeowner’s association or property owners association, is responsible to ensure inspection, O&M of BMPs on their property (unless responsibility has been formally transferred to community facilities district or other special district.), and to provide annual certification to the City demonstrating that the BMPs have been properly maintained and that they are functioning as intended. When property ownership changes (i.e. the property is sold or otherwise transferred to a new owner), maintenance responsibility also transfers to the new owner, typically by transfer of a maintenance agreement recorded against the property by the County Assessor. For structural BMPs that will be transferred to an agency, community facilities district, homeowners association, property owners association, or other special district, there may be an interim period during which the property owner is responsible until maintenance responsibility is formally transferred.

From the time that the structural BMP is constructed and activated (i.e. it is operating and processing storm water from storm events), it requires inspection and maintenance to ensure it continues to function as designed. Because of this, the Permit requires that each jurisdiction must "require the project applicant to submit proof of the mechanism under which ongoing long-term maintenance of all structural BMPs will be conducted." Requirements for proof of the maintenance mechanism may also differ depending on whether the long term O&M will be provided by a public or private party.

7.4 Long-Term Maintenance Documentation

As part of on-going BMP maintenance into perpetuity, property owners are required to provide documentation of maintenance for the BMPs on their property to support the Copermittees' reporting requirements to the SDRWQCB.

The Permit requires each Copermittee to verify that structural BMPs on each PDP "are adequately maintained, and continue to operate effectively to remove pollutants in storm water to the MEP through inspections, self-certifications, surveys, or other equally effective approaches." Each Copermittee must also maintain an inventory of all developments which have water quality features within its jurisdiction, identifies the party responsible for BMP maintenance at each property, includes the dates and findings of BMP inspections, and states any corrective actions and/or resolutions when applicable. The inventory and findings of maintenance verifications must be reported to the SDRWQCB annually.

To ensure compliance with these requirements, the City requires property owners to provide a signed Annual Self-certification Form which demonstrates that the O&M, as outlined within the property's SWQMP, has been performed. Self-certification Forms are due to the City by September 1 of each year. This ensures that there is time to complete any corrective actions which may be necessary prior to the start of the rainy season. Information which must be provided within the Self-Certification Form includes: details of the inspection dates, results, and maintenance activities, back up documentation (evidence) that the maintenance activities were properly conducted must also be provided and may come in the form of photographs, invoices, and/or other detailed descriptions of materials removed, and documentation of proper disposal. The responsible party must also confirm or update the contact information for the property to ensure inspection and maintenance is performed. An example Self-certification Form is included in Attachment I. Each property must maintain O&M records for a minimum of five years.

7.5 Inspection and Maintenance Frequency

How often is a property owner or other responsible party required to inspect and maintain BMPs on their property?

The minimum inspection and maintenance frequency is depends on the type of BMP, the property use, and the project's proximity to a waterway. The frequency for maintenance is determined based on CASQA specifications and the amount and quality of runoff delivered to the BMP.

Maintenance must be performed whenever needed, based on the maintenance indicators that are presented in Section 7.7. The optimum maintenance frequency is each time the maintenance threshold for removal of materials (sediment, trash, debris or overgrown vegetation) is met. If this maintenance threshold has been exceeded by the time the structural BMP is inspected, the BMP has been operating at reduced capacity. This would mean that the inspection and maintenance frequency needs to be revised, and that it is necessary to inspect and maintain the structural BMP more frequently. Routine maintenance will also help avoid more costly rehabilitative maintenance to repair damages that may occur when BMPs have not been adequately maintained on a routine basis.

During the first year of normal operation of a structural BMP (i.e. when the project is fully built out and occupied), inspection by the property owner's representative is recommended at least once prior

to August 31 and then monthly from September through May. Inspection during a storm event is also recommended. It is during and after a rain event when one can determine if the components of the BMP are functioning properly. After the initial period of frequent inspections, the minimum inspection and maintenance frequency can be determined based on the results of the first year inspections. Any modifications that are made to the O&M schedule must be documented and justified within the SWQMP.

City staff also inspect properties with water quality features. City inspection frequencies are primarily determined by whether the facility will, or will likely be a source of bacteria. Bacteria is the Highest Priority Water Quality Condition for the San Diego River Watershed. Projects with the potential of contributing bacteria to the watershed will receive a “high” priority, while all others will be “standard” priority. In general, the City inspects all high priority municipal facilities annually. Standard priority facilities are inspected at least once within the Permit term, which is expected to be a five-year period. These inspections may be either onsite or drive-by inspections. At minimum, 20 percent of the City’s existing development inventory receives onsite inspections every year. Drive-by inspections may be conducted where appropriate.

7.6 Measures to Control Maintenance Costs



Because BMPs must be maintained into perpetuity, it is essential to include measures to control short and long term maintenance costs, and ensure that the maintenance can reasonably be managed by the end user/responsible party.

The most effective way to reduce maintenance of BMPs is to prevent or reduce pollutants from being generated in the first place. Second, through the implementation of source control and site design BMPs, as required and described in Chapter 4 of this manual. Third, the structural BMP should include design features and be located to facilitate maintenance and inspections, as listed below.

Considerations for placement of vegetated BMPs:

- Locate structural BMPs outside of a floodway, floodplain, and other jurisdictional areas.
- Avoid direct connection to a natural surface water body.
- Discuss the location of the structural BMP with a wetland biologist to avoid placing a structural BMP in a location where it could become jurisdictional or be connected to a jurisdictional area.

Measures to facilitate collection of the trapped pollutants:

- Design a forebay to trap gross pollutants in a contained area that is readily accessible for maintenance. A forebay may be a dedicated area at the inlet entrance to an infiltration BMP, biofiltration BMP, or detention basin, or may be a gross pollutant separator installed within the storm drain that drains to the BMP.

Measures to facilitate access to the BMP:

- The BMP must be easily accessible by any equipment that may be needed for maintenance. Access requirements for maintenance will vary with the type of facility selected.
- The BMP must be readily accessible for inspection from a right of way.
- Infiltration BMPs, biofiltration BMPs and most above-ground detention basins and sand filters require routine landscape maintenance using the same equipment that is used for general landscape maintenance. At times these BMPs may require excavation of clogged media (e.g. bioretention soil media, or sand for the sand filter), and should be accessible to appropriate equipment for excavation and removal/replacement of media.
- Above-ground detention basins should include access ramps for trucks to enter the basin to bring equipment and to remove materials.
- Underground BMPs such as detention vaults, media filters, or gross pollutant separators used as forebays, typically require access by a vactor truck in order to remove materials. Proprietary BMPs such as media filters or gross pollutant separators may require access by a forklift or other truck for delivery and removal of media cartridges or other internal components. Access requirements must be verified with the manufacturer of proprietary BMPs.
- Vactor trucks are large, heavy, and difficult to maneuver. Structural BMPs that are maintained by vactor truck must include a level pad adjacent to the structural BMP, preferably with no vegetation or irrigation system (otherwise vegetation or irrigation system may be destroyed by the vactor truck).
- The sump area of a structural BMP should not exceed 20 feet in depth due to the loss of efficiency of a vactor truck. The water removal rate is three to four times longer when the depth is greater than 20 feet. Deep structures may require additional equipment (stronger vactor trucks, ladders, more vactor pipe segments).
- All manhole access points to underground structural BMPs must include a lid that can be easily opened, and be fitted with a ladder or steps.

Measures to facilitate inspection of the structural BMP

- Structural BMPs shall include inspection ports for observing all underground components that require inspection and maintenance.
- Silt level posts or other markings shall be **included** in all BMP components that will trap and store sediment, trash, and/or debris, so that the inspector may determine how full the BMP is, and the maintenance personnel may determine where the bottom of the BMP is. Posts or other markings shall be indicated and described on structural BMP plans.
- Vegetation requirements including plant type, percent of vegetation coverage, and minimum height (as applicable) shall be provided within the O&M plan and be indicated on any structural BMP and/or landscaping plans as appropriate or as required by the City Engineer.
- Signage or other demarcation indicating the location and boundary of the structural BMP is recommended, and may be required by the City Engineer.

When designing a structural BMP, the project engineer should always review the typical structural BMP maintenance actions listed in Section 7.7 to determine the potential maintenance equipment and access needs.

When selecting permanent structural BMPs for a project, the project engineer and project owner should evaluate the long term cost of maintenance. Considerations should include what type of maintenance contracts a future property owner, homeowners association or property owners association will need to manage, and whether the maintenance can be reasonable managed by the responsible party. The project engineer and owner should also consider how the types of materials used (e.g. proprietary vs. non-proprietary parts), equipment used (e.g. landscape equipment vs. tractor truck), actions/labor expected in the maintenance process and required qualifications of maintenance personnel (e.g. confined space entry) will affect the cost of long term O&M of the selected BMPs.

7.7 Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Structural BMPs

This Section presents typical maintenance indicators and expected maintenance actions (routine and corrective) for the most commonly used BMPs.

There are many different variations of structural BMPs, and structural BMPs may include multiple components. For the purpose of maintenance, the structural BMPs have been grouped into four categories based on common maintenance requirements:

- Vegetated infiltration or filtration BMPs
- Non-vegetated infiltration BMPs
- Non-vegetated filtration BMPs
- Detention BMPs
- LID BMPs

The project civil engineer is responsible for determining which categories are applicable based on the components of the structural BMP, and identifying the applicable maintenance indicators from within the category. Maintenance indicators and actions shall be shown on the construction plans and in the project-specific O&M Plan.

During inspection, the inspector checks the maintenance indicators. If one or more thresholds are met or exceeded, maintenance must be performed to ensure the structural BMP will function as designed during the next storm event.

7.7.1 Maintenance of Vegetated Infiltration or Filtration BMPs

"Vegetated infiltration or filtration BMPs" are BMPs that include vegetation as a component of the BMP. Applicable Fact Sheets may include INF-2 (bioretention), PR-1 (biofiltration with partial retention), BF-1 (biofiltration) or FT-1 (vegetated swale). The vegetated BMP may or may not include amended soils, subsurface gravel layer, underdrain, and/or impermeable liner. The project civil engineer is responsible for determining which maintenance indicators and actions shown below are applicable based on the components of the structural BMP.

7.7.2 Maintenance of Non-Vegetated Infiltration BMPs

"Non-vegetated infiltration BMPs" are BMPs that store storm water runoff until it infiltrates into the ground, and do not include vegetation as a component of the BMP (refer to the "vegetated BMPs" category for infiltration BMPs that include vegetation). Non-vegetated infiltration BMPs generally include non-vegetated infiltration trenches and infiltration basins, dry wells, underground infiltration galleries, and permeable pavement with underground infiltration gallery. Applicable Fact Sheets may include INF-1 (infiltration basin) or INF-3 (permeable pavement). The non-vegetated infiltration BMP may or may not include a pre-treatment device, and may or may not include above-ground storage of runoff. The project civil engineer is responsible for determining which maintenance indicators and actions shown in Table 7-2 are applicable based on the components of the structural BMP.

TABLE 0-2. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Vegetated BMPs

Typical Maintenance Indicator(s) for Vegetated BMPs	Maintenance Actions
Accumulation of sediment (sedimentation), litter, or debris	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials, without damage to the vegetation.
Poor vegetation establishment	Re-seed, re-plant, or re-establish vegetation per original plans, without the use of chemical applications.
Overgrown vegetation	Mow or trim as appropriate, but not less than the design height of the vegetation per original plans (e.g. a vegetated swale may require a minimum vegetation height).
Erosion due to concentrated irrigation flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and adjust the irrigation system.
Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas, and make appropriate corrective measures such as retilling the soil, replacing or amending the soil media, adding erosion control BMPs, adding stone at flow entry points, or minor re-grading to restore proper drainage according to the original plan. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction. Any modifications to the existing approved SWQMP must be reviewed and approved by the City in advance.
Standing water in vegetated swales	Take appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, loosening or replacing top soil to allow for better infiltration, or minor re-grading for proper drainage. If the issue is not corrected by restoring the BMP to the original plan and grade, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any additional repairs or reconstruction. Any modifications to the existing approved SWQMP must be reviewed and approved by the City in advance.
Standing water in bioretention, biofiltration with partial retention, or biofiltration areas, or flow-through planter boxes for longer than 96 hours following a storm event*	Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, clearing underdrains (where applicable), or repairing/replacing clogged or compacted soils.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear obstructions and properly dispose of materials.
Damage to structural components such as weirs, inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.
*These BMPs typically include a surface ponding layer as part of their function which may take no longer than 96 hours to drain following a storm event.	

TABLE 0-3. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Non-Vegetated Infiltration BMPs

Typical Maintenance Indicator(s) for Non-Vegetated Infiltration BMPs	Maintenance Actions
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris in infiltration basin, pre-treatment device, or on permeable pavement surface	Remove and properly dispose accumulated materials. Clean permeable pavements per product specifications.
Standing water in infiltration basin without subsurface infiltration gallery for longer than 96 hours following a storm event	Remove and replace clogged surface soils. The City may require the development and implementation of a Vector Management Plan.
Standing water in subsurface infiltration gallery for longer than 96 hours following a storm event	This condition requires investigation of why infiltration is not occurring. If feasible, corrective action shall be taken to restore infiltration (e.g. flush fine sediment or remove and replace clogged soils). BMP may require retrofit if infiltration cannot be restored. If retrofit is deemed necessary, the City Engineer shall be contacted prior to any repairs or reconstruction. The City may require the development and implementation of a Vector Management Plan.
Standing water in permeable paving area	Provide regular maintenance per product specifications. Flush fine sediment from paving and subsurface gravel. Provide routine vacuuming of permeable paving areas to prevent clogging.
Damage to permeable paving surface	Repair or replace damaged surface as appropriate. Do not allow permeable pavements to be sealed, paved over, or removed. Any change to the materials selected, size, or placement must be reviewed and approved by the City Engineer prior to proceeding with any modifications.
<p>Note: When inspection or maintenance indicates sediment is accumulating in an infiltration BMP, the DMA draining to the infiltration BMP should be examined to determine the source of the sediment, and corrective measures should be made (i.e.: implementing erosion control BMPs) to minimize the sediment supply.</p>	

7.7.3 Maintenance of Non-Vegetated Filtration BMPs

"Non-vegetated filtration BMPs" include media filters (FT-2) and sand filters (FT-3). These BMPs function by passing runoff through the media to remove pollutants. The project civil engineer is responsible for determining which maintenance indicators and actions shown in Table 7-4 are applicable based on the components of the structural BMP.

TABLE 0-4. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Filtration BMPs

Typical Maintenance Indicator(s) for Filtration BMPs	Maintenance Actions
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris	Remove and properly dispose accumulated materials.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear obstructions.
Clogged filter media	Remove and properly dispose filter media, and replace with fresh media.
Damage to components of the filtration system	Repair or replace as applicable.
Note: For proprietary media filters, refer to the manufacturer's maintenance guide.	

7.7.4 Maintenance of Detention BMPs

"Detention BMPs" includes basins, cisterns, vaults, and underground galleries that are primarily designed to store runoff for controlled release to downstream systems. For the purpose of the maintenance discussion, this category does not include an infiltration component (refer to "vegetated infiltration or filtration BMPs" or "non-vegetated infiltration BMPs" above). Applicable Fact Sheets may include HU-1 (cistern) or FT-4 (extended detention basin). There are many possible configurations of above ground and underground detention BMPs, including both proprietary and non-proprietary systems. The project civil engineer is responsible for determining which maintenance indicators and actions shown below are applicable based on the components of the structural BMP.

TABLE 0-5. Maintenance Indicators and Actions for Detention BMPs

Typical Maintenance Indicator(s) for Detention Basins	Maintenance Actions
Poor vegetation establishment	Re-seed, re-establish vegetation.
Overgrown vegetation	Mow or trim as appropriate.
Erosion due to concentrated irrigation flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and adjust the irrigation system.
Erosion due to concentrated storm water runoff flow	Repair/re-seed/re-plant eroded areas and make appropriate corrective measures such as adding erosion controls, adding stone at flow entry points, replacing soil media to restore infiltration, or re-grading where necessary.
Accumulation of sediment, litter, or debris	Remove and properly dispose of accumulated materials.
Standing water	Make appropriate corrective measures such as adjusting irrigation system, removing obstructions of debris or invasive vegetation, replacing soil media to restore infiltration, or minor re-grading for proper drainage.
Obstructed inlet or outlet structure	Clear obstructions and properly dispose of materials.
Damage to structural components such as weirs, inlet or outlet structures	Repair or replace as applicable.

Submittal Requirements

The review process must verify that storm water management objectives were considered in the project planning process and that opportunities to incorporate BMPs have been identified. The review process must confirm the site plan, landscape plan, and project storm water documents are congruent. Therefore, every jurisdiction in San Diego County requires a submittal documenting the storm water management design for every project that is subject to the requirements of this manual. This submittal is called a Storm Water Quality Management Plan (SWQMP). A complete and thorough project submittal will facilitate and expedite the review and approval, and may result in fewer revisions and re-submittals by the applicant. The Sections below discuss submittal requirements. In all cases the project applicant must provide sufficient documentation to demonstrate that applicable requirements of this manual and the Permit will be met.

The SWQMP plan shall address any phasing that is proposed for the project. The phasing plan shall identify the sequencing of the project BMP completion as well as identify the responsible party for the operation/maintenance for each phase (e.g. if the project owner will be responsible for the BMP maintenance for an interim period before formally transferring maintenance responsibility to an Home Owner Association or Property Owner Association, include requirements for notification when maintenance responsibility is transferred).

It is necessary for the City to review project plans for compliance with applicable requirements of this manual, the current Permit, and any other local regulations.

The review process must verify that storm water management objectives were considered in the project planning process and that opportunities to incorporate BMPs have been identified. The review process must confirm the site plan, landscape plan, and project storm water documents are congruent. Therefore, every jurisdiction in San Diego County requires a submittal documenting the storm water management design for every project that is subject to the requirements of this manual. This submittal is called a Storm Water Quality Management Plan (SWQMP). A complete and thorough project submittal will facilitate and expedite the review and approval, and may result in fewer revisions and re-submittals by the applicant. The Sections below discuss submittal requirements. In all cases the project applicant must provide sufficient documentation to demonstrate that applicable requirements of this manual and the Permit will be met.

8.1 Submittal Requirement for Standard Projects

8.1.1 Standard Project Submittal

For Standard Projects, the project submittal includes a compilation of checklists and forms.

The Standard Project submittal is a compilation of checklists that document that all permanent source control and site design BMPs have been considered for the project and implemented where feasible. All water quality features shall be shown on both site plans and landscaping plans. The Standard Project submittal consists of the following forms and/or checklists which are included in Appendix I of this manual:

- Form I-1: Applicability of Permanent BMP Requirements
- Form I-2: Priority Determination Form (Standard Project or PDP)
- Form I-3A: Site Information for Standard Projects
- Form I-4: Source Control BMP Checklist
- Form I-5: Site Design BMP Checklist
- City of Santee BMP Plan Sheet

8.2 Submittal Requirements for PDPs

8.2.1 PDP SWQMP

For PDPs, the project submittal shall include a SWQMP.

The SWQMP shall document that all permanent source control and site design BMPs have been considered for the project and implemented to the maximum extent feasible; document the planning process and the decisions that led to the selection of BMPs; provide the calculations for design of structural BMPs to demonstrate that applicable performance standards are met by the structural BMP design; identify O&M requirements of the selected BMPs; and identify the maintenance mechanism (see Sections 7.2 and 7.3) for long term O&M of BMPs.

PDPs shall use the SWQMP Template provided in Appendix A, which includes forms and/or checklists included in Appendix I of this manual as well as checklists for documentation of pollutant control and hydromodification management and structural BMP design. The SWQMP shall include copies of the relevant plan sheets showing site design, source control, and structural BMPs, and structural BMP maintenance requirements.

A SWQMP must be provided with the first submittal of a project application.

Storm water requirements will directly affect the layout of the project. Storm water requirements must be considered from the initial project planning and in project concept stage, and will be reviewed with each submittal. The process from initial project application through approval of the project plans often includes design changes to the site layout and features. Changes may be driven by storm water management requirements or other site requirements. Each time the site layout is

adjusted, whether the adjustment is directly due to storm water management requirements identified during the City's review of the storm water submittal, or is driven by other site requirements, the storm water management design must be revisited to ensure that the revised project layout and features meet the requirements of this manual and the Permit. An updated SWQMP must be provided with each submittal of revised project plans. The updated SWQMP should include documentation of changes to the site layout and features, and reasons for the changes. In the event that other site requirements identified during plan review render certain proposed storm water features infeasible (e.g. if fire department access requirements were identified that precluded use of certain surfaces or landscaping features that had been proposed), this must be documented as part of the decisions that led to the development of the final storm water management design.

8.2.1.1 O&M Plan

While the SWQMP must include general O&M requirements for BMPs.

The O&M requirements documented in the SWQMP must be sufficient to show that O&M requirements have been considered in the project planning and design. However, a final O&M Plan should reflect actual constructed structural BMPs to be maintained. **Photographs and as-built plans for the constructed structural BMPs must be included.** Local jurisdictions may have varying requirements for a final O&M Plan. Requirements may also vary depending on whether long term O&M will be furnished by a special district or private entity. See Section 8.2.3 for project closeout procedures including local requirements for finalizing O&M Plans, and Section 8.2.4 for additional requirements for private entity O&M of structural BMPs.

8.2.2 Requirements for Construction Plans

8.2.2.1 BMP Identification and Display on Plans

Plans for construction of the project (grading plans, improvement plans, and landscaping plans, as applicable) must show all permanent site design, source control, and structural BMPs, and must be congruent with the SWQMP.

The City requires all projects proponents to prepare a comprehensive Storm Water BMP Plan Sheet that identifies and displays all BMPs in one location. The single BMP Plan Sheet includes a site plan which depicts the location of each required site design, source control, and structural BMP, each of which must be uniquely coded/numbered. In addition, the plan must include a matrix listing all BMPs and provide a reference to the specific construction drawing sheet where each of the BMPs is shown. This matrix will also reference any associated specification sheets (CASQA or CalTrans), and a brief description of maintenance requirements. A copy of the BMP Plan sheet must be attached to each construction drawing set (building, mass grading, finished grading, improvements, and grading).

8.2.2.2 Structural BMP Maintenance Information on Construction Plans

Plans for construction of the project must provide sufficient information to describe maintenance requirements (thresholds and actions) for structural BMPs such that in the event all other separate O&M documents were lost, a new party studying construction plans for the project could identify the BMPs and determine the required maintenance actions.

For the purpose of long term O&M, the project plans must identify the following:

- How to access the structural BMP to inspect and perform maintenance;
- Features that are provided to facilitate inspection (e.g. observation ports, cleanouts, silt posts, or other features that allow the inspector to view necessary components of the structural BMP and compare to maintenance thresholds);
- Manufacturer and part number for proprietary parts;
- A reference to manufacturer spec sheets, CASQA guidelines, or to this BMP Design Manual should be provided; and
- When applicable, any special training or certification requirements for inspection and maintenance personnel such as confined space entry or hazardous waste management.

8.2.3 Design Changes During Construction and Project Closeout Procedures

8.2.3.1 Design Changes During Construction



Prior to occupancy and/or intended use of any portion of a PDP, the site must be in compliance with the requirements of this manual and the Permit.

Therefore, if any changes occur during construction that may affect the design of storm water quality management features, an amended SWQMP is required to be submitted and approved by the City prior to the approval of any construction changes. A construction change request must be made and the revision of the SWQMP must be approved by the City Engineer prior to implementation of any design changes or modifications. This might include changes to drainage patterns that occurred based on actual site grading and construction of storm water conveyance structures, or substitutions to storm water management features. Should changes be made in the field without an approved SWQMP revision or approved construction change, the project will be issued a Stop Work Order until the items are addressed to the satisfaction of the City Engineer.

8.2.3.2 Certification of Constructed BMPs

As part of the "Structural BMP Approval and Verification Process" required by the Permit, each structural BMP must be inspected to verify that it has been constructed and is operating in compliance with all of its specifications, plans, permits, ordinances, and the requirements of the Permit.

Since some portions of the structural BMP will not be readily visible after completion of construction (e.g. subsurface layers), the City requires that engineering inspections be completed throughout construction. In addition, the project proponent is required to document all phases of the construction and installation of each BMP in order to demonstrate proper placement, sizing, media, and functionality. At a minimum, documentation shall include photographic documentation

showing all phases of construction, an installation log sheet, BMP related material receipts, and other supporting documentation as requested. Lastly, the project engineer must provide a signed and stamped Certification Form that states that the BMPs have been constructed in conformance with the approved plans. A copy of this form is located in Appendix I. The City Engineer may require forms or other documentation be submitted prior to the inspection in order to facilitate the structural BMP inspection. Specific requirements for this process should be discussed in advance with the City Engineer.

8.2.3.3 Final O&M Plan

Upon completion of project construction, the City will require a final O&M Plan to be submitted.

A final O&M Plan reflects project-specific BMPs, and includes project-specific drawings, photographs, and maps, and identifies specific maintenance requirements and actions for the all BMPs. The final O&M Plan must be completed and approved by the City prior to final sign off and Certificate of Occupancy.

8.2.4 Additional Requirements for Private Entity O&M

This Section discusses private structural BMPs to be operated and maintained on private property by the property owner or manager.

8.2.4.1 O&M Agreements for Private BMP Maintenance

For privately owned and operated structural BMPs, the City requires execution of a Facility Maintenance Agreement (FMA).

An FMA is a recorded document signed by the local jurisdiction and the property owner committing the property owner to maintain the permanent BMPs for perpetuity. The FMA provides that, if the property owner fails to properly maintain the storm water facilities, the local jurisdiction may enter the property, restore the storm water facilities to operable condition, and obtain reimbursement, including administrative costs, from the property owner. Specific requirements and procedures for this process may vary by jurisdiction.

APPENDIX

Table of Contents

Appendix A Submittal Templates	1
A.1 Standard SWQMP	2
A.2 PDP SWQMP	4
Appendix B Storm Water Pollutant Control Hydrologic Calculations and Sizing Methods.....	1
B.1 DVC	2
B.1.1 Runoff Factor	2
B.1.2 Offline BMPs	3
B.1.3 85 th Percentile, 24-Hour Storm Event	3
B.2 Adjustments to Account for Site Design BMPs	7
B.2.1 Adjustments to Impervious Runoff Factor	7
B.2.2 Adjustments to DCV	9
B.3 Harvest and Use BMPs	12
B.3.1 Planning Level Harvest and Use Feasibility	12
B.3.2 Harvested Water Demand Calculation	14
B.3.3 Sizing Harvest and Use BMPs	18
B.4 Infiltration BMPs	19
B.4.1 Simple Method	20
B.4.2 Percent Capture Method	21
B.4.3 Technical Basis for Equivalent Sizing Methods	25
B.5 Biofiltration BMPs	27
B.5.1 Standard Biofiltration BMP Footprint Sizing Factors	29

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

B.5.2 Basis for Minimum Sizing Factor for Biofiltration BMPs	30
B.6 Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance)	34
B.6.1 PDP Most Significant Pollutants of Concern	34
B.6.2 Selection of Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs	37
B.6.3 Sizing Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs	45
Appendix C Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements.....	1
C.1 Purpose and Phrasing	2
C.2 Geotechnical Feasibility Criteria	3
C.2.1 Soil and Geologic Conditions	3
C.2.2 Settlement and Volume Change	4
C.2.3 Slope Stability	4
C.2.4 Utility Considerations	4
C.2.5 Groundwater Mounding	5
C.2.6 Retaining Walls and Foundations	5
C.2.7 Other Factors	5
C.3 Groundwater Quality and Water Balance Feasibility Criteria	5
C.3.1 Soil and Groundwater Contamination	6
C.3.2 Separation to Seasonal High Groundwater	6
C.3.3 Wellhead Protection	6
C.3.4 Contamination Risks from Land Use Activities	7
C.3.5 Consultation with Applicable Groundwater Agencies	7
C.3.6 Water Balance Impacts on Stream Flow	7
C.3.7 Downstream Water Rights	8
C.3.8 Other Factors	8
C.4 Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Report Requirements	8

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

C.4.1 Site Evaluation	8
C.4.2 Field Investigation	9
C.4.3 Reporting Requirements by Geotechnical Engineer	9
C.4.4 Reporting Requirements by the Project Design Engineer	11
C.5 Feasibility Screening Exhibits	16
Appendix D Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods for Selection and Design of Storm Water BMPs.....	1
D.1 Introduction	2
D.2 Role of Infiltration Testing in Different Stages of Project Development	2
D.3 Guidance for Selecting Infiltration Testing Methods	3
D.3.1 Desktop Approaches and Data Correlation Methods	6
D.3.2 Surface and Shallow Excavation Methods	7
D.3.3 Deeper Subsurface Tests	10
D.4 Specific Considerations for Infiltration Testing	12
D.4.1 Hydraulic Conductivity versus Infiltration Rate versus Percolation Rate	12
D.4.2 Cut and Fill Conditions	13
D.4.3 Effects of Direct and Incidental Compaction	14
D.4.4 Temperature Effects on Infiltration Rate	14
D.4.5 Number of Infiltration Tests Needed	15
D.5 Selecting a Safety Factor	16
D.5.1 Determining Factor of Safety	17
D.5.2 Site Suitability Considerations for Selection of an Infiltration Factor of Safety	17
D.5.3 Design Related Considerations for Selection of an Infiltration Factor of Safety	19
D.5.4 Implications of a Factor of Safety in BMP Feasibility and Design	20
Appendix E BMP Design Fact Sheets.....	1

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

E.1 Source Control BMP Requirements	3
E.2 SD-1 Street Trees	17
E.3 SD-5 Impervious Area Dispersion	21
E.4 SD-6A: Green Roofs	25
E.5 SD-6B Permeable Pavement (Site Design BMP)	29
E.6 SD-8 Rain Barrels	30
E.7 HU-1 Cistern	31
E.8 INF-1 Infiltration Basin	35
E.9 INF-2 Bioretention	40
E.10 INF-3 Permeable Pavement (Pollutant Control)	48
E.11 PR-1 Biofiltration with Partial Retention	56
E.12 BF-1 Biofiltration	65
E.13 BF-2 Nutrient Sensitive Media Design	74
E.14 BF-3 Proprietary Biofiltration Systems	77
E.15 FT-1 Vegetated Swales	78
E.16 FT-2 Media Filters	84
E.17 FT-3 Sand Filters	87
E.18 FT-4 Dry Extended Detention Basin	93
E.19 FT-5 Proprietary Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs	98
E.20 PL Plant List	100
Appendix F Biofiltration Standard and Checklist.....	1
F.1 Pollutant Treatment Performance Standard	9
F.2 Guidance on Sizing and Design of Non-Standard Biofiltration BMPs	14
F.2.1 Guidance on Design per Condition of Certification/Verification	14
F.2.2 Sizing of Flow-Based Biofiltration BMP	14

City of Santee BMP Design Manual

Appendix G	Guidance for Conditions Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors.....	1
G.1	Guidance for Continuous Simulation Hydrologic Modeling for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego County Region 9	2
G.1.1	Introduction 1	2
G.1.2	Software for Continuous Simulation Hydrologic Modeling	3
G.1.3	Climatology Parameters	3
G.1.4	LAND CHARACTERISTICS AND LOSS PARAMETERS	10
G.1.5	MODELING STRUCTURAL BMPS (PONDS AND LID FEATURES)	18
G.1.6	FLOW FREQUENCY AND DURATION	23
G.2	Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Management BMPS	26
G.2.1	Unit Runoff Ratios	32
G.2.2	Sizing Factors for “Infiltration” BMP	34
G.2.3	Sizing Factors for Bioretention	39
G.2.4	Sizing Factors for Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration	45
G.2.5	Sizing Factors for Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner	51
G.2.6	Sizing Factors for “Cistern” BMP	57
Appendix H	Guidance for Investigating Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas....	1
H.1	Criteria for GLU Analysis	3
H.2	Optional Additional Analysis When Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas are Present Onsite	18
Appendix I	Forms and Checklists.....	1
	Glossary of Key Terms.....	i

APPENDICIES



Submittal Templates

Appendix A: Submittal Templates

Submittal Templates

The following templates were developed to assist the project applicant and the plan reviewer:

- **Standard Development Project Submittal**
- **Priority Development Storm Water Quality Management Plan (SWQMP)**

A.1 Standard Development Project Submittal

A.2 Priority Development Storm Water Quality Management Plan (SWQMP)



Storm Water Pollutant Control Hydrologic Calculations and Sizing Methods

Storm Water Pollutant Control Hydrologic Calculations and Sizing Methods

Table of Contents:

- B.1. Design Capture Volume (DCV)
- B.2. Adjustments to Account for Site Design BMPs
- B.3. Harvest and Use BMPs
- B.4. Infiltration BMPs
- B.5. Biofiltration BMPs
- B.6. Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance only)

B.1 DCV

DCV is defined as the volume of storm water runoff resulting from the 85th percentile, 24-hr storm event. The following hydrologic method shall be used to calculate the DCV:

$$DCV = C \times d \times A \times 43,560 \text{ sf/ac} \times 1/12 \text{ in/ft}$$

$$DCV = 3,630 \times C \times d \times A$$

Where:

DCV = Design Capture Volume in cubic feet

C = Runoff factor (unitless); refer to section B.1.1

d = 85th percentile, 24-hr storm event rainfall depth (inches), refer to section B.1.3

A = Tributary area (acres) which includes the total area draining to the BMP, including any offsite or onsite areas that comingles with project runoff and drains to the BMP. Refer to Chapter 3, Section 3.3.3 for additional guidance. Street redevelopment projects consult section 1.4.3.

B.1.1 Runoff Factor

Estimate the area weighted runoff factor for the tributary area to the BMP using runoff factor (from Table B.1-1) and area of each surface type in the tributary area and the following equation:

$$C = \frac{\sum C_x A_x}{\sum A_x}$$

Where:

C_x = Runoff factor for area X

A_x = Tributary area X (acres)

These runoff factors apply to areas receiving direct rainfall only. For conditions in which runoff is routed onto a surface from an adjacent surface, see Section B.2 for determining composite runoff factors for these areas.

Table 0-1: Runoff factors for surfaces draining to BMPs – Pollutant Control BMPs

Surface	Runoff Factor
Roofs ¹	0.90
Concrete or Asphalt ¹	0.90
Unit Pavers (grouted) ¹	0.90
Decomposed Granite	0.30
Cobbles or Crushed Aggregate	0.30
Amended, Mulched Soils or Landscape	0.10
Compacted Soil (e.g., unpaved parking)	0.30

1. Surface is considered impervious and could benefit from use of Site Design BMPs and adjustment of the runoff factor per Section B.2.1.

Appendix B: Storm Water Pollutant Control Hydrologic Calculations and Sizing Methods

Surface	Runoff Factor
Natural (A Soil)	0.10
Natural (B Soil)	0.14
Natural (C Soil)	0.23
Natural (D Soil)	0.30

B.1.2 Offline BMPs

Diversion flow rates for offline BMPs shall be sized to convey the maximum flow rate of runoff produced from a rainfall intensity of 0.2 inch of rainfall per hour, for each hour of every storm event. The following hydrologic method shall be used to calculate the diversion flow rate for off-line BMPs:

$$Q = C \times i \times A$$

Where:

Q = Diversion flow rate in cubic feet per second

C = Runoff factor, area weighted estimate using Table B.1

i = Rainfall intensity of 0.2 in/hr

A = Tributary area (acres) which includes the total area draining to the BMP, including any offsite or onsite areas that comingle with project runoff and drain to the BMP. Refer to Chapter 3, Section 3.3.3 for additional guidance. Street redevelopment projects also consult Section 1.4.3.

B.1.3 85th Percentile, 24-Hour Storm Event

The 85th percentile, 24-hour isopluvial map is provided as Figure B.1-1. The rainfall depth to estimate the DCV shall be determined using Figure B.1-1. The methodology used to develop this map is presented below:

B.1.3.1 Gage data and calculation of 85th percentile

The method of calculating the 85th percentile is to produce a list of values, order them from smallest to largest, and then pick the value that is 85 percent of the way through the list. Only values that are capable of producing run off are of interest for this purpose. Lacking a legislative definition of rainfall values capable of producing runoff, Flood Control staff in San Diego County have observed that the point at which significant runoff begins is rather subjective, and is affected by land use type and soil moisture. In highly-urbanized areas, the soil has a high impermeability and runoff can begin with as little as 0.02" of rainfall. In rural areas, soil impermeability is significantly lower and even 0.30" of rain on dry soil will frequently not produce significant runoff. For this reason, San Diego County has chosen to use the more objective method of including all non-zero 24-hour rainfall totals when calculating the 85th percentile. To produce a statistically significant number, only stations with 30 years or greater of daily rainfall records are used.

Appendix B: Storm Water Pollutant Control Hydrologic Calculations and Sizing Methods

B.1.3.2 Mapping the gage data

A collection of 56 precipitation gage points was developed with 85th percentile precipitation values based on multiple years of gage data. A raster surface (grid of cells with values) was interpolated from that set of points. The surface initially did not cover the County's entire jurisdiction. A total of 13 dummy points were added. Most of those were just outside the County boundary to enable the software to generate a surface that covered the entire County. A handful of points were added to enforce a plausible surface. In particular, one point was added in the desert east of Julian, to enforce a gradient from high precipitation in the mountains to low precipitation in the desert. Three points were added near the northern boundary of the County to adjust the surface to reflect the effect of elevation in areas lacking sufficient operating gages.

Several methods of interpolation were considered. The method chosen is named by Environmental Systems Research Institute as the Natural Neighbor technique. This method produces a surface that is highly empirical, with the value of the surface being a product of the values of the data points nearest each cell. It does not produce peaks or valleys of surface based on larger area trends, and is free of artifacts that appeared with other methods.

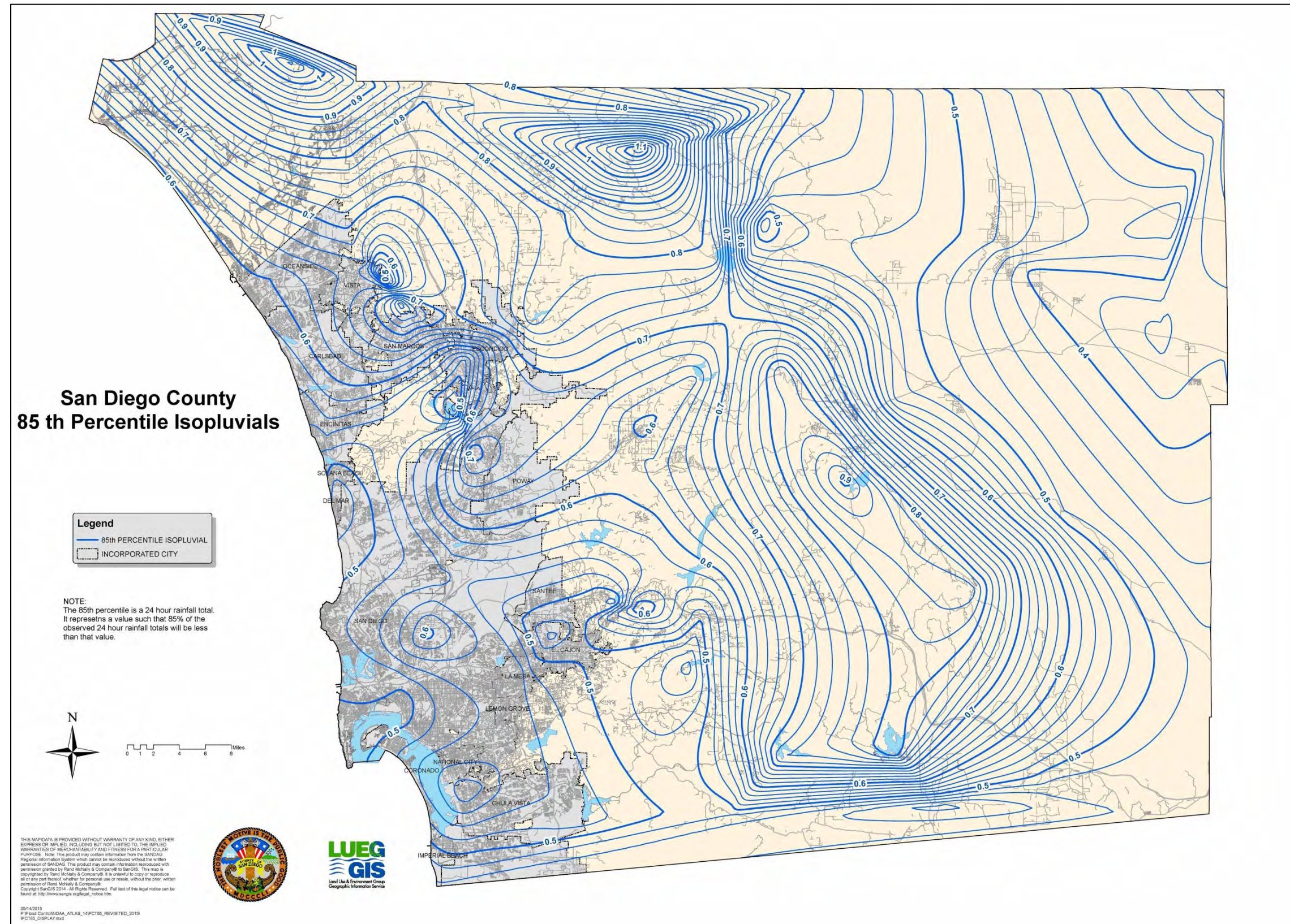


Figure 0-1: 85th Percentile 24-hour Isopluvial Map

B.2 Adjustments to Account for Site Design BMPs

This section provides methods to adjust the DCV (for sizing pollutant control BMPs) as a result of implementing site design BMPs. The adjustments are provided by one of the following two methods:

- Adjustment to impervious runoff factor
- Adjustment to DCV

B.2.1 Adjustment to Impervious Runoff Factor

When one of the following site design BMPs is implemented the runoff factor of 0.9 for impervious surfaces identified in Table B.1-1 should be adjusted using the factors listed below and an adjusted area weighted runoff factor shall be estimated following guidance from Section B.1.1 and used to calculate the DCV.

- SD-5: Impervious area dispersion
- SD-6A: Green roofs
- SD-6B: Permeable pavement

B.2.1.1 Impervious area dispersion (SD-5)

Dispersion of impervious areas through pervious areas: The following adjustments are allowed to impervious runoff factors when dispersion is implemented in accordance with the SD-5 fact sheet (Appendix E). Adjustments are only credited up to a 4:1 maximum ratio of impervious to pervious areas. In order to adjust the runoff factor, the pervious area shall have a minimum width of 10 feet and a maximum slope of 5%. Based on the ratio of **impervious area to pervious area** and the hydrologic soil group of the pervious area, the adjustment factor from Table B.2-1 shall be multiplied with the unadjusted runoff factor (Table B.1-1) of the impervious area to estimate the adjusted runoff factor for sizing pollutant control BMPs. The adjustment factors in Table B.2-1 are **only** valid for impervious surfaces that have an unadjusted runoff factor of 0.9.

Table 0-1: Impervious area adjustment factors that accounts for dispersion

Pervious area hydrologic soil group	Ratio = Impervious area/Pervious area			
	<=1	2	3	4
A	0.00	0.00	0.23	0.36
B	0.00	0.27	0.42	0.53

Pervious area hydrologic soil group	Ratio = Impervious area/Pervious area			
	<=1	2	3	4
C	0.34	0.56	0.67	0.74
D	0.86	0.93	0.97	1.00

Continuous simulation modeling in accordance with Appendix G is required to develop adjustment factors for surfaces that have an unadjusted runoff factor less than 0.9. Approval of adjustment factors for surfaces that have an unadjusted runoff factor less than 0.9 is at the discretion of the City Engineer.

The adjustment factors in Table B.2-1 were developed by performing continuous simulations in SWMM with default parameters from Appendix G and impervious to pervious area ratios of 1, 2, 3, and 4. When using adjustment factors from Table B.2-1:

- **Linear interpolation** shall be performed if the impervious to pervious area ratio of the site is in between one of ratios for which an adjustment factor was developed;
- Use adjustment factor for a ratio of 1 when the impervious to pervious area ratio is less than 1; and
- Adjustment factor is not allowed when the impervious to pervious area ratio is greater than 4, when the pervious area is designed as a site design BMP.

Example B.2-1: DMA is comprised of one acre of impervious area that drains to a 0.4 acre hydrologic soil group B pervious area and then the pervious area drains to a BMP. Impervious area dispersion is implemented in the DMA in accordance with SD-5 factsheet. Estimate the adjusted runoff factor for the DMA.

- Baseline Runoff Factor per Table B.1-1 = $[(1*0.9+0.4*0.14)/1.4] = 0.68$.
- Impervious to Pervious Ratio = 1 acre impervious area/ 0.4 acre pervious area = 2.5; since the ratio is 2.5 adjustment can be claimed.
- From Table B.2-1 the adjustment factor for hydrologic soil group B and a ratio of 2 = 0.27; ratio of 3 = 0.42.
- Linear interpolated adjustment factor for a ratio of 2.5 = $0.27 + \{[(0.42 - 0.27)/(3-2)]*(2.5-2)\} = 0.345$.
- Adjusted runoff factor for the DMA = $[(1*0.9*0.345+0.4*0.14)/1.4] = 0.26$.
- Note only the runoff factor for impervious area is adjusted, there is no change made to the pervious area.

B.2.1.2 Green Roofs

When green roofs are implemented in accordance with the SD-6A factsheet the green roof footprint shall be assigned a runoff factor of 0.10 for adjusted runoff factor calculations.

B.2.1.3 Permeable Pavement

When a permeable pavement is implemented in accordance with the SD-6B factsheet and it does not have an impermeable liner and has storage greater than the 85th percentile depth below the underdrain, if an underdrain is present, then the footprint of the permeable pavement shall be assigned a runoff factor of 0.10 for adjusted runoff factor calculations.

Permeable Pavement can also be designed as a structural BMP to treat run on from adjacent areas. Refer to INF-3 factsheet and Appendix B.4 for additional guidance.

B.2.2 Adjustment to DCV

When the following site design BMPs are implemented the anticipated volume reduction from these BMPs shall be deducted from the DCV to estimate the volume for which the downstream structural BMP should be sized for:

- SD-1: Street trees
- SD-8: Rain barrels

B.2.2.1 Street Trees

Street tree credit volume from tree trenches or boxes (tree BMPs) is a sum of three runoff reduction volumes provided by trees that decrease the required DCV for a tributary area. The following reduction in DCV is allowed per tree based on the mature diameter of the tree canopy, when trees are implemented in accordance with SD-1 factsheet:

Mature Tree Canopy Diameter (ft)	Tree Credit Volume (ft ³ /tree)
5	10
10	40
15	100
20	180
25	290
30	420

Basis for the reduction in DCV:

Tree credit volume was estimated based on typical characteristics of street trees as follows:

It is assumed that each tree and associated trench or box is considered a single BMP, with calculations based on the media storage volume and/or the individual tree within the tree BMP as appropriate. Tree credit volume is calculated as:

$$TCV = TIV + TCIV + TETV$$

Where:

- TCV = Tree credit volume (ft³)
- TIV = Total infiltration volume of all storage layers within tree BMPs (ft³)
- $TCIV$ = Total canopy interception volume of all individual trees within tree BMPs (ft³)
- $TETV$ = Total evapotranspiration volume, sums the media evapotranspiration storage within each tree BMP (ft³)

Total infiltration volume was calculated as the total volume infiltrated within the BMP storage layers. Infiltration volume was assumed to be 20% of the total BMP storage layer volume, the available pore space in the soil volume (porosity – field capacity). Total canopy interception volume was calculated for all street trees within the tributary area as the average interception capacity for the entire mature tree total canopy projection area. Interception capacity was determined to be 0.04 inches for all street tree sizes, an average from the findings published by Breuer et al (2003) for coniferous and deciduous trees. Total evapotranspiration volume is the available evapotranspiration storage volume (field capacity – wilting point) within the BMP storage layer media. TEVT is assumed to be 10% of the minimum soil volume. The minimum soil volume as required by SD-1 fact sheet of two cubic feet per unit canopy projection area was assumed for estimating reduction in DCV.

B.2.2.2 Rain Barrels

Rain barrels are containers that can capture rooftop runoff and store it for later use. Credit can be taken for the full rain barrel volume when each barrel volume is smaller than 100 gallons, is implemented per SD-8 fact sheet, and meets the following criteria:

- Total rain barrel volume is less than 0.25 DCV, and
- Landscape areas are greater than 30 percent of the project footprint.

Credit for harvest and use systems that do not meet the above criteria shall be based on the criteria in Appendix B.3 and HU-1 fact sheet.

Worksheet 0-1. DCV

Design Capture Volume		Worksheet B-2.1		
1	85 th percentile 24-hr storm depth from Figure B.1-1	d=		inches
2	Area tributary to BMP (s)	A=		acres
3	Area weighted runoff factor (estimate using Appendix B.1.1 and B.2.1)	C=		unitless
4	Street trees volume reduction	TCV=		cubic-feet
5	Rain barrels volume reduction	RCV=		cubic-feet
6	Calculate DCV = (3630 x C x d x A) – TCV - RCV	DCV=		cubic-feet

B.3 Harvest and Use BMPs

The purpose of this section is to provide guidance for evaluating feasibility of harvest and use BMPs, calculating harvested water demand and sizing harvest and use BMPs.

B.3.1 Planning Level Harvest and Use Feasibility

Harvest and use feasibility should be evaluated at the scale of the entire project, and not limited to a single DMA. For the purpose of initial feasibility screening, it is assumed that harvested water collected from one DMA could be used within another. Types of non-potable water demand that may apply within a project include:

- Toilet and urinal flushing
- Irrigation
- Vehicle washing
- Evaporative cooling
- Dilution water for recycled water systems
- Industrial processes
- Other non-potable uses

Worksheet B.3-1 provides a screening process for determining the preliminary feasibility for harvest and use BMPs. This worksheet should be completed for the overall project.

Worksheet 0-2. Harvest and Use Feasibility Screening

Harvest and Use Feasibility Screening		Worksheet B.3-1
<p>1. Is there a demand for harvested water (check all that apply) at the project site that is reliably present during the wet season?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Toilet and urinal flushing</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Landscape irrigation</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other: _____</p>		
<p>2. If there is a demand; estimate the anticipated average wet season demand over a period of 36 hours. Guidance for planning level demand calculations for toilet/urinal flushing and landscape irrigation is provided in Section B.3.2.</p> <p>[Provide a summary of calculations here]</p>		
<p>3. Calculate the DCV using worksheet B-2.1.</p> <p>[Provide a results here]</p>		
<p>3a. Is the 36-hour demand greater than or equal to the DCV?</p> <p align="center">Yes / No ⇒</p> <p align="center">↓</p>	<p>3b. Is the 36-hour demand greater than 0.25DCV but less than the full DCV?</p> <p align="center">Yes / No ⇒</p> <p align="center">↓</p>	<p>3c. Is the 36-hour demand less than 0.25DCV?</p> <p align="center">Yes</p> <p align="center">↓</p>
<p>Harvest and use appears to be feasible. Conduct more detailed evaluation and sizing calculations to confirm that DCV can be used at an adequate rate to meet drawdown criteria.</p>	<p>Harvest and use may be feasible. Conduct more detailed evaluation and sizing calculations to determine feasibility. Harvest and use may only be able to be used for a portion of the site, or (optionally) the storage may need to be upsized to meet long term capture targets while draining in longer than 36 hours.</p>	<p>Harvest and use is considered to be infeasible.</p>

B.3.2 Harvested Water Demand Calculation

The following sections provide technical references and guidance for estimating the harvested water demand of a project. These references are intended to be used for the planning phase of a project for feasibility screening purposes.

B.3.2.1 Toilet and Urinal Flushing Demand Calculations

The following guidelines should be followed for computing harvested water demand from toilet and urinal flushing:

- If reclaimed water is planned for use for toilet and urinal flushing, then the demand for harvested storm water is equivalent to the total demand minus the reclaimed water supplied, and should be reduced by the amount of reclaimed water that is available during the wet season.
- Demand calculations for toilet and urinal flushing should be based on the average rate of use during the wet season for a typical year.
- Demand calculations should include changes in occupancy over weekends and around holidays and changes in attendance/enrollment over school vacation periods.
- For facilities with generally high demand, but periodic shut downs (e.g., for vacations, maintenance, or other reasons), a project specific analysis should be conducted to determine whether the long term storm water capture performance of the system can be maintained despite shut downs.
- Such an analysis should consider the statistical distributions of precipitation and demand, most importantly the relationship of demand to the wet seasons of the year.

Table B.3-1 provides planning level demand estimates for toilet and urinal flushing per resident, or employee, for a variety of project types. The per capita use per day is based on daily employee or resident usage. For non-residential types of development, the “visitor factor” and “student factor” (for schools) should be multiplied by the employee use to account for toilet and urinal usage for non-employees using facilities.

Table 0-2. Toilet and Urinal Water Usage per Resident or Employee

Land Use Type	Toilet User Unit of Normalization	Per Capita Use per Day		Visitor Factor ⁴	Water Efficiency Factor	Total Use per Resident or Employee
		Toilet Flushing ^{1,2}	Urinals ³			
Residential	Resident	18.5	NA	NA	0.5	9.3
Office	Employee (non-visitor)	9.0	2.27	1.1	0.5	7 (avg)
Retail	Employee (non-visitor)	9.0	2.11	1.4	0.5	
Schools	Employee (non-student)	6.7	3.5	6.4	0.5	33
Various Industrial Uses (excludes process water)	Employee (non-visitor)	9.0	2	1	0.5	5.5

1- Based on American Waterworks Association Research Foundation,1999. Residential End Uses of Water. Denver, CO: AWWARF

2 - Based on use of 3.45 gallons per flush and average number of per employee flushes per subsector, Table D-1 for MWD (Pacific Institute, 2003)

3 - Based on use of 1.6 gallons per flush, Table D-4 and average number of per employee flushes per subsector, Appendix D (Pacific Institute, 2003)

4 - Multiplied by the demand for toilet and urinal flushing for the project to account for visitors. Based on proportion of annual use allocated to visitors and others (includes students for schools; about 5 students per employee) for each subsector in Table D-1 and D-4 (Pacific Institute, 2003)

5 – Accounts for requirements to use ultra-low flush toilets in new development projects; assumed that requirements will reduce toilet and urinal flushing demand by half on average compared to literature estimates. Ultra-low flush toilets are required in all new construction in California as of January 1, 1992. Ultra-low flush toilets must use no more than 1.6 gallons per flush and Ultra low flush urinals must use no more than 1 gallon per flush. Note: If zero flush urinals are being used, adjust accordingly.

B.3.2.2 General Requirements for Irrigation Demand Calculations

The following guidelines should be followed for computing harvested water demand from landscape irrigation:

- If reclaimed water is planned for use for landscape irrigation, then the demand for harvested storm water should be reduced by the amount of reclaimed water that is available during the wet season.
- Irrigation rates should be based on the irrigation demand exerted by the types of landscaping that are proposed for the project, with consideration for water conservation requirements.
- Irrigation rates should be estimated to reflect the average wet season rates (defined as November through April) accounting for the effect of storm events in offsetting harvested water demand. In the absence of a detailed demand study, it should be assumed that irrigation demand is not present during days with greater than 0.1 inches of rain and the

subsequent 3-day period. This irrigation shutdown period is consistent with standard practice in land application of wastewater and is applicable to storm water to prevent irrigation from resulting in dry weather runoff. Based on a statistical analysis of San Diego County rainfall patterns, approximately 30 percent of wet season days would not have a demand for irrigation.

- If land application of storm water is proposed (irrigation in excess of agronomic demand), then this BMP must be considered to be an infiltration BMP and feasibility screening for infiltration must be conducted. In addition, it must be demonstrated that land application would not result in greater quantities of runoff as a result of saturated soils at the beginning of storm events. Agronomic demand refers to the rate at which plants use water.

The following sections describe methods that should be used to calculate harvested water irrigation demand. While these methods are simplified, they provide a reasonable estimate of potential harvested water demand that is appropriate for feasibility analysis and project planning. These methods may be replaced by a more rigorous project-specific analysis that meets the intent of the criteria above.

B.3.2.2.1 Demand Calculation Method

This method is based in the Santee Municipal Code Chapter 17.36 “Landscape and Irrigation Regulations” which includes a formula for estimating a project’s annual estimated total water use based on reference evaporation, plant factor, and irrigation efficiency.

For the purpose of calculating harvested water irrigation demand applicable to the sizing of harvest and use systems, the estimated total water use has been modified to reflect typical wet-season irrigation demand. This method assumes that the wet season is defined as November through April. This method further assumes that no irrigation water will be applied during days with precipitation totals greater than 0.1 inches or within the 3 days following such an event. Based on these assumptions and an analysis of Lake Wohlford, Lindbergh and Oceanside precipitation patterns, irrigation would not be applied during approximately 30 percent of days from November through April.

The following equation is used to calculate the Modified Estimated Total Water Usage:

$$\text{Modified ETWU} = \text{ETo}_{\text{Wet}} \times [(\sum(\text{PF} \times \text{HA})/\text{IE}) + \text{SLA}] \times 0.015$$

Where:

Modified ETWU = Estimated daily average water usage during wet season

ETo_{Wet} = Average reference evapotranspiration from November through April (use 2.7 inches per month, using CIMS Zone 4 from Table G.1-1)

PF = Plant Factor

Table 0-3. Planning Level Plant Factor Recommendations

Plant Water Use	Plant Factor	Also Includes
Low	< 0.1 – 0.2	Artificial Turf
Moderate	0.3 – 0.7	
High	0.8 and greater	Water features
Special Landscape Area	1.0	

HA = Hydrozone Area (sq-ft); A section or zone of the landscaped area having plants with similar water needs.

$\Sigma(PF \times HA)$ = The sum of PF x HA for each individual Hydrozone (accounts for different landscaping zones).

IE = Irrigation Efficiency (assume 90 percent for demand calculations)

SLA = Special Landscape Area (sq-ft); Areas used for active and passive recreation areas, areas solely dedicated to the production of fruits and vegetables, and areas irrigated with reclaimed water.

In this equation, the coefficient (0.015) accounts for unit conversions and shut down of irrigation during and for the three days following a significant precipitation event:

$$0.015 = (1 \text{ mo}/30 \text{ days}) \times (1 \text{ ft}/12 \text{ in}) \times (7.48 \text{ gal}/\text{cu-ft}) \times (\text{approximately } 7 \text{ out of } 10 \text{ days with irrigation demand from November through April})$$

B.3.2.2.2 Planning Level Irrigation Demands

To simplify the planning process, the method described above has been used to develop daily average wet season demands for a one-acre irrigated area based on the plant/landscape type. These demand estimates can be used to calculate the drawdown of harvest and use systems for the purpose of LID BMP sizing calculations.

Table 0-3. Planning Level Irrigation Demand by Plant Factor and Landscape Type

General Landscape Type	36-Hour Planning Level Irrigation Demand (gallons per irrigated acre per 36 hour period)
Hydrozone – Low Plant Water Use	390
Hydrozone – Moderate Plant Water Use	1,470
Hydrozone – High Plant Water Use	2,640
Special Landscape Area	2,640

B.3.2.3 Calculating Other Harvested Water Demands

Calculations of other harvested water demands should be based on the knowledge of land uses, industrial processes, and other factors that are project-specific. Demand should be calculated based on the following guidelines:

- Demand calculations should represent actual demand that is anticipated during the wet season (November through April).
- Sources of demand should only be included if they are reliably and consistently present during the wet season.
- Where demands are substantial but irregular, a more detailed analysis should be conducted based on a statistical analysis of anticipated demand and precipitation patterns.

B.3.3 Sizing Harvest and Use BMPs

Sizing calculations shall demonstrate that one of two equivalent performance standards is met:

1. Harvest and use BMPs are sized to drain the tank in 36 hours following the end of rainfall. The size of the BMP is dependent on the demand (Section B.3.2) at the site.
2. Harvest and use BMP is designed to capture at least 80 percent of average annual (long term) runoff volume.

It is rare cisterns can be sized to capture the full DCV and use this volume in 36 hours. So when using Worksheet B.3-1 if it is determined that harvest and use BMP is feasible then the BMP should be sized to the estimated 36-hour demand.

B.4 Infiltration BMPs

Sizing calculations shall demonstrate that one of two equivalent performance standards is met:

1. The BMP or series of BMPs captures the DCV and infiltrates this volume fully within 36 hours following the end of precipitation. This can be demonstrated through the Simple Method (Section B.4.1).
2. The BMP or series of BMPs infiltrates at least 80 percent of average annual (long term) runoff volume. This can be demonstrated using the percent capture method (Section B.4.2), through reporting of output from the San Diego Hydrology Model, or through other continuous simulation modeling meeting the criteria in Appendix G, as acceptable to the City Engineer. This method is **not** applicable for sizing biofiltration BMPs.

The methods to show compliance with these standards are provided in the following sections.

B.4.1 Simple Method

Stepwise Instructions:

1. Compute DCV using Worksheet B.4-1
2. Estimate design infiltration rate using Worksheet D.5-1
3. Design BMP(s) to ensure that the DCV is fully retained (i.e., no surface discharge during the design event) and the stored effective depth draws down in no longer than 36 hours.

Worksheet 0-1: Simple Sizing Method for Infiltration BMPs

Simple Sizing Method for Infiltration BMPs		Worksheet B.4-1		
1	DCV (Worksheet B-2.1)	DCV=		cubic-feet
2	Estimated design infiltration rate (Worksheet D.5-1)	$K_{\text{design}} =$		in/hr
3	Available BMP surface area	$A_{\text{BMP}} =$		sq-ft
4	Average effective depth in the BMP footprint ($\text{DCV}/A_{\text{BMP}}$)	$D_{\text{avg}} =$		feet
5	Drawdown time, T ($D_{\text{avg}} * 12 / K_{\text{design}}$)	T=		hours
6	Provide alternative calculation of drawdown time, if needed.			

Notes:

- Drawdown time must be less than 36 hours. This criterion was set to achieve average annual capture of 80% to account for back to back storms (See rationale in Section B.4.3). In order to use a different drawdown time, BMPs should be sized using the percent capture method (Section B.4.2).
- The average effective depth calculation should account for any aggregate/media in the BMP. For example, 4 feet of stone at a porosity of 0.4 would equate to 1.6 feet of effective depth.
- This method may overestimate drawdown time for BMPs that drain through both the bottom and walls of the system. BMP specific calculations of drawdown time may be provided that account for BMP-specific geometry.

B.4.2 Percent Capture Method

This section describes the recommended method of sizing volume-based BMPs to achieve the 80 percent capture performance criterion. This method has a number of potential applications for sizing BMPs, including:

- Use this method when a BMP can draw down in less than 36 hours and it is desired to demonstrate that 80 percent capture can be achieved using a BMP volume smaller than the DCV.
- Use this method to determine how much volume (greater than the DCV) must be provided to achieve 80 percent capture when the drawdown time of the BMP exceeds 36 hours.
- Use this method to determine how much volume should be provided to achieve 80 percent capture when upstream BMP(s) have achieved some capture, but have not achieved 80 percent capture.

By nature, the percent capture method is an iterative process that requires some initial assumptions about BMP design parameters and subsequent confirmation that these assumptions are valid. For example, sizing calculations depend on the assumed drawdown time, which depends on BMP depth, which may in turn need to be adjusted to provide the required volume within the allowable footprint. In general, the selection of reasonable BMP design parameters in the first iteration will result in minimal required additional iterations. Figure B.4-1 presents the nomograph for use in sizing retention BMPs in San Diego County.

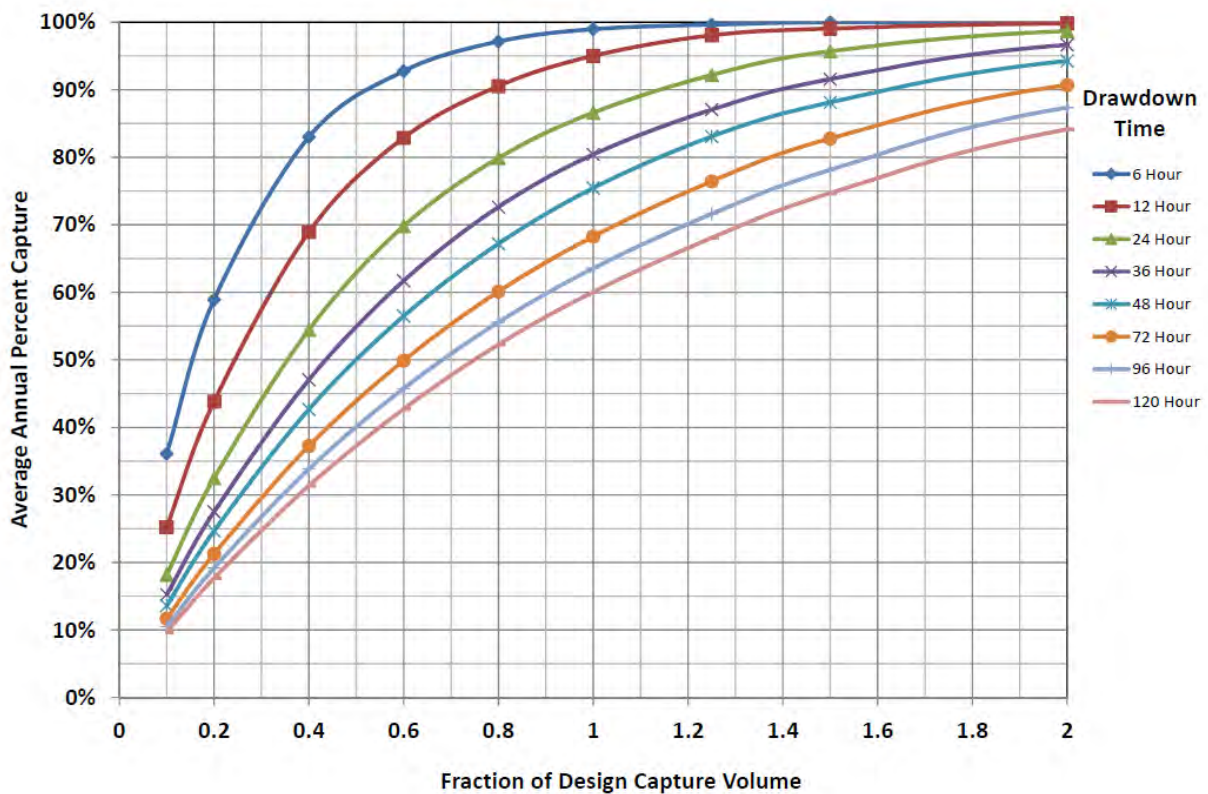


Figure 0-1: Percent Capture Nomograph

B.4.2.1 Stepwise Instructions for sizing a single BMP:

1. Estimate the drawdown time of the proposed BMP by estimating the design infiltration rate (Worksheet D.5-1) and accounting for BMP dimensions/geometry. See the applicable BMP Fact Sheet for specific guidance on how to convert BMP geometry to estimated drawdown time.
2. Using the estimated drawdown time and the nomograph from Figure B.4-1 locate where the line corresponding to the estimated drawdown time intersects with 80 percent capture. Pivot to the X axis and read the fraction of the DCV that needs to be provided in the BMP to achieve this level of capture.
3. Calculate the DCV using Worksheet B.2-1.
4. Multiply the result of Step 2 by the DCV (Step 3). This is the required BMP design volume.
5. Design the BMP to retain the required volume, and confirm that the drawdown time is no more than 25 percent greater than estimated in Step 1. If the computed drawdown time is greater than 125 percent of the estimated drawdown, then return to Step 1 and revise the initial drawdown time assumption.

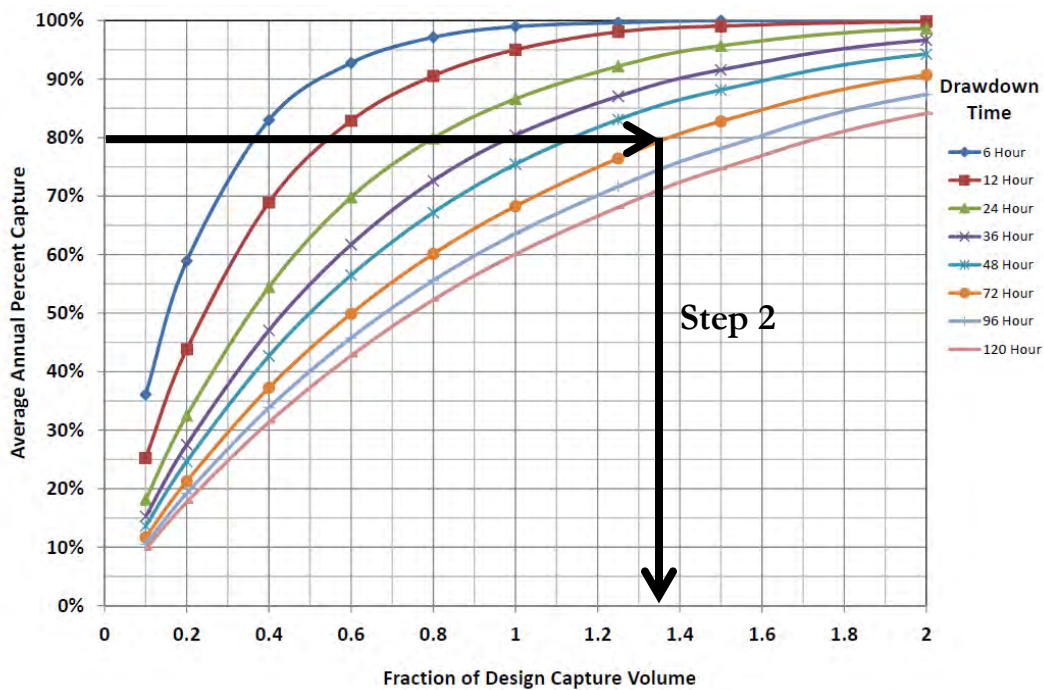
See the respective BMP facts sheets for BMP-specific instructions for the calculation of volume and drawdown time. The above method can also be used to size and/or evaluate the performance of other retention BMPs (evapotranspiration, harvest and use) that have a drawdown rate that can be approximated as constant throughout the year or over the wet season. In order to use this method for other retention BMPs, drawdown time in Step 1 will need to be evaluated using an applicable method for the type of BMP selected. After completing Step 1 continue to Step 2 listed above.

Example B.4.2.1 Percent Capture Method for Sizing a Single BMP:

Given:
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Estimated drawdown time: 72 Hours• DCV: 3000 ft³
Required:
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Determine the volume required to achieve 80 percent capture.
Solution:
<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Estimated drawdown time = 72 Hours2. Fraction of DCV required = 1.353. DCV = 3000 ft³ (Given for this example; To be estimated using Worksheet B.2-1)4. Required BMP volume = 1.35 x 3000 = 4050 ft³5. Design BMP and confirm drawdown Time is \leq 90 Hours (72 Hours +25%)

Example B.4.2.1 Continued:

Graphical Operations Supporting Solution:



Percent Capture Nomograph

B.4.2.2 Stepwise Instructions for sizing BMPs in series:

For projects where BMPs in series have to be implemented to meet the performance standard the following stepwise procedure shall be used to size the downstream BMP to achieve the 80 percent capture performance criterion:

1. Using the upstream BMP parameters (volume and drawdown time) estimate the average annual capture efficiency achieved by the upstream BMP using the nomograph.
2. Estimate the drawdown time of the proposed downstream BMP by estimating the design infiltration rate (Worksheet D.5-1) and accounting for BMP dimensions/geometry. See the applicable BMP Fact Sheet for specific guidance on how to convert BMP geometry to estimated drawdown time. Use the nomograph and locate where the line corresponding to the estimated drawdown time intersects with 80 percent capture. Pivot to the horizontal axis and read the fraction of the DCV that needs to be provided in the BMP. This is referred to as X_1 .
3. Trace a horizontal line on the nomograph using the capture efficiency of the upstream BMP estimated in Step 1. Find where the line traced intersects with the drawdown time of the downstream BMP (Step 2). Pivot and read down to the horizontal axis to yield the fraction of the DCV already provided by the upstream BMP. This is referred to as X_2 .

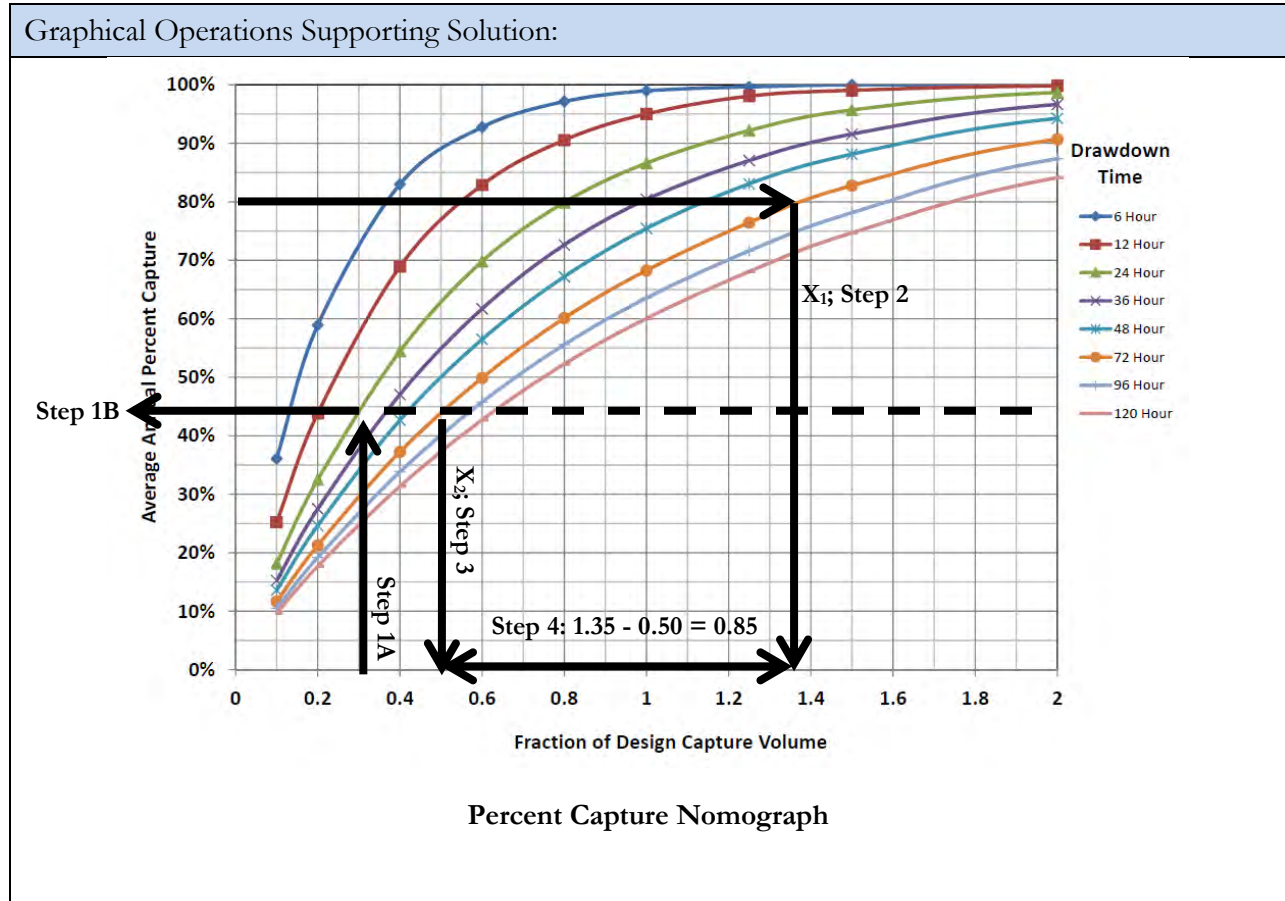
4. Subtract X_2 (Step 3) from X_1 (Step 2) to determine the fraction of the design volume that must be provided in the downstream BMP to achieve 80 percent capture to meet the performance standard.
5. Multiply the result of Step 4 by the DCV. This is the required downstream BMP design volume.
6. Design the BMP to retain the required volume, and confirm that the drawdown time is no more than 25 percent greater than estimated in Step 2. If the computed drawdown time is greater than 125 percent of the estimated drawdown, then return to Step 2 and revise the initial drawdown time assumption.

See the respective BMP facts sheets for BMP-specific instructions for the calculation of volume and drawdown time.

Example B.4.2.2 Percent Capture Method for Sizing BMPs in Series:

Given:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Estimated drawdown time for downstream BMP: 72 Hours • DCV for the area draining to the BMP: 3000 ft³ • Upstream BMP volume: 900 ft³ • Upstream BMP drawdown time: 24 Hours
Required:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Determine the volume required in the downstream BMP to achieve 80 percent capture.
Solution:
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Step 1A: Upstream BMP Capture Ratio = $900/3000 = 0.3$; Step 1B: Average annual capture efficiency achieved by upstream BMP = 44% 2. Downstream BMP drawdown = 72 hours; Fraction of DCV required to achieve 80% capture = 1.35 3. Locate intersection of design capture efficiency and drawdown time for upstream BMP (See Graph); Fraction of DCV already provided (X_2) = 0.50 (See Graph) 4. Fraction of DCV Required by downstream BMP = $1.35 - 0.50 = 0.85$ 5. DCV (given) = 3000 ft³; Required downstream BMP volume = $3000 \text{ ft}^3 \times 0.85 = 2,550 \text{ ft}^3$ 6. Design BMP and confirm drawdown Time is ≤ 90 Hours (72 Hours +25%)

Example B.4.2.2 Continued:



B.4.3 Technical Basis for Equivalent Sizing Methods

Storm water BMPs can be conceptualized as having a storage volume and a treatment rate, in various proportions. Both are important in the long-term performance of the BMP under a range of actual storm patterns, depths, and inter-event times. Long-term performance is measured by the operation of a BMP over the course of multiple years, and provides a more complete metric than the performance of a BMP during a single event, which does not take into account antecedent conditions, including multiple storms arriving in short timeframes. A BMP that draws down more quickly would be expected to capture a greater fraction of overall runoff (i.e., long-term runoff) than an identically sized BMP that draws down more slowly. This is because storage is made available more quickly, so subsequent storms are more likely to be captured by the BMP. In contrast a BMP with a long drawdown time would stay mostly full, after initial filling, during periods of sequential storms. The volume in the BMP that draws down more quickly is more “valuable” in terms of long term performance than the volume in the one that draws down more slowly. The MS4 permit definition of the DCV does not specify a drawdown time, therefore the definition is not a complete

indicator of a BMP's level of performance. An accompanying performance-based expression of the BMP sizing standard is essential to ensure uniformity of performance across a broad range of BMPs and helps prevent BMP designs from being used that would not be effective.

An evaluation of the relationships between BMP design parameters and expected long term capture efficiency has been conducted to address the needs identified above. Relationships have been developed through a simplified continuous simulation analysis of precipitation, runoff, and routing, that relate BMP design volume and storage recovery rate (i.e., drawdown time) to an estimated long term level of performance using United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) SWMM and parameters listed in Appendix G for Lake Wohlford, Lindbergh, and Oceanside rain gages. Comparison of the relationships developed using the three gages indicated that the differences in relative capture estimates are within the uncertainties in factors used to develop the relationships. For example, the estimated average annual capture for the BMP sized for the DCV and 36 hour drawdown using Lake Wohlford, Lindbergh, and Oceanside are 80%, 76% and 83% respectively. In an effort to reduce the number of curves that are made available, relationships developed using Lake Wohlford are included in this manual for use in the whole San Diego County region.

Figure B.4-1 demonstrated that a BMP sized for the runoff volume from the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event (i.e., the DCV), which draws down in 36 hours is capable of managing approximately 80 percent of the average annual. There is long precedent for 80 percent capture of average annual runoff as approximately the point at which larger BMPs provide decreasing capture efficiency benefit (also known as the “knee of the curve”) for BMP sizing. The characteristic shape of the plot of capture efficiency versus storage volume in Figure B.4-1 illustrates this concept.

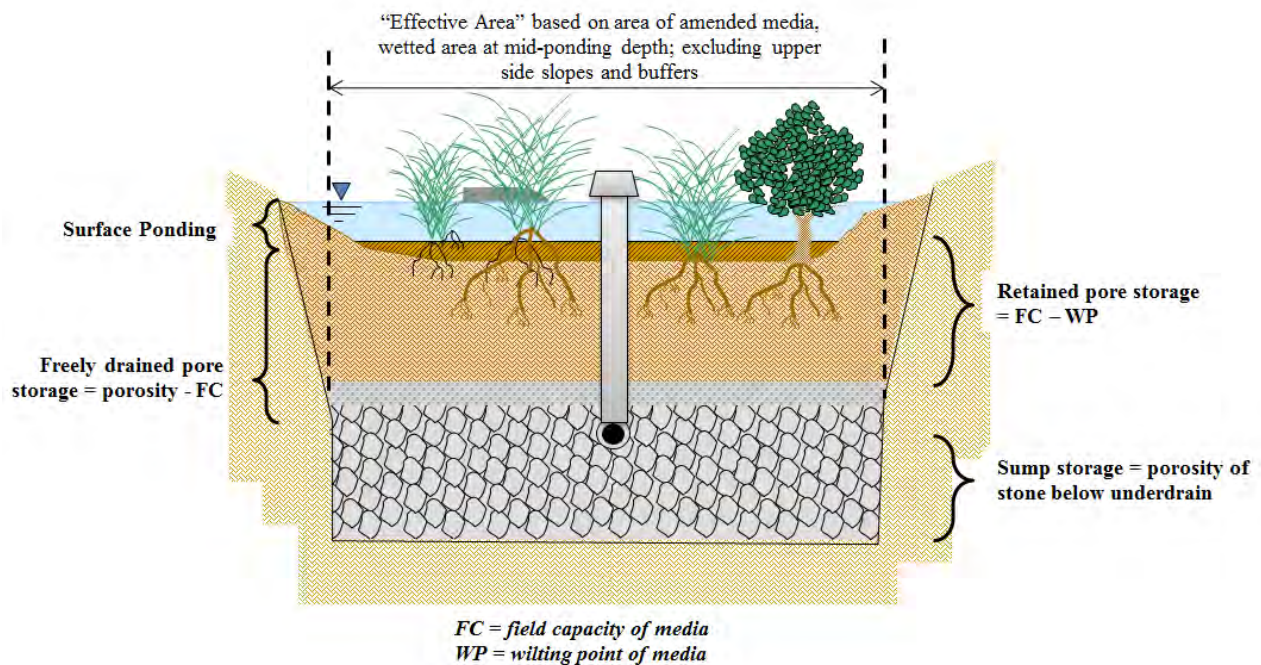
As such, this equivalency (between DCV draw down in 36-hours and 80 percent capture) has been utilized to provide a common currency between volume-based BMPs with a wide range of drawdown rates. This approach allows flexibility in the design of BMPs while ensuring consistent performance.

B.5 Biofiltration BMPs

Biofiltration BMPs shall be sized by one of the following sizing methods:

Option 1: Treat 1.5 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite, OR

Option 2: Treat 1.0 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite; and additionally check that the system has a total static (i.e., non-routed) storage volume, including pore spaces and pre-filter detention volume, equal to at least 0.75 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite.



Explanation of Biofiltration Volume Compartments for Sizing Purposes

Worksheet B.5-1 provides a simple sizing method for sizing biofiltration BMP with partial retention and biofiltration BMP.

Worksheet 0-1: Simple Sizing Method for Biofiltration BMPs

Simple Sizing Method for Biofiltration BMPs		Worksheet B.5-1	
1	Remaining DCV after implementing retention BMPs		cubic-feet
Partial Retention			
2	Infiltration rate from Worksheet D.5-1 if partial infiltration is feasible		in/hr.
3	Allowable drawdown time for aggregate storage below the underdrain	36	hours
4	Depth of runoff that can be infiltrated [Line 2 x Line 3]		inches
5	Aggregate pore space	0.40	in/in
6	Required depth of gravel below the underdrain [Line 4/ Line 5]		inches
7	Assumed surface area of the biofiltration BMP		sq-ft
8	Media retained pore space	0.1	in/in
9	Volume retained by BMP $[(\text{Line 4} + (\text{Line 12} \times \text{Line 8}))/12] \times \text{Line 7}$		cubic-feet
10	DCV that requires biofiltration [Line 1 – Line 9]		cubic-feet
BMP Parameters			
11	Surface Ponding [6 inch minimum, 12 inch maximum]		inches
12	Media Thickness [18 inches minimum]		inches
13	Aggregate Storage above underdrain invert (12 inches typical) – use 0 inches for sizing if the aggregate is not over the entire bottom surface area		inches
14	Media available pore space	0.2	in/in
15	Media filtration rate to be used for sizing	5	in/hr.
Baseline Calculations			
16	Allowable Routing Time for sizing	6	hours
17	Depth filtered during storm [Line 15 x Line 16]	30	inches
18	Depth of Detention Storage [Line 11 + (Line 12 x Line 14) + (Line 13 x Line 5)]		inches
19	Total Depth Treated [Line 17 + Line 18]		inches
Option 1 – Biofilter 1.5 times the DCV			
20	Required biofiltered volume [1.5 x Line 10]		cubic-feet
21	Required Footprint [Line 20/ Line 19] x 12		sq-ft
Option 2 - Store 0.75 of remaining DCV in pores and ponding			
22	Required Storage (surface + pores) Volume [0.75 x Line 10]		cubic-feet
23	Required Footprint [Line 22/ Line 18] x 12		sq-ft
Footprint of the BMP			
24	Area draining to the BMP		sq-ft
25	Adjusted Runoff Factor for drainage area (Refer to Appendix B.1 and B.2)		
26	Minimum BMP Footprint [Line 24 x Line 25 x 0.03]		sq-ft
27	Footprint of the BMP = Maximum(Minimum(Line 21, Line 23), Line 26)		sq-ft

Note: Line 7 is used to estimate the amount of volume retained by the BMP. Update assumed surface area in Line 7 until its equivalent to the required biofiltration footprint (either Line 21 or Line 23)

B.5.1 Standard Biofiltration BMP Footprint Sizing Factors

Table B.5-1 provides the minimum surface area (percent of contributing impervious area) required to meet the performance standards for Biofiltration BMPs (Fact Sheet BF-1). Parameters used to develop the sizing factors presented in Table B.5-1 are listed below:

- Media filtration rate for sizing = 5.0 in/hr.; Minimum required media filtration rate.
- Routing Period of 6 hours which was based on 50th percentile storm duration for storms similar to 85th percentile rainfall depth. Estimated based on inspection of continuous rainfall data from Lake Wohlford, Lindbergh and Oceanside rain gages.
- 12 inches aggregate storage is assumed for developing the below sizing factors.
- Minimum required surface area of 3% of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor. Refer to Appendix B.5.2 for the basis for establishing this minimum surface area criterion.

Table 0-1: Minimum Required Surface Area (Percent of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor) for BF-1

85 th Percentile Rainfall Depth	Surface Ponding = 6" Media Thickness = 18"	Surface Ponding = 6" Media Thickness = 24"	Surface Ponding = 12" Media Thickness = 18"	Surface Ponding = 12" Media Thickness = 24"
0.55"	3.0%	3.0%	3.0%	3.0%
0.7"	3.0%	3.0%	3.0%	3.0%
0.85"	3.0%	3.0%	3.0%	3.0%
1"	3.2%	3.0%	3.0%	3.0%
1.25"	4.0%	3.8%	3.5%	3.4%
1.55"	4.9%	4.7%	4.4%	4.2%

In order to evaluate the parameters recommended for sizing biofiltration BMPs in Worksheet B.5-1 continuous simulations were performed using USEPA SWMM and default parameters listed in Appendix G for Lake Wohlford, Lindbergh and Oceanside rain gages. Estimated average annual captures for the size of the biofiltration BMPs estimated using Worksheet B.5-1 are presented in the Table B.5-2 below:

Table 0-2: Average Annual Capture Results for the Three Rain Gages

Rainfall gage	85 th Percentile Rainfall Depth)	Biofiltration Footprint for 1 acre impervious catchment =3%; Surface Ponding = 6"; Media Thickness = 18"	Average Annual Capture
Lake Wohlford	0.88"	1,307 sq. ft.	97%
Lindbergh	0.53"	1,307 sq. ft.	99%
Oceanside	0.76"	1,307 sq. ft.	97%

Note: Per Worksheet B.5-1 and the 85th percentile rainfall of the stations analyzed, the minimum biofiltration size criteria is the dominant criteria. Different surface ponding values and/or different 85th percentile storms may lead to higher values than those shown in this table.

B.5.2 Basis for Minimum Sizing Factor for Biofiltration BMPs

B.5.2.1 Introduction

Permit Provision E.3.c.(1)(a)(i)

The Permit describes conceptual performance goals for biofiltration BMPs and specifies numeric criteria for sizing biofiltration BMPs (See Section 2.2.1 of this Manual).

However, the Permit does not define a specific footprint sizing factor or design profile that must be provided for the BMP to be considered “biofiltration.” Rather, the Permit specifies (Footnote 25):

As part of the Copermittee’s update to its BMP Design Manual, pursuant to Provision E.3.d, the Copermittee must provide guidance for hydraulic loading rates and other biofiltration design criteria necessary to maximize storm water retention and pollutant removal.

To meet this provision, this manual includes specific criteria for design of biofiltration BMPs. Among other criteria, a minimum footprint sizing factor of three percent (BMP footprint area as percent of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor) is specified. The purpose of this section is to provide the technical rationale for this three percent minimum sizing factor.

B.5.2.2 Conceptual Need for Minimum Sizing Factor

Under the 2011 Model SUSMP, a sizing factor of four percent was used for sizing biofiltration BMPs. This value was derived based on the goal of treating the runoff from a 0.2 inch per hour uniform precipitation intensity at a constant media flow rate of five inches per hour. While this method was simple, it was considered to be conservative as it did not account for significant transient storage present in biofiltration BMPs (i.e., volume in surface storage and subsurface storage that would need to fill before overflow occurred). Under this manual, biofiltration BMPs will typically provide subsurface storage to promote infiltration losses; therefore typical BMP profiles will tend to be somewhat deeper than those provided under the 2011 Model SUSMP. A deeper profile will tend to provide more transient storage and allow smaller footprint sizing factors while still providing similar or better treatment capacity and pollutant removal. Therefore a reduction in the minimum sizing factor from the factor used in the 2011 Model SUSMP is supportable. However, as footprint decreases, issues related to potential performance, operations, and/or maintenance can increase for a number of reasons:

- 1) As the surface area of the media bed decreases, the sediment loading per unit area increases, increasing the risk of clogging. While vigorous plant growth can help maintain permeability of soil, there is a conceptual limit above which plants may not be able to mitigate for the sediment loading. Scientific knowledge is not conclusive in this area.

- 2) With smaller surface areas and greater potential for clogging, water may be more likely to bypass the system via overflow before filling up the profile of the BMP.
- 3) As the footprint of the system decreases, the amount of water that can be infiltrated from subsurface storage layers and evapotranspire from plants and soils tends to decrease.
- 4) With smaller sizing factors, the hydraulic loading per unit area increases, potentially reducing the average contact time of water in the soil media and diminishing treatment performance.

The Permit requires that volume and pollutant retention be maximized. Therefore, a minimum sizing factor was determined to be needed. This minimum sizing factor does not replace the need to conduct sizing calculations as described in this manual; rather it establishes a lower limit on required size of biofiltration BMPs as the last step in these calculations. Additionally, it does not apply to alternative biofiltration designs that utilize the checklist in Appendix F (Biofiltration Standard and Checklist). Acceptable alternative designs (such as proprietary systems meeting Appendix F criteria) typically include design features intended to allow acceptable performance with a smaller footprint and have undergone field scale testing to evaluate performance and required O&M frequency.

B.5.2.3 Lines of Evidence to Select Minimum Sizing Factor

Three primary lines of evidence were used to select the minimum sizing factor of three percent (BMP footprint area as percent of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor) in this manual:

1. Typical design calculations.
2. Volume reduction performance.
3. Sediment clogging calculations.

These lines of evidence and associated findings are explained below.

Typical Design Calculations

A range of BMP profiles were evaluated for different design rainfall depths and soil conditions. Worksheet B.5-1 was used for each case to compute the required footprint sizing factor. For these calculations, the amount of water filtered during the storm event was determined based on a media filtration rate of five inches per hour and a routing time of six hours. These input assumptions are considered to be well-supported and consistent with the intent of the MS4 Permit. These calculations generally yielded footprint factors between 1.5 and 4.9 percent. In the interest of establishing a uniform County-wide minimum sizing factor, a three percent sizing factor was selected from this range, consistent with other lines of evidence.

Volume Reduction Performance

Consistent with guidance in Fact Sheet PR-1, the amount of retention storage (in gravel sump below underdrain) that would drain in 36 hours was calculated for a range of soil types. This was used to estimate the volume reduction that would be expected to be achieved. For a sizing factor of three

percent and a soil filtration rate of 0.20 inches per hour, the average annual volume reduction was estimated to be approximately 40 percent (via percent capture method; see Appendix B.4.2).

In describing the basis for equivalency between retention and biofiltration (1.5 multiplier), the Permit Fact Sheet referred to analysis prepared in the Ventura County Technical Guidance Manual. The Ventura County analysis considered the pollutant treatment as well as the volume reduction provided by biofiltration in considering equivalency to retention. This analysis assumed an average long term volume reduction of 40 percent based on analysis of data from the International Stormwater BMP Database. The calculations of estimated volume reduction at a three percent sizing factor is (previous paragraph) consistent with this value. While estimated volume reduction is sensitive to site-specific factors, this analysis suggests that a sizing factor of approximately three percent provides levels of volume reduction that are reasonably consistent with the intent of the Permit.

Sediment Clogging Calculations

As sediment accumulates in a filter, the permeability of the filter tends to decline. The lifespan of the filter bed can be estimated by determining the rate of sediment loading per unit area of the filter bed. To determine the media bed surface area sizing factor needed to provide a target lifespan, simple sediment loading calculations were conducted based on typical urban conditions. The inputs and results of this calculation are summarized in Table B.5-3.

B.5-3: Inputs and Results of Clogging Calculation

Parameter	Value	Source
Representative TSS Event Mean Concentration, mg/L	100	Approximate average of San Diego Land Use Event Mean Concentrations from San Diego River and San Luis Rey River WQIP
Runoff Coefficient of Impervious Surface	0.90	Table B.1-1
Runoff Coefficient of Pervious Surface	0.10	Table B.1-1 for landscape areas
Imperviousness	40% to 90%	Planning level assumption, covers typical range of single family to commercial land uses
Average Annual Precipitation, inches	11 to 13	Typical range for much of urbanized San Diego County
Load to Initial Maintenance, kg/m ²	10	Pitt, R. and S. Clark, 2010. Evaluation of Biofiltration Media for Engineered Natural Treatment Systems.
Allowable period to initial clogging, yr	10	Planning-level assumption
Estimated BMP Footprint Needed for 10-Year Design Life	2.8 to 3.3%	Calculated

This analysis suggests that a three percent sizing factor, coupled with sediment source controls and careful system design, should provide reasonable protection against premature clogging. However,

there is substantial uncertainty in sediment loading and the actual load to clog that will be observed under field conditions in the San Diego climate. Additionally this analysis did not account for the effect of plants on maintaining soil permeability. Therefore this line of evidence should be considered provisional, subject to refinement based on field scale experience. As field scale experience is gained about the lifespan of biofiltration BMPs in San Diego and the mitigating effects of plants on long term clogging, it may be possible to justify lower factors of safety and therefore smaller design sizes in some cases. If a longer lifespan is desired and/or greater sediment load is expected, then a larger sizing factor may be justified.

B.5.2.4 Discussion

Generally, the purpose of a minimum sizing factor is to help improve the performance and reliability of standard biofiltration systems and limit the use of sizing methods and assumptions that may lead to designs that are less consistent with the intent of the Permit.

Ultimately, this factor is a surrogate for a variety of design considerations, including clogging and associated hydraulic capacity, volume reduction potential, and treatment contact time. A prudent design approach should consider each of these factors on a project-specific basis and identify whether site conditions warrant a larger or smaller factor. For example a system treating only rooftop runoff in an area without any allowable infiltration may have negligible clogging risk and negligible volume reduction potential – a smaller sizing factor may not substantially reduce performance in either of these areas. Alternatively, for a site with high sediment load and limited pre-treatment potential, a larger sizing factor may be warranted to help mitigate potential clogging risks. The City Engineer has discretion to accept alternative sizing factor(s) based on project-specific or jurisdiction-specific considerations. Additionally, the recommended minimum sizing factor may change over time as more experience with biofiltration is obtained.

B.6 Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs (for use with Alternative Compliance only)

The following methodology shall be used for selecting and sizing onsite flow-thru treatment control BMPs. These BMPs are to be used only when the project is participating in an alternative compliance program. This methodology consists of three steps:

- 1) Determine the PDP most significant pollutants of concern (Appendix B.6.1).
- 2) Select a flow-thru treatment control BMP that treats the PDP most significant pollutants of concern and meets the pollutant control BMP treatment performance standard (Appendix B.6.2).
- 3) Size the selected flow-thru treatment control BMP (Appendix B.6.3).

B.6.1 PDP Most Significant Pollutants of Concern

The following steps shall be followed to identify the PDP most significant pollutants of concern:

- 1) Compile the following information for the PDP and receiving water:
 - a. Receiving water quality (including pollutants for which receiving waters are listed as impaired under the Clean Water Act section 303(d) List; refer to Section 1.9);
 - b. Pollutants, stressors, and/or receiving water conditions that cause or contribute to the highest priority water quality conditions identified in the WQIP (refer to Section 1.9);
 - c. Land use type(s) proposed by the PDP and the storm water pollutants associated with the PDP land use(s) (see Table B.6-1).
- 2) From the list of pollutants identified in Step 1 identify the most significant PDP pollutants of concern. A PDP could have multiple most significant pollutants of concerns and shall include the highest priority water quality condition identified in the watershed WQIP and pollutants expected to be present onsite/generated from land use.

Hypothetical example illustrating the identification of the PDP most significant pollutants of concern is presented as Example B.6-1 below.

TABLE 0-1: Anticipated and Potential Pollutants Generated by Land Use Type

Priority Project Categories	General Pollutant Categories								
	Sediment	Nutrients	Heavy Metals	Organic Compounds	Trash & Debris	Oxygen Demanding Substances	Oil & Grease	Bacteria & Viruses	Pesticides
Detached Residential Development	X	X			X	X	X	X	X
Attached Residential Development	X	X			X	P(1)	P(2)	P	X
Commercial Development >one acre	P(1)	P(1)	X	P(2)	X	P(5)	X	P(3)	P(5)
Heavy Industry	X		X	X	X	X	X		
Automotive Repair Shops			X	X(4)(5)	X		X		
Restaurants					X	X	X	X	P(1)
Hillside Development >5,000 ft ²	X	X			X	X	X		X
Parking Lots	P(1)	P(1)	X		X	P(1)	X		P(1)
Retail Gasoline Outlets			X	X	X	X	X		
Streets, Highways & Freeways	X	P(1)	X	X(4)	X	P(5)	X	X	P(1)
<p>X = anticipated P = potential (1) A potential pollutant if landscaping exists onsite. (2) A potential pollutant if the project includes uncovered parking areas. (3) A potential pollutant if land use involves food or animal waste products. (4) Including petroleum hydrocarbons. (5) Including solvents.</p>									

Hypothetical Example B.6-1: Identify the PDP most significant pollutants of concern for a multi-family attached residential development that drains to Forester Creek in the San Diego River watershed. PDP does not have landscaping or uncovered parking lots.

Step 1 Pollutant Identification

Id	Condition of Concern	Value	Explanation
1a	303 (d) list	Bacteria; Selenium; Total Dissolved Solids; pH	For Forester Creek from 303(d) listings
1b	Highest priority water quality condition	Bacteria	Example; From WQIP
1c	Land use type of the project and pollutants associated with that land use type	Land Use: Multi Family Residential Pollutants: Bacteria & Virus	Example; Pollutants based on land use from Table B.6-1 (or a WQIP if there is a land use based pollutants presented in WQIP)

Step 2 Identify Most Significant PDP Pollutants of Concern

Id	Condition of Concern	Value	Explanation
2	Most significant PDP pollutants of concern	Bacteria & Virus	Highest priority water quality condition and/or pollutants expected to be present onsite /generated from land use.

B.6.2 Selection of Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs

The following steps shall be followed to select the appropriate flow-thru treatment control BMPs for the PDP:

- 1) For each PDP most significant pollutant of concern identify the grouping using Table B.6-2.
- 2) Select the flow-thru treatment control BMP based on the grouping of pollutants of concern that are identified to be most significant in Step 1. This section establishes the pollutant control BMP treatment performance standard to be met for each grouping of pollutants in order to meet the standards required by the Permit and how an applicant can select a non-proprietary or a proprietary BMP that meets the established performance standard. The grouping of pollutants of concern are:
 - a. Coarse Sediment and Trash (Appendix B.6.2.1)
 - b. Pollutants that tend to associate with fine particles during treatment (Appendix B.6.2.2)
 - c. Pollutants that tend to be dissolved following treatment (Appendix B.6.2.3)

TABLE 0–2: Grouping of Potential Pollutants of Concern

Pollutant	Coarse Sediment and Trash	Suspended Sediment and Particulate-bound Pollutants ¹	Soluble-form Dominated Pollutants ²
Sediment	X	X	
Nutrients			X
Heavy Metals		X	
Organic Compounds		X	
Trash & Debris	X		
Oxygen Demanding		X	
Bacteria		X	
Oil & Grease		X	
Pesticides		X	

¹ Pollutants in this category can be addressed to Medium or High effectiveness by effectively removing suspended sediments and associated particulate-bound pollutants. Some soluble forms of these pollutants will exist, however treatment mechanisms to address soluble pollutants are not necessary to remove these pollutants to a Medium or High effectiveness.

² Pollutants in this category are not typically addressed to a Medium or High level of effectiveness with particle and particulate-bound pollutant removal alone.

One flow-thru BMP can be used to satisfy the required pollutant control BMP treatment performance standard for the PDP most significant pollutants of concern. In some situations it might be necessary to implement multiple flow-thru BMPs to satisfy the pollutant control BMP

treatment performance standards. For example, a PDP has trash, nutrients and bacteria as the most significant pollutants of concern. If a vegetated filter strip is selected as a flow-thru BMP then it is anticipated to meet the performance standard in Appendix B.6.2.2 and B.6.2.3 but would need a trash removal BMP to meet the pollutant control BMP treatment performance standard in Appendix B.6.2.1 upstream of the vegetated filter strip. This could be achieved by fitting the inlets and/or outlets with racks or screens on to address trash.

B.6.2.1 Coarse Sediment and Trash

If coarse sediment and/or trash and debris are identified as a pollutant of concern for the PDP, then BMPs must be selected to capture and remove these pollutants from runoff. The BMPs described below can be effective in removing coarse sediment and/or trash. These devices must be sized to treat the flow rate estimated using Worksheet B.6-1. Applicant can only select BMPs that have High or Medium effectiveness.

Trash Racks and Screens [Coarse Sediment: Low effectiveness; Trash: Medium to High effectiveness] are simple devices that can prevent large debris and trash from entering storm drain infrastructure and/or ensure that trash and debris are retained with downstream BMPs. Trash racks and screens can be installed at inlets to the storm drain system, at the inflow line to a BMP, and/or on the outflow structure from the BMP. Trash racks and screens are commercially available in many sizes and configurations or can be designed and fabricated to meet specific project needs.

Hydrodynamic Separation Devices [Coarse Sediment: Medium to High effectiveness; Trash: Medium to High effectiveness] are devices that remove coarse sediment, trash, and other debris from incoming flows through a combination of screening, settlement, and centrifugal forces. The design of hydrodynamic devices varies widely, more specific information can be found by contacting individual vendors. A list of hydrodynamic separator products approved by the Washington State Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology protocol can be found at:

<http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html>.

Systems should be rated for “pretreatment” with a General Use Level Designation or provide results of field-scale testing indicating an equivalent level of performance.

Catch Basin Insert Baskets [Coarse Sediment: Low effectiveness; Trash: Medium effectiveness, if appropriately maintained] are manufactured filters, fabrics, or screens that are placed in inlets to remove trash and debris. The shape and configuration of catch basin inserts varies based on inlet type and configuration. Inserts are prone to clogging and bypass if large trash items are accumulated, and therefore require frequent observation and maintenance to remain effective. Systems with screen size small enough to retain coarse sediment will tend to clog rapidly and should be avoided.

Other Manufactured Particle Filtration Devices [Coarse Sediment: Medium to High effectiveness; Trash: Medium to High effectiveness] include a range of products such as cartridge filters, bag filters, and other configurations that address medium to coarse particles. Systems should be rated for “pretreatment” with a General Use Level Designation under the Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program or provide results of field-scale testing indicating an equivalent level of performance.

Note, any BMP that achieves Medium or High performance for suspended solids (See Section B.6.2.2) is also considered to address coarse sediments. However, some BMPs that address suspended solids do not retain trash (for example, swales and detention basins). These types of BMPs could be fitted with racks or screens on inlets or outlets to address trash.

BMP Selection for Pretreatment:

Devices that address both coarse sediment and trash can be used as pretreatment devices for other BMPs, such as infiltration BMPs. However, it is recommended that BMPs that meet the performance standard in Appendix B.6.2.2 be used. A device with a “pretreatment” rating and General Use Level Designation under Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology is required for pretreatment upstream of infiltration basins and underground galleries. Pretreatment may also be provided as presettling basins or forebays as part of a pollutant control BMP instead of implementing a specific pretreatment device for systems where maintenance access to the facility surface is possible (to address clogging), expected sediment load is not high, and appropriate factors of safety are included in design.

B.6.2.2 Suspended Sediment and Particulate-Bound Pollutants

Performance Standard

The pollutant treatment performance standard is shown in Table B.6-3. This performance standard is consistent with the Washington State Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Basic Treatment Level, and is also met by technologies receiving Phosphorus Treatment or Enhanced Treatment certification. This standard is based on pollutant removal performance for total suspended solids. Systems that provide effective TSS treatment also typically address trash, debris, and particulate bound pollutants and can serve as pre-treatment for offsite mitigation projects or for onsite infiltration BMPs.

Table 0-3: Performance Standard for Flow-Thru Treatment Control

Influent Range	Criteria
20 – 100 mg/L TSS	Effluent goal ≤ 20 mg/L TSS
100 – 200 mg/L TSS	≥ 80% TSS removal
>200 mg/L TSS	> 80% TSS removal

Selecting Non-Proprietary BMPs

Table B.6-4 identifies the categories of non-proprietary BMPs that are considered to meet the pollutant treatment performance standard if designed to contemporary design standards¹. BMP types with an “High” ranking should be considered before those with an “Medium” ranking. Statistical analysis by category from the International Stormwater BMP Database (also presented in Table B.6-4) indicates each of these BMP types (as a categorical group) meets or nearly meets the performance standard. The International Stormwater BMP Database includes historic as well as contemporary BMP studies; contemporary BMP designs in these categories are anticipated to meet or exceed this standard on average.

¹ Contemporary design standards refers to design standards that are reasonably consistent with the current state of practice and are based on desired outcomes that are reasonably consistent with the context of the Permit and this manual. For example, a detention basin that is designed solely to mitigate peak flow rates would not be considered a contemporary water quality BMP design because it is not consistent with the goal of water quality improvement. Current state of the practice recognizes that a drawdown time of 24 to 72 hours is typically needed to promote settling. For practical purposes, design standards can be considered “contemporary” if they have been published within the last ten years, preferably in California or Washington State, and are specifically intended for storm water quality management.

Table 0-4: Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs Meeting Performance Standard

List of Acceptable Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs	Statistical Analysis of International Stormwater BMP Database				Evaluation of Conformance to Performance Standard		
	Count In/Out	TSS Mean Influent, mg/L	TSS Mean Effluent ¹ , mg/L	Average Category Volume Reduct.	Volume-Adjusted Effluent Conc ² , mg/L	Volume-Adjusted Removal Efficiency ²	Level of Attainment of Performance Standard (with rationale)
Vegetated Filter Strip	361/282	69	31	38%	19	72%	Medium, effluent < 20 mg/L after volume adjustment
Vegetated Swale	399/346	45	33	48%	17	61%	Medium, effluent < 20 mg/L after volume adjustment
Detention Basin	321/346	125	42	33%	28	77%	Medium, percent removal near 80% after volume adjustment
Sand Filter/Media Bed Filter	381/358	95	19	NA ³	19	80%	High, effluent and % removal meet criteria without adjustment
Lined Porous Pavement ⁴	356/220	229	46	NA ^{3,4}	46	80%	High, % removal meets criteria without adjustment
Wet Pond	923/933	119	31	NA ³	31	74%	Medium, percent removal near 80%

Source: 2014 BMP Performance Summaries and Statistical Appendices; 2010 Volume Performance Summary; available at: www.bmpdatabase.org

1 - A statistically significant difference between influent and effluent was detected at a p value of 0.05 for all categories.

2 - Estimates were adjusted to account for category-average volume reduction.

3 - Not Applicable as these BMPs are not designed for volume reduction and are anticipated to have very small incidental volume reduction.

4 - The category presented in this table represents a lined system for flow-thru treatment purposes. Porous pavement for retention purposes is an infiltration BMP, not a flow-thru BMP. This table should not be consulted for porous pavement for infiltration.

Selecting Proprietary BMPs

Proprietary BMPs can be used if the BMP meets each of the following conditions:

- (1) The proposed BMP meets the performance standard in Appendix B.6.2.2 as certified through third-party, field scale evaluation.** An active General Use Level Designation for Basic Treatment, Phosphorus Treatment or Enhanced Treatment under the Washington State Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program is the preferred method of demonstrating that the performance standard is met. The list of certified technologies is updated as new technologies are approved (link below). Technologies with Pilot Use Level

Designation and Conditional Use Level Designations are not acceptable. Refer to: <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html>.

Alternatively, other field scale verification of 80 percent TSS capture, such as through Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership or New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing may be acceptable. A list of field-scale verified technologies under Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership Tier II and New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing can be accessed at: <http://www.njcat.org/verification-process/technology-verification-database.html> (refer to field verified technologies only).

- (2) **The proposed BMP is designed and maintained in a manner consistent with its performance certifications (see explanation below).** The applicant must demonstrate conclusively that the proposed application of the BMP is consistent with the basis of its certification/verification. Certifications or verifications issued by the Washington Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program and the Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership or New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing programs are typically accompanied by a set of guidelines regarding appropriate design and maintenance conditions that would be consistent with the certification/verification. It is common for these approvals to specify the specific model of BMP, design capacity for given unit sizes, type of media that is the basis for approval, and/or other parameters.
- (3) **The proposed BMP is acceptable at the discretion of the City Engineer.** The applicant may be required to provide additional studies and/or required to meet additional design criteria beyond the scope of this document in order to demonstrate that these criteria are met. The City Engineer has no obligation to accept any proprietary flow-thru BMP.

B.6.2.3 Soluble-form dominated Pollutants (Nutrients)

If nutrients are identified as a most significant pollutant of concern for the PDP, then BMPs must be selected to meet the performance standard described in Appendix B.6.2.2 **and** must be selected to provide medium or high level of effectiveness for nutrient treatment as described in this section. The most common nutrient of concern in the San Diego region is nitrogen, therefore total nitrogen (TN) was used as the primary indicator of nutrient performance in storm water BMPs.

Selection of BMPs to address nutrients consists of two steps:

- 1) Determine if nutrients can be addressed via source control BMPs as described in Appendix E and Chapter 4. After applying source controls, if there are no remaining source areas for soluble nutrients, then this pollutant can be removed from the list of pollutants of concerns for the purpose of selecting flow-thru treatment control BMPs. Particulate nutrients will be addressed by the performance standard in Appendix B.6.2.2.
- 2) If soluble nutrients cannot be fully addressed with source controls, then select a flow-thru treatment control BMPs that meets the performance criteria in Table B.6-5 or select from the nutrient-specific menu of treatment control BMPs in Table B.6-6.
 - a. The performance standard for nitrogen removal (Table B.6-5) has been developed based on evaluation of the relative performance of available categories of non-proprietary BMPs.
 - b. For proprietary BMPs, submit third party performance data indicating that the criteria in Table B.6-5 are met. The applicant may be required to provide additional studies and/or required to meet additional design criteria beyond the scope of this document in order to demonstrate that these criteria are met. The City Engineer has no obligation to accept any proprietary flow-thru BMP.

Table B.6-5: Performance Standard for Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs for Nutrient Treatment

Basis	Criteria
Treatment Basis	Comparison of mean influent and effluent indicates significant concentration reduction of TN approximately 40 percent or higher based on studies with representative influent concentrations
Combined Treatment and Volume Reduction Basis	Combination of concentration reduction and volume reduction yields TN mass removal of approximately 40 percent or higher based on studies with representative influent concentrations

Table B.6-6: Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs Meeting Nutrient Treatment Performance Standard

List of Acceptable Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs for Nutrients	Statistical Analysis of International Stormwater BMP Database				Evaluation of Conformance to Performance Standard		
	Count In/Out	TN Mean Influent, mg/L	TN Mean Effluent ¹ , mg/L	Average Category Volume Reduct.	Volume-Adjusted Effluent Conc ² , mg/L	Volume-Adjusted Removal Efficiency ²	Level of Attainment of Performance Standard (with rationale)
Vegetated Filter Strip	138/ 122	1.53	1.37	38%	0.85	44%	Medium, if designed to include volume reduction processes
Detention Basin	90/ 89	2.34	2.01	33%	1.35	42%	Medium, if designed to include volume reduction processes
Wet Pond	397/ 425	2.12	1.33	NA	1.33	37%	Medium, best concentration reduction among BMP categories, but limited volume reduction

Source: 2014 BMP Performance Summaries and Statistical Appendices; 2010 Volume Performance Summary; available at: www.bmpdatabase.org

1 - A statistically significant difference between influent and effluent was detected at a p value of 0.05 for all categories included.

2 - Estimates were adjusted to account for category-average volume reduction.

B.6.3 Sizing Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs:

Flow-thru treatment control BMPs shall be sized to filter or treat the maximum flow rate of runoff produced from a rainfall intensity of 0.2 inch of rainfall per hour, for each hour of every storm event. The required flow-thru treatment rate should be adjusted for the portion of the DCV already retained or biofiltered onsite as described in Worksheet B.6-1. The following hydrologic method shall be used to calculate the flow rate to be filtered or treated:

$$Q = C \times i \times A$$

Where:

Q = Design flow rate in cubic feet per second

C = Runoff factor, area-weighted estimate using Table B.1-1.

i = Rainfall intensity of 0.2 in/hr.

A = Tributary area (acres) which includes the total area draining to the BMP, including any offsite or onsite areas that comingle with project runoff and drain to the BMP. Refer to Section 3.3.3 for additional guidance. Street projects consult Section 1.4.3.

Worksheet 0-1: Flow-Thru Design Flows

Flow-thru Design Flows		Worksheet B.6-1		
1	DCV	DCV		cubic-feet
2	DCV retained	DCV _{retained}		cubic-feet
3	DCV biofiltered	DCV _{biofiltered}		cubic-feet
4	DCV requiring flow-thru (Line 1 – Line 2 – 0.67*Line 3)	DCV _{flow-thru}		cubic-feet
5	Adjustment factor (Line 4 / Line 1)*	AF=		unitless
6	Design rainfall intensity	i=	0.20	in/hr
7	Area tributary to BMP (s)	A=		acres
8	Area-weighted runoff factor (estimate using Appendix B.2)	C=		unitless
9	Calculate Flow Rate = AF x (C x i x A)	Q=		cfs

- 1) Adjustment factor shall be estimated considering only retention and biofiltration BMPs located upstream of flow-thru BMPs. That is, if the flow-thru BMP is upstream of the project's retention and biofiltration BMPs then the flow-thru BMP shall be sized using an adjustment factor of 1.
- 2) Volume based (e.g., dry extended detention basin) flow-thru treatment control BMPs shall be sized to the volume in Line 4 and flow based (e.g., vegetated swales) shall be sized to flow rate in Line 9. Sand filter and media filter can be designed either by volume in Line 4 or flow rate in Line 9.
- 3) Proprietary BMPs, if used, shall provide certified treatment capacity equal to or greater than the calculated flow rate in Line 9; certified treatment capacity per unit shall be consistent with third party certifications.



Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

C.1 Purpose and Phasing

Feasibility of storm water infiltration is dependent on the geotechnical and groundwater conditions at the project site.

This appendix provides guidelines for performing and reporting feasibility analysis for infiltration with respect to geotechnical and groundwater conditions. It provides framework for feasibility analysis at two phases of project development:

- **Planning Phase:** Simpler methods for conducting preliminary screening for feasibility/infeasibility, and
- **Design Phase:** When infiltration is considered potentially feasible, more rigorous analysis is needed to confirm feasibility and to develop design considerations and mitigation measures if required

Planning Phase At this stage of the project, information about the site may be limited, the proposed design features may be conceptual, and there may be an opportunity to adjust project plans to incorporate infiltration into the project layout as it is developed. At this phase, project geotechnical engineers are typically responsible for conducting explorations of geologic conditions, performing preliminary analyses, and identifying particular aspects of design that require more detailed investigation at later phases. As part of this process, the role of a planning-level infiltration feasibility assessment is to help planners reach early tentative conclusions regarding where infiltration is likely feasible, possibly feasible if done carefully, or clearly infeasible. This determination can help guide the design process by influencing project layout, selection of infiltration BMPs, and identifying if more detailed studies are necessary. The goal of the planning and feasibility phase is to identify potential geotechnical and groundwater impacts and to determine which impacts may be considered fatal flaws and which impacts may be possible to mitigate with design features. Determination of acceptable risks and/or mitigation measures may involve discussions with adjacent land owners and/or utility operators, as well as coordination with other projects under planning or design in the project vicinity. Early involvement of potentially impacted parties is critical to avoid late-stage design changes and schedule delays and to reduce potential future liabilities.

Design Phase During this phase, potential geotechnical and groundwater impacts must be fully considered and evaluated and mitigation measures should be incorporated in the BMP design, as appropriate. Mitigation measures refer to design features or assumptions intended to reduce risks associated with storm water infiltration. While rules of thumb may be useful, if applied carefully, for the planning level phase, the analyses conducted in the detailed design phase require the involvement of a geotechnical professional familiar with the local conditions. One of the first steps in the design phase should be determination if additional field and/or laboratory investigations are required (e.g., borings, test pits, laboratory or field testing) to further assess the geotechnical impacts of storm water infiltration. As the design of infiltration systems are highly dependent on the

Appendix C: Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

subsurface conditions, coordination with the storm water design team may be beneficial to limit duplicative efforts and costs.

Worksheet C.4-1 is provided to document infiltration feasibility screening. This worksheet is divided into two parts. Part 1 “Full Infiltration Feasibility Screening Criteria” is used to determine if the full design volume can be infiltrated onsite, whereas Part 2 “Partial Infiltration versus No Infiltration Screening Criteria” is used to determine if any amount of volume can be infiltrated.

Note that it is not necessary to investigate each and every criterion in the worksheet, a single “no” answer in Part 1 and Part 2 controls the feasibility and desirability. If all the answers in Part 1 are “yes” then it is not required to complete Part 2. The same worksheet could be used to document both planning-level categorization and design-level categorization. Note that planning-level categorization, are typically based on initial site assessment results; therefore it is not necessarily conclusive. Categorizations should be confirmed or revised, as necessary, based on more detailed design-level investigation and analysis during BMP design.

C.2 Geotechnical Feasibility Criteria

This section is divided into seven factors that should be considered, as applicable, while assessing the feasibility and desirability of infiltration related to geotechnical conditions. Note that during the planning phase, if one or more of these factors precludes infiltration as an approach, it is not necessary to assess every other factor. However, if proposing infiltration BMPs, then every applicable factor in this section must be addressed.

C.2.1 Soil and Geologic Conditions

Site soils and geologic conditions influence the rate at which water can physically enter the soils. Site assessment approaches for soil and geologic conditions may consist of:

- Review of soil survey maps
- Review of available reports on local geology to identify relevant features, such as depth to bedrock, rock type, lithology, faults, and hydrostratigraphic or confining units
- Review of previous geotechnical investigations of the area
- Site-specific geotechnical and/or geologic investigations (e.g., borings, infiltration tests)

Geologic investigations should also seek to provide an assessment of whether soil infiltration properties are likely to be uniform or variable across the project site. Appendix D provides guidance on determining infiltration rates for planning and design phase.

C.2.2 Settlement and Volume Change

Settlement and volume change limits the amount of infiltration that can be allowed without resulting in adverse impacts that cannot be mitigated. Upon considering the impacts of an infiltration design, the designer must identify areas where soil settlement or heave is likely and whether these conditions would be unfavorable to existing or proposed features. Settlement refers to the condition when soils decrease in volume, and heave refers to expansion of soils or increase in volume.

There are several different mechanisms that can induce volume change due to infiltration that the professional must be aware of and consider while completing the feasibility screening including:

- Hydro collapse and calcareous soils;
- Expansive soils;
- Frost heave;
- Consolidation; and
- Liquefaction.

C.2.3 Slope Stability

Infiltration of water has the potential to result in an increased risk of slope failure of nearby slopes. This should be assessed as part of both the feasibility and design stages of a project. There are many factors that impact the stability of slopes, including, but not limited to, slope inclination, soil and unit weight and seepage forces. Increases in moisture content or rising of the water table in the vicinity of a slope, which may result from storm water infiltration, have the potential to change the soil strength and unit weight and to add seepage forces to the slope, which in turn, may reduce the factor of safety of the stability of the slope. When evaluating the effect of infiltration on the design of a slope, the designer must consider all types of potential slope failures.

C.2.4 Utility Considerations

Utilities are either public or private infrastructure components that include underground pipelines and vaults (e.g., potable water, sewer, storm water, gas pipelines), underground wires/conduit (e.g., telephone, cable, electrical) and above ground wiring and associated structures (e.g., electrical distribution and transmission lines). Utility considerations are typically within the purview of a geotechnical site assessment and should be considered in assessing the feasibility of storm water infiltration. Infiltration has the potential to damage subsurface utilities and/or underground utilities may pose geotechnical hazards in themselves when infiltrated water is introduced. Impacts related to storm water infiltration in the vicinity of underground utilities are not likely to cause a fatal flaw in the design, but the designer must be aware of the potential cost impacts to the design during the planning stage.

C.2.5 Groundwater Mounding

Storm water infiltration and recharge to the underlying groundwater table may create a groundwater mound beneath the infiltration facility. The height and shape of the mound depends on the infiltration system design, the recharge rate, and the hydrogeologic conditions at the site, especially the horizontal hydraulic conductivity and the saturated thickness. Elevated groundwater levels can lead to a number of problems, including flooding and damage to structures and utilities through buoyancy and moisture intrusion, increase in inflow and infiltration into municipal sanitary sewer systems, and flow of water through existing utility trenches, including sewers, potentially leading to formation of sinkholes (Gobel et al. 2004). Mounding shall be considered by the geotechnical professional while performing the infiltration feasibility screening.

C.2.6 Retaining Walls and Foundations

Development projects may include retaining walls or foundations in close proximity to proposed infiltration BMPs. These structures are designed to withstand the forces of the earth they are retaining and other surface loading conditions such as nearby structures. Foundations include shallow foundations (spread and strip footings, mats) and deep foundations (piles, piers) and are designed to support overburden and design loads. All types of retaining walls and foundations can be impacted by increased water infiltration into the subsurface as a result of potential increases in lateral pressures and potential reductions in soil strength. The geotechnical professional should consider these factors while performing the infiltration feasibility screening.

C.2.7 Other Factors

While completing the feasibility screening, other factors determined by the geotechnical professional to influence the feasibility and desirability of infiltration related to geotechnical conditions shall also be considered.

C.3 Groundwater Quality and Water Balance Feasibility Criteria

This section is divided into eight factors that should be considered, to the extent applicable, while assessing the feasibility and desirability of infiltration related to groundwater quality and water balance. Note that during the planning phase, if one or more of these factors precludes infiltration as an approach, it is not necessary to assess every other factor. However, if proposing infiltration BMPs, then every applicable factor in this section must be addressed.

Appendix C: Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

C.3.1 Soil and Groundwater Contamination

Infiltration shall be avoided in areas with:

- Physical and chemical characteristics (e.g., appropriate cation exchange capacity, organic content, clay content and infiltration rate) which are not adequate for proper infiltration durations and treatment of runoff for the protection of groundwater beneficial uses.
- Groundwater contamination and/or soil pollution, if infiltration could contribute to the movement or dispersion of soil or groundwater contamination or adversely affect ongoing clean-up efforts, either onsite or down-gradient of the project.

If infiltration is under consideration for one of the above conditions, a site-specific analysis should be conducted to determine where infiltration-based BMPs can be used without adverse impacts.

C.3.2 Separation to Seasonal High Groundwater

The depth to seasonally high groundwater tables (normal high depth during the wet season) beneath the base of any infiltration BMP must be greater than 10 feet for infiltration BMPs to be allowed. The depth to groundwater requirement can be reduced from 10 feet at the discretion of the approval agency if the underlying groundwater basin does not support beneficial uses and the groundwater quality is maintained at the proposed depth. Depth to seasonally high groundwater levels can be estimated based on well level measurements or redoximorphic methods. For sites with complex groundwater tables, long term studies may be needed to understand how groundwater levels change in wet and dry years.

C.3.3 Wellhead Protection

Wellheads natural and man-made are water resources that may potentially be adversely impacted by storm water infiltration through the introduction of contaminants or alteration in water supply and levels. It is recommended that the locations of wells and springs be identified early in the design process and site design be developed to avoid infiltration in the vicinity of these resources. Infiltration BMPs must be located a minimum of 100 feet horizontally from any water supply well.

C.3.4 Contamination Risks from Land Use Activities

Concentration of storm water pollutants in runoff is highly dependent on the land uses and activities present in the area tributary to an infiltration BMP. Likewise, the potential for groundwater contamination due to the infiltration BMP is a function of pollutant abundance, concentration of pollutants in soluble forms, and the mobility of the pollutant in the subsurface soils. Hence infiltration BMPs must not be used for areas of known contaminated soils or groundwater, industrial or light industrial activity, and other high threat to water quality land uses and activities as designated by the City.

C.3.5 Consultation with Applicable Groundwater Agencies

Infiltration activities should be coordinated with the applicable groundwater management agency, such as groundwater providers and/or resource protection agencies, to ensure groundwater quality is protected. It is recommended that coordination be initiated as early as possible during the planning process to determine whether specific site assessment activities apply or whether these agencies have data available that may support the planning and design process.

C.3.6 Water Balance Impacts on Stream Flow

Use of infiltration systems to reduce surface water discharge volumes may result in additional volume of deeper infiltration compared to natural conditions, which may result in impacts to receiving channels associated with change in dry weather flow regimes. A relatively simple survey of hydrogeologic data (piezometer measurements, boring logs, regional groundwater maps) and downstream receiving water characteristics is generally adequate to determine whether there is potential for impacts and whether a more rigorous assessment is needed.

Where water balance conditions appear to be sensitive to development impacts and there is an elevated risk of impacts, a computational analysis may be warranted to evaluate the feasibility/desirability of infiltration. Such an analysis should account for precipitation, runoff, irrigation inputs, soil moisture retention, evapotranspiration, baseflow, and change in groundwater recharge on a long term basis. Because water balance calculations are sensitive to the timing of precipitation versus evapotranspiration, it is most appropriate to utilize a continuous model simulation rather than basing calculations on average annual or monthly normal conditions.

C.3.7 Downstream Water Rights

While water rights cases are not believed to be common, there may be cases in which infiltration of water from area that was previously allowed to drain freely to downstream water bodies would not be legal from a water rights perspective. Site-specific evaluation of water rights laws should be conducted if this is believed to be a potential issue in the project location.

C.3.8 Other Factors

While completing the feasibility screening, other factors determined by the geotechnical professional to influence the feasibility and desirability of infiltration related to groundwater quality and water balance shall also be considered.

C.4 Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Report Requirements

The geotechnical and groundwater investigation report(s) addressing onsite storm water infiltration shall include the following elements, as applicable. These reports may need to be completed by multiple professional disciplines, depending on the issues that need be addressed for a given site. It may also be necessary to prepare separate report(s) at the planning phase and design phase of a project if the methods and timing of analyses differ.

C.4.1 Site Evaluation

Site evaluation shall identify the following:

- Areas of contaminated soil or contaminated groundwater within the site;
- “Brown fields” adjacent to the site;
- Mapped soil type(s);
- Historic high groundwater level;
- Slopes steeper than 25 percent; and
- Location of water supply wells, septic systems (and expansion area), or underground storage tanks, or permitted gray water systems within 100 feet of a proposed infiltration/ percolation BMP.

Appendix C: Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

C.4.2 Field Investigation

Where the site evaluation indicates potential feasibility for onsite storm water infiltration BMPs, the following field investigations will be necessary to demonstrate suitability and to provide design recommendations.

C.4.2.1 Subsurface Exploration

Subsurface exploration and testing for storm water infiltration BMPs shall include:

- A minimum of two exploratory excavations shall be conducted within 50-feet of each proposed storm water infiltration BMP. The excavations shall extend at least 10 feet below the lowest elevation of the base of the proposed infiltration BMP.
- Soils shall be logged in detail with emphasis on describing the soil profile.
- Identify low permeability or impermeable materials.
- Indicate any evidence of soil contamination.

C.4.2.2 Material Testing and Infiltration/Percolation Testing

Various material testing and in situ infiltration/percolation testing methods and guidance for appropriate factor of safety are discussed in detail in Appendix D. Infiltration testing methods described in Appendix D include surface and shallow excavation methods and deeper subsurface tests.

C.4.2.3 Evaluation of Depth to Groundwater

An evaluation of the depth to groundwater is required to confirm the feasibility of infiltration. Infiltration BMPs may not be feasible in high groundwater conditions (within 10 feet of the base of infiltration/ percolation BMP) unless an exemption is granted by the approval agency.

C.4.3 Reporting Requirements by Geotechnical Engineer

The geotechnical and groundwater investigation report shall address the following key elements, and where appropriate, mitigation recommendations shall be provided.

- Identify areas of the project site where infiltration is likely to be feasible and provide justifications for selection of those areas based on soil types, slopes, proximity to existing features, etc. Include completed and signed Worksheet C.4-1.

Appendix C: Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

- Investigate, evaluate and estimate the vertical infiltration rates and capacities in accordance with the guidance provided in Appendix D which describes infiltration testing and appropriate factor of safety to be applied for infiltration testing results. The site may be broken into sub-basins, each of which has different infiltration rates or capacities.
- Describe the infiltration/ percolation test results and correlation with published infiltration/ percolation rates based on soil parameters or classification. Recommend providing design infiltration/percolation rate(s) at the sub-basins. Use Worksheet D.5-1.
- Investigate the subsurface geological conditions and geotechnical conditions that would affect infiltration or migration of water toward structures, slopes, utilities, or other features. Describe the anticipated flow path of infiltrated water. Indicate if the water will flow into pavement sections, utility trench bedding, wall drains, foundation drains, or other permeable improvements.
- Investigate depth to groundwater and the nature of the groundwater. Include an estimate of the high seasonal groundwater elevations.
- Evaluate proposed use of the site (industrial use, residential use, etc.), soil and groundwater data and provide a concluding opinion whether proposed storm water infiltration could cause adverse impacts to groundwater quality and if it does cause impacts whether the impacts could be reasonably mitigated or not.
- Estimate the maximum allowable infiltration rates and volumes that could occur at the site that would avoid damage to existing and proposed structures, utilities, slopes, or other features. In addition the report must indicate if the recommended infiltration rate is appropriate based on the conditions exposed during construction.
- Provide a concluding opinion regarding whether or not the proposed onsite storm water infiltration/percolation BMP will result in soil piping, daylight water seepage, slope instability, or ground settlement.
- Recommend measures to substantially mitigate or avoid any potentially detrimental effects of the storm water infiltration BMPs or associated soil response on existing or proposed improvements or structures, utilities, slopes or other features within and adjacent to the site. For example, minimize soil compaction.
- Provide guidance for the selection and location of infiltration BMPs, including the minimum separations between such infiltration BMPs and structures, streets, utilities, manufactured and existing slopes, engineered fills, utilities or other features. Include guidance for measures that could be used to reduce the minimum separations or to mitigate the potential impacts of infiltration BMPs.
- Provide a concluding opinion whether or not proposed infiltration BMPs are in conformance with the following design criteria:
 - Runoff will undergo pretreatment such as sedimentation or filtration prior to infiltration;

Appendix C: Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

- Pollution prevention and source control BMPs are implemented at a level appropriate to protect groundwater quality for areas draining to infiltration BMPs;
- The vertical distance from the base of the infiltration BMPs to the seasonal high groundwater mark is greater than 10 feet. This vertical distance may be reduced when the groundwater basin does not support beneficial uses and the groundwater quality is maintained;
- The soil through which infiltration is to occur has physical and chemical characteristics (e.g., appropriate cation exchange capacity, organic content, clay content, and infiltration rate) which are adequate for proper infiltration durations and treatment of runoff for the protection of groundwater beneficial uses; and
- Infiltration BMPs must not be used for areas of known contaminated soils or groundwater, industrial or light industrial activity, and other high threat to water quality land uses and activities as designated by the City.
- Infiltration BMPs are located a minimum of 100 feet horizontally from any water supply wells.

C.4.4 Reporting Requirements by the Project Design Engineer

Project design engineer has the following responsibilities:

- Complete criteria 4 and 8 in Worksheet C.4-1; and
- In the SWQMP provide a concluding opinion whether or not proposed infiltration BMPs will affect seasonality of ephemeral streams.

Appendix C: Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

Worksheet 0-1: Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition

Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition		Worksheet C.4-1	
<p><u>Part 1 - Full Infiltration Feasibility Screening Criteria</u></p> <p>Would infiltration of the full design volume be feasible from a physical perspective without any undesirable consequences that cannot be reasonably mitigated?</p>			
Criteria	Screening Question	Yes	No
1	<p>Is the estimated reliable infiltration rate below proposed facility locations greater than 0.5 inches per hour? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2 and Appendix D.</p>		
<p>Provide basis:</p> <p>Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.</p>			
2	<p>Can infiltration greater than 0.5 inches per hour be allowed without increasing risk of geotechnical hazards (slope stability, groundwater mounding, utilities, or other factors) that cannot be mitigated to an acceptable level? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2.</p>		
<p>Provide basis:</p> <p>Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.</p>			

Appendix C: Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

Worksheet C.4-1 Page 2 of 4			
Criteria	Screening Question	Yes	No
3	Can infiltration greater than 0.5 inches per hour be allowed without increasing risk of groundwater contamination (shallow water table, storm water pollutants or other factors) that cannot be mitigated to an acceptable level? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.3.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.			
4	Can infiltration greater than 0.5 inches per hour be allowed without causing potential water balance issues such as change of seasonality of ephemeral streams or increased discharge of contaminated groundwater to surface waters? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.3.		
Provide basis: Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability.			
Part 1 Result*	If all answers to rows 1 - 4 are “Yes” a full infiltration design is potentially feasible. The feasibility screening category is Full Infiltration If any answer from row 1-4 is “No”, infiltration may be possible to some extent but would not generally be feasible or desirable to achieve a “full infiltration” design. Proceed to Part 2		

*To be completed using gathered site information and best professional judgment considering the definition of MEP in the MS4 Permit. Additional testing and/or studies may be required by City Engineer to substantiate findings.

Appendix C: Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

Worksheet C.4-1 Page 3 of 4

Part 2 – Partial Infiltration vs. No Infiltration Feasibility Screening Criteria

Would infiltration of water in any appreciable amount be physically feasible without any negative consequences that cannot be reasonably mitigated?

Criteria	Screening Question	Yes	No
5	Do soil and geologic conditions allow for infiltration in any appreciable rate or volume? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2 and Appendix D.		

Provide basis:

Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.

6	Can Infiltration in any appreciable quantity be allowed without increasing risk of geotechnical hazards (slope stability, groundwater mounding, utilities, or other factors) that cannot be mitigated to an acceptable level? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2.		
---	---	--	--

Provide basis:

Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.

C.5 Feasibility Screening Exhibits

Table C.5-1 lists the feasibility screening exhibits that were generated using readily available GIS data sets to assist the project applicant to screen the project site for feasibility.

Table 0-1: Feasibility Screening Exhibits

Figures	Layer	Intent/Rationale	Data Sources
C.1 Soils	Hydrologic Soil Group – A, B, C, D	Hydrologic Soil Group will aid in determining areas of potential infiltration	SanGIS http://www.sangis.org/
	Hydric Soils	Hydric soils will indicate layers of intermittent saturation that may function like a D soil and should be avoided for infiltration	USDA Web Soil Survey. Hydric soils, (ratings of 100) were classified as hydric. http://websoilsurvey.sc.egov.usda.gov/App/HomePage.htm
C.2: Slopes and Geologic Hazards	Slopes >25%	BMPs are hard to construct on slopes >25% and can potentially cause slope instability	SanGIS http://www.sangis.org/
	Liquefaction Potential	BMPs (particularly infiltration BMPs) must not be sited in areas with high potential for liquefaction or landslides to minimize earthquake/landslide risks	SanGIS http://www.sangis.org/
	Landslide Potential		SanGIS Geologic Hazards layer. Subset of polygons with hazard codes related to landslides was selected. This data is limited to the City of San Diego Boundary. http://www.sangis.org/
C.3: Groundwater Table Elevations	Groundwater Depths	Infiltration BMPs will need to be sited in areas with adequate distance (>10 ft) from the groundwater table	GeoTracker. Data downloaded for San Diego county from 2014 and 2013. In cases where there were multiple measurements made at the same well, the average was taken over that year. http://geotracker.waterboards.ca.gov/data_download_by_county.asp
C.4: Contaminated Sites	Contaminated soils and/or groundwater sites	Infiltration must be limited in areas of contaminated soil/groundwater	GeoTracker. Data downloaded for San Diego county and limited to active cleanup sites http://geotracker.waterboards.ca.gov/

Appendix C: Geotechnical and Groundwater Investigation Requirements

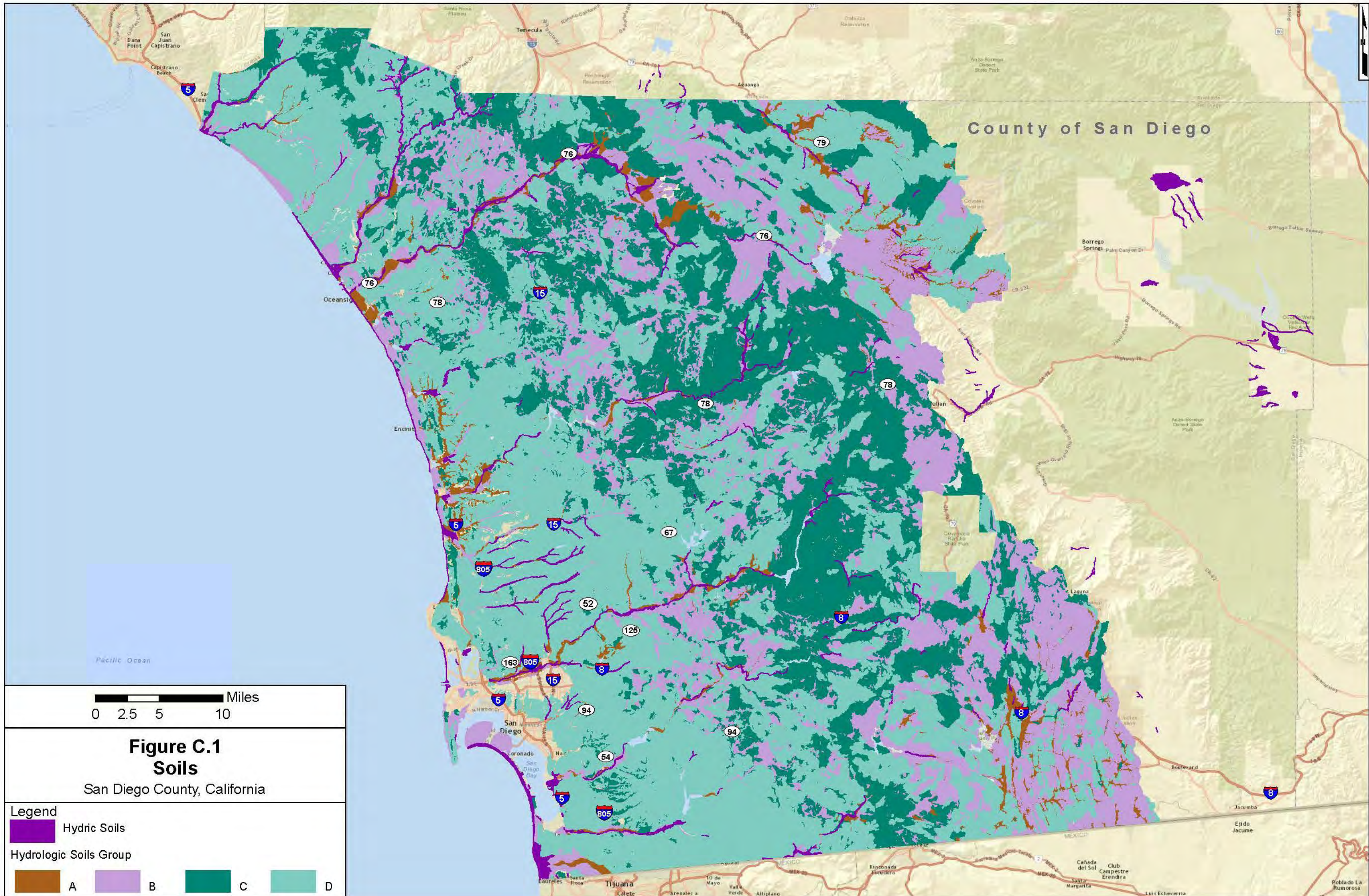


Figure C.1
Soils
 San Diego County, California

Legend

Hydric Soils

Hydrologic Soils Group

A B C D

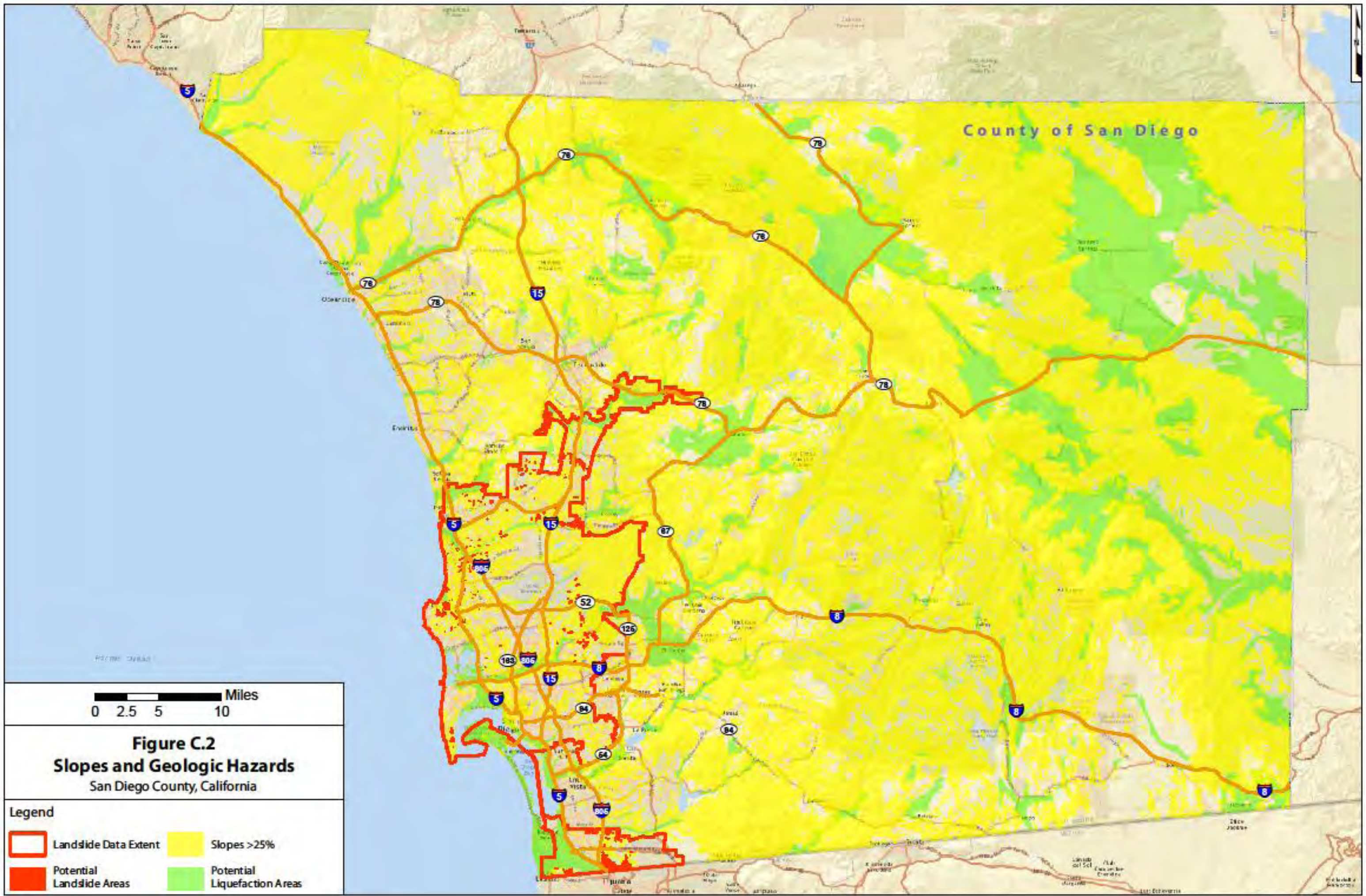
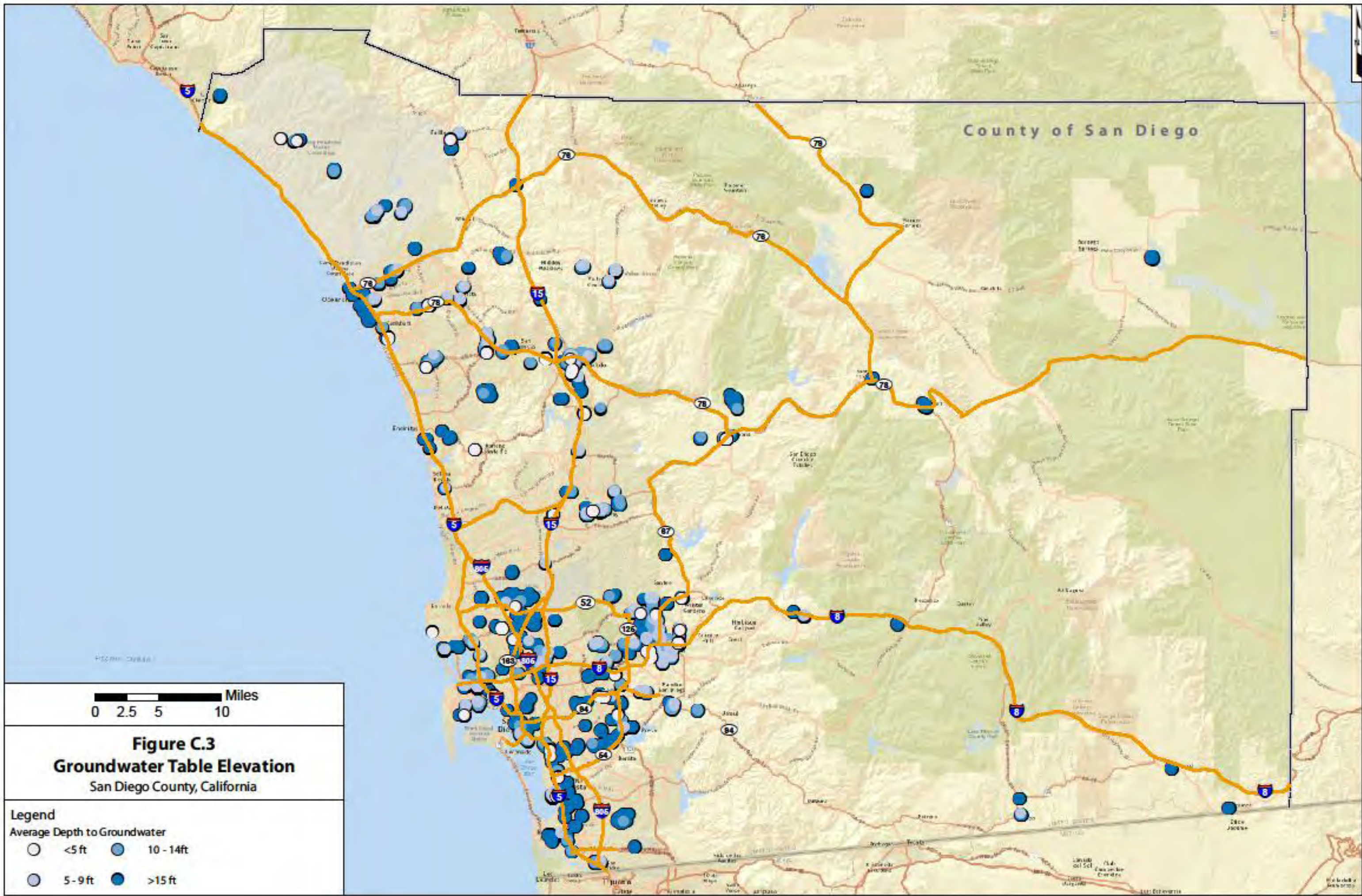


Figure C.2
Slopes and Geologic Hazards
 San Diego County, California

- Legend**
- Landslide Data Extent
 - Slopes >25%
 - Potential Landslide Areas
 - Potential Liquefaction Areas

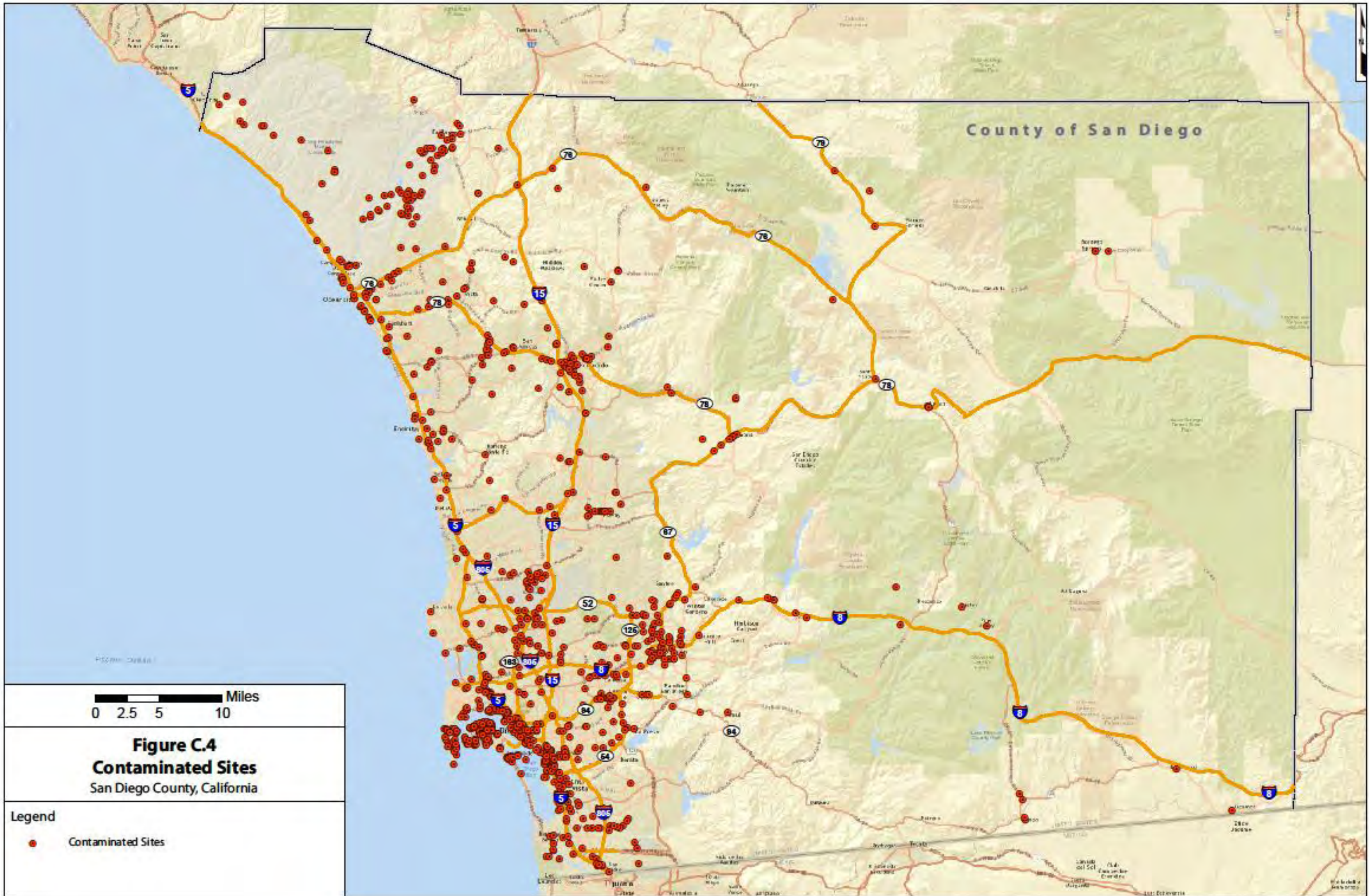


County of San Diego

Miles
0 2.5 5 10

Figure C.3
Groundwater Table Elevation
 San Diego County, California

- Legend**
 Average Depth to Groundwater
- <5 ft
 - 5-9 ft
 - 10-14ft
 - >15ft



Miles
0 2.5 5 10

Figure C.4
Contaminated Sites
San Diego County, California

Legend
● Contaminated Sites



**Approved Infiltration Rate
Assessment Methods for
Selection of Storm Water BMPs**

D.1 Introduction

Characterization of potential infiltration rates is a critical step in evaluating the degree to which infiltration can be used to reduce storm water runoff volume. This appendix is intended to provide guidance to help answer the following questions:

1. *How and where does infiltration testing fit into the project development process?*

Section D.2 discusses the role of infiltration testing in different stage of project development and how to plan a phased investigation approach.

2. *What infiltration rate assessment methods are acceptable?*

Section D.3 describes the infiltration rate assessment methods that are acceptable.

3. *What factors should be considered in selecting the most appropriate testing method for a project?*

Section D.4 provides guidance on site-specific considerations that influence which assessment methods are most appropriate.

4. *How should factors of safety be selected and applied to, for BMP selection and design?*

Section D.5 provides guidance for selecting a safety factor.

Note, that this appendix does not consider other feasibility criteria that may make infiltration infeasible, such as groundwater contamination and geotechnical considerations (these are covered in Appendix C). In general, infiltration testing should only be conducted after other feasibility criteria specified in this manual have been evaluated and cleared.

D.2 Role of Infiltration Testing in Different Stages of Project Development

In the process of planning and designing infiltration facilities, there are a number of ways that infiltration testing or estimation factors into project development, as summarized in Table D.2-1. As part of selecting infiltration testing methods, the geotechnical engineer shall select methods that are applicable to the phase of the project and the associated burden of proof.

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

Table 0-1: Role of Infiltration Testing

Project Phase	Key Questions/Burden of Proof	General Assessment Strategies
Site Planning Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Where within the project area is infiltration potentially feasible? • What volume reduction approaches are potentially suitable for my project? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use existing data and maps to the extent possible • Use less expensive methods to allow a broader area to be investigated more rapidly • Reach tentative conclusions that are subject to confirmation/refinement at the design phase
BMP Design Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What infiltration rates should be used to design infiltration and biofiltration facilities? • What factor of safety should be applied? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use more rigorous testing methods at specific BMP locations • Support or modify preliminary feasibility findings • Estimate design infiltration rates with appropriate factors of safety

D.3 Guidance for Selecting Infiltration Testing Methods

The geotechnical engineer shall select appropriate testing methods for the site conditions, subject to the engineer’s discretion and approval of the City Engineer, that are adequate to meet the burden of proof that is applicable at each phase of the project design (See Table 0-1):

- At the planning phase, testing/evaluation method must be selected to provide a reliable estimate of the locations where infiltration is feasible and allow a reasonably confident determination of infiltration feasibility to support the selection between full infiltration, partial infiltration, and no infiltration BMPs.
- At the design phase, the testing method must be selected to provide a reliable infiltration rate to be used in design. The degree of certainty provided by the selected test should be considered

Table D.3-1 provides a matrix comparison of these methods. Sections D.3.1 to D.3.3 provide a summary of each method. This appendix is not intended to be an exhaustive reference on infiltration testing at this time. It does not attempt to discuss every method for testing, nor is it intended to provide step-by-step procedures for each method. The user is directed to supplemental resources (referenced in this appendix) or other appropriate references for more specific

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

information. **Alternative testing methods are allowed with appropriate rationales, subject to the discretion of the City Engineer.**

In order to select an infiltration testing method, it is important to understand how each test is applied and what specific physical properties the test is designed to measure. Infiltration testing methods vary considerably in these regards. For example, a borehole percolation test is conducted by drilling a borehole, filling a portion of the hole with water, and monitoring the rate of fall of the water. This test directly measures the three dimensional flux of water into the walls and bottom of the borehole. An approximate correction is applied to indirectly estimate the vertical hydraulic conductivity from the results of the borehole test. In contrast, a double-ring infiltrometer test is conducted from the ground surface and is intended to provide a direct estimate of vertical (one-dimensional) infiltration rate at this point. Both of these methods are applicable under different conditions.

Table 0-1: Comparison of Infiltration Rate Estimation and Testing Methods

Test	Suitability at Planning Level Screening Phase	Suitability at BMP Design Phase
NRCS Soil Survey Maps	Yes, but mapped soil types must be confirmed with site observations. Regional soil maps are known to contain inaccuracies at the scale of typical development sites.	No, unless a strong correlation is developed between soil types and infiltration rates in the direct vicinity of the site and an elevated factor of safety is used.
Grain Size Analysis	Not preferred. Should only be used if a strong correlation has been developed between grain size analysis and measured infiltration rates testing results of site soils.	No
Cone Penetrometer Testing	Not preferred. Should only be used if a strong correlation has been developed between CPT results and measured infiltration rates testing results of site soils.	No
Simple Open Pit Test	Yes	Yes, with appropriate correction for infiltration into side walls and elevated factor of safety.

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

Test	Suitability at Planning Level Screening Phase	Suitability at BMP Design Phase
Open Pit Falling Head Test	Yes	Yes, with appropriate correction for infiltration into side walls and elevated factor of safety.
Double Ring Infiltrometer Test (ASTM 3385)	Yes	Yes
Single Ring Infiltrometer Test	Yes	Yes
Large-scale Pilot Infiltration Test	Yes, but generally cost prohibitive and too water-intensive for preliminary screening of a large area.	Yes, but should consider relatively large water demand associated with this test.
Smaller-scale Pilot Infiltration Test	Yes	Yes
Well Permeameter Method (USBR 7300-89)	Yes; reliability of this test can be improved by obtaining a continuous core where tests are conducted.	Yes in areas of proposed cut where other tests are not possible; a continuous boring log should be recorded and used to interpret test; should be confirmed with a more direct measurement following excavation.
Borehole Percolation Tests (various methods)	Yes; reliability of this test can be improved by obtaining a continuous core where tests are conducted.	Yes in areas of proposed cut where other tests are not possible; a continuous boring log should be recorded and used to interpret test; should be confirmed with a more direct measurement following excavation.

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

Test	Suitability at Planning Level Screening Phase	Suitability at BMP Design Phase
Laboratory Permeability Tests (e.g., ASTM D2434)	Yes, only suitable for evaluating potential infiltration rates in proposed fill areas. For sites with proposed cut, it is preferred to do a borehole percolation test at the proposed grade instead of analyzing samples in the lab. A combination of both tests may improve reliability.	No. However, may be part of a line of evidence for estimating the design infiltration of partial infiltration BMPs constructed in future compacted fill.

D.3.1 Desktop Approaches and Data Correlation Methods

This section reviews common methods used to evaluate infiltration characteristics based on desktop-available information, such as GIS data. This section also introduces methods for estimating infiltration properties via correlations with other measurements.

D.3.1.1 NRCS Soil Survey Maps

NRCS Soil Survey maps (<http://websoilsurvey.nrcs.usda.gov/app/HomePage.htm>) can be used to estimate preliminary feasibility conditions, specifically by mapping hydrologic soil groups, soil texture classes, and presence of hydric soils relative to the site layout. For feasibility determinations, mapped conditions must be supplemented with available data from the site (e.g., soil borings, observed soil textures, biological indicators). The presence of D soils, if confirmed by available data, provides a reasonable basis to determine that full infiltration is not feasible for a given DMA.

D.3.1.2 Grain Size Analysis Testing and Correlations to Infiltration Rate

Hydraulic conductivity can be estimated indirectly from correlations with soil grain-size distributions. While this method is approximate, correlations have been relatively well established for some soil conditions. One of the most commonly used correlations between grain size parameters and hydraulic conductivity is the Hazen (1892, 1911) empirical formula (Philips and Kitch, 2011), but a variety of others have been developed. Correlations must be developed based on testing of site-specific soils.

D.3.1.3 Cone Penetrometer Testing and Correlations to Infiltration Rate

Hydraulic conductivity can also be estimated indirectly from cone penetrometer testing (CPT). A cone penetrometer test involves advancing a small probe into the soil and measuring the relative resistance encountered by the probe as it is advanced. The signal returned from this test can be interpreted to yield estimated soil types and the location of key transitions between soil layers. If this method is used, correlations must be developed based on testing of site-specific soils.

D.3.2 Surface and Shallow Excavation Methods

This section describes tests that are conducted at the ground surface or within shallow excavations close to the ground surface. These tests are generally applicable for cases where the bottom of the infiltration system will be near the existing ground surface. They can also be conducted to confirm the results of borehole methods after excavation/site grading has been completed.

D.3.2.1 Simple Open Pit Test

The Simple Open Pit Test is most appropriate for planning level screening of infiltration feasibility. Although it is similar to Open Pit Falling Head tests used for establishing a design infiltration rate (see below), the Simple Open Pit Test is less rigorous and is generally conducted to a lower standard of care. This test can be conducted by a nonprofessional as part of planning level screening phase.

The Simple Open Pit Test is a falling head test in which a hole at least two feet in diameter is filled with water to a level of 6" above the bottom. Water level is checked and recorded regularly until either an hour has passed or the entire volume has infiltrated. The test is repeated two more times in succession and the rate at which the water level falls in the third test is used as the infiltration rate.

This test has the advantage of being inexpensive to conduct. Yet it is believed to be fairly reliable for screening as the dimensions of the test are similar, proportionally, to the dimensions of a typical BMP. The key limitations of this test are that it measures a relatively small area, does not necessarily result in a precise measurement, and may not be uniformly implemented.

Source: City of Portland, 2008. Storm water Management Manual

D.3.2.2 Open Pit Falling Head Test

This test is similar to the Simple Open Pit Test, but covers a larger footprint, includes more specific instructions, returns more precise measurements, and generally should be overseen by a geotechnical professional. Nonetheless, it remains a relatively simple test.

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

To perform this test, a hole is excavated at least 2 feet wide by 4 feet long (larger is preferred) and to a depth of at least 12 inches. The bottom of the hole should be approximately at the depth of the proposed infiltrating surface of the BMP. The hole is pre-soaked by filling it with water at least a foot above the soil to be tested and leaving it at least 4 hours (or overnight if clays are present). After pre-soaking, the hole is refilled to a depth of 12 inches and allow it to drain for one hour (2 hours for slower soils), measuring the rate at which the water level drops. The test is then repeated until successive trials yield a result with less than 10 percent change.

In comparison to a double-ring infiltrometer, this test has the advantage of measuring infiltration over a larger area and better resembles the dimensionality of a typical small scale BMP. Because it includes both vertical and lateral infiltration, it should be adjusted to estimate design rates for larger scale BMPs.

D.3.2.3 Double Ring Infiltration Test (ASTM 3385)

The Double Ring Infiltration Test was originally developed to estimate the saturated hydraulic conductivity of low permeability materials, such as clay liners for ponds, but has seen significant use in storm water applications. The most recent revision of this method from 2009 is known as ASTM 3385-09. The testing apparatus is designed with concentric rings that form an inner ring and an annulus between the inner and outer rings. Infiltration from the annulus between the two rings is intended to saturate the soil outside of the inner ring such that infiltration from the inner ring is restricted primarily to the vertical direction.

To conduct this test, both the center ring and annulus between the rings are filled with water. There is no pre-wetting of the soil in this test. However, a constant head of 1 to 6 inches is maintained for 6 hours, or until a constant flow rate is established. Both the inner flow rate and annular flow rate are recorded, but if they are different, the inner flow rate should be used. There are a variety of approaches that are used to maintain a constant head on the system, including use of a Mariotte tube, constant level float valves, or manual observation and filling. This test must be conducted at the elevation of the proposed infiltrating surface; therefore application of this test is limited in cases where the infiltration surface is a significant distance below existing grade at the time of testing.

This test is generally considered to provide a direct estimate of vertical infiltration rate for the specific point tested and is highly replicable. However, given the small diameter of the inner ring (standard diameter is 12 inches, but it can be larger), this test only measures infiltration rate in a small area. Additionally, given the small quantity of water used in this test compared to larger scale tests, this test may be biased high in cases where the long term infiltration rate is governed by groundwater mounding and the rate at which mounding dissipates (i.e., the capacity of the infiltration receptor). Finally, the added effort and cost of isolating vertical infiltration rate may not necessarily be warranted considering that BMPs typically have a lateral component of infiltration as well. Therefore, while this method has the advantages of being technical rigorous and well

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

standardized, it should not necessarily be assumed to be the most representative test for estimating full-scale infiltration rates. Source: American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) International (2009)

D.3.2.4 Single Ring Infiltrometer Test

The single ring infiltrometer test is not a standardized ASTM test, however it is a relatively well-controlled test and shares many similarities with the ASTM standard double ring infiltrometer test (ASTM 3385-09). This test is a constant head test using a large ring (preferably greater than 40 inches in diameter) usually driven 12 inches into the soil. Water is ponded above the surface. The rate of water addition is recorded and infiltration rate is determined after the flow rate has stabilized. Water can be added either manually or automatically.

The single ring used in this test tends to be larger than the inner ring used in the double ring test. Driving the ring into the ground limits lateral infiltration; however some lateral infiltration is generally considered to occur. Experience in Riverside County (CA) has shown that this test gives results that are close to full-scale infiltration facilities. The primary advantages of this test are that it is relatively simple to conduct and has a larger footprint (compared to the double-ring method) and restricts horizontal infiltration and is more standardized (compared to open pit methods). However, it is still a relatively small scale test and can only be reasonably conducted near the existing ground surface.

D.3.2.5 Large-scale Pilot Infiltration Test

As its name implies, this test is closer in scale to a full-scale infiltration facility. This test was developed by Washington State Department of Ecology specifically for storm water applications.

To perform this test, a test pit is excavated with a horizontal surface area of roughly 100 square feet to a depth that allows 3 to 4 feet of ponding above the expected bottom of the infiltration facility. Water is continually pumped into the system to maintain a constant water level (between 3 and 4 feet about the bottom of the pit, but not more than the estimated water depth in the proposed facility) and the flow rate is recorded. The test is continued until the flow rate stabilizes. Infiltration rate is calculated by dividing the flow rate by the surface area of the pit. Similar to other open pit test, this test is known to result in a slight bias high because infiltration also moves laterally through the walls of the pit during the test. Washington State Department of Ecology requires a correction factor of 0.75 (factor of safety of 1.33) be applied to results.

This test has the advantage of being more resistant to bias from localized soil variability and being more similar to the dimensionality and scale of full scale BMPs. It is also more likely to detect long term decline in infiltration rates associated with groundwater mounding. As such, it remains the preferred test for establishing design infiltration rates in Western Washington (Washington State Department of Ecology, 2012). In a comparative evaluation of test methods, this method was found

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

to provide a more reliable estimate of full-scale infiltration rate than double ring infiltrometer and borehole percolation tests (Philips and Kitch 2011).

The difficulty encountered in this method is that it requires a larger area be excavated than the other methods, and this in turn requires larger equipment for excavation and a greater supply of water. However, this method should be strongly considered when less information is known about spatial variability of soils and/or a higher degree of certainty in estimated infiltration rates is desired.

Source: Washington State Department of Ecology, 2012.

D.3.2.6 Smaller-scale Pilot Infiltration Test

The smaller-scale PIT is conducted similarly to the large-scale PIT but involves a smaller excavation, ranging from 20 to 32 square feet instead of 100 square feet for the large-scale PIT, with similar depths. The primary advantage of this test compared to the full-scale PIT is that it requires less excavation volume and less water. It may be more suitable for small-scale distributed infiltration controls where the need to conduct a greater number of tests outweighs the accuracy that must be obtained in each test, and where groundwater mounding is not as likely to be an issue. Washington State Department of Ecology establishes a correction factor of 0.5 (factor of safety of 2.0) for this test in comparison to 0.75 (factor of safety of 1.33) for the large-scale PIT to account for a greater fraction of water infiltrating through the walls of the excavation and lower degree of certainty related to spatial variability of soils.

D.3.3 Deeper Subsurface Tests

D.3.3.1 Well Permeameter Method (USBR 7300-89)

Well permeameter methods were originally developed for purposes of assessing aquifer permeability and associated yield of drinking water wells. This family of tests is most applicable in situations in which infiltration facilities will be placed substantially below existing grade, which limits the use of surface testing methods.

In general, this test involves drilling a 6 inch to 8 inch test well to the depth of interest and maintaining a constant head until a constant flow rate has been achieved. Water level is maintained with down-hole floats. The Porchet method or the nomographs provided in the USBR Drainage Manual (United States Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation, 1993) are used to convert the measured rate of percolation to an estimate of vertical hydraulic conductivity. A smaller diameter boring may be adequate, however this then requires a different correction factor to account for the increased variability expected.

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

While these tests have applicability in screening level analysis, considerable uncertainty is introduced in the step of converting direct percolation measurements to estimates of vertical infiltration. Additionally, this testing method is prone to yielding erroneous results cases where the vertical horizon of the test intersects with minor lenses of sandy soils that allow water to dissipate laterally at a much greater rate than would be expected in a full-scale facility. To improve the interpretation of this test method, a continuous bore log should be inspected to determine whether thin lenses of material may be biasing results at the strata where testing is conducted. Consult USBR procedure 7300-89 for more details.

Source: (United States Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation, 1990, 1993)

D.3.3.2 Borehole Percolation Tests (various methods)

Borehole percolation tests were originally developed as empirical tests to estimate the capacity of onsite sewage disposal systems (septic system leach fields), but have more recently been adopted into use for evaluating storm water infiltration. Similar to the well permeameter method, borehole percolation methods primarily measure lateral infiltration into the walls of the boring and are designed for situations in which infiltration facilities will be placed well below current grade. The percolation rate obtained in this test should be converted to an infiltration rate using a technique such as the Porchet method.

This test is generally implemented similarly to the USBR Well Permeameter Method. Per the Riverside County Borehole Percolation method, a hole is bored to a depth at least 5 times the borehole radius. The hole is presoaked for 24 hours (or at least 2 hours if sandy soils with no clay). The hole is filled to approximately the anticipated top of the proposed infiltration basin. Rates of fall are measured for six hours, refilling each half hour (or 10 minutes for sand). Tests are generally repeated until consistent results are obtained.

The same limitations described for the well permeameter method apply to borehole percolation tests, and their applicability is generally limited to initial screening. To improve the interpretation of this test method, a continuous soil core can be extracted from the hole and below the test depth, following testing, to determine whether thin lenses of material may be biasing results at the strata where testing is conducted.

Sources: Riverside County Percolation Test (2011), California Test 750 (Caltrans, 1986), San Bernardino County Percolation Test (1992); USEPA Falling Head Test (USEPA, 1980).

D.4 Specific Considerations for Infiltration Testing

The following subsections are intended to address specific topics that commonly arise in characterizing infiltration rates.

D.4.1 Hydraulic Conductivity versus Infiltration Rate versus Percolation Rate

A common misunderstanding is that the “percolation rate” obtained from a percolation test is equivalent to the “infiltration rate” obtained from tests such as a single or double ring infiltrometer test which is equivalent to the “saturated hydraulic conductivity”. In fact, these terms have different meanings. Saturated hydraulic conductivity is an intrinsic property of a specific soil sample under a given degree of compaction. It is a coefficient in Darcy’s equation (Darcy 1856) that characterizes the flux of water that will occur under a given gradient. The measurement of saturated hydraulic conductivity in a laboratory test is typically referred to as “permeability”, which is a function of the density, structure, stratification, fines, and discontinuities of a given sample under given controlled conditions. In contrast, infiltration rate is an empirical observation of the rate of flux of water into a given soil structure under long term ponding conditions. Similarly to permeability, infiltration rate can be limited by a number of factors including the layering of soil, density, discontinuities, and initial moisture content. These factors control how quickly water can move through a soil. However, infiltration rate can also be influenced by mounding of groundwater, and the rate at which water dissipates horizontally below a BMP – both of which describe the “capacity” of the “infiltration receptor” to accept this water over an extended period. For this reason, an infiltration test should ideally be conducted for a relatively long duration resembling a series of storm events so that the capacity of the infiltration receptor is evaluated as well as the rate at which water can enter the system. Infiltration rates are generally tested with larger diameter holes, pits, or apparatuses intended to enforce a primarily vertical direction of flux.

In contrast, percolation is tested with small diameter holes, and it is mostly a lateral phenomenon. The direct measurement yielded by a percolation test tends to overestimate the infiltration rate, except perhaps in cases in which a BMP has similar dimensionality to the borehole, such as a dry well. Adjustment of percolation rates may be made to an infiltration rate using a technique such as the Porchet Method.

D.4.2 Cut and Fill Conditions

Cut Conditions: Where the proposed infiltration BMP is to be located in a cut condition, the infiltration surface level at the bottom of the BMP might be far below the existing grade. For example, if the infiltration surface of a proposed BMP is to be located at an elevation that is currently beneath 15 feet of planned cut, *how can the proposed infiltration surface be tested to establish a design infiltration rate prior to beginning excavation?* The question can be addressed in two ways: First, one of the deeper subsurface tests described above can be used to provide a planning level screening of potential rates at the elevation of the proposed infiltrating surface. These tests can be conducted at depths exceeding 100 feet, therefore are applicable in most cut conditions. Second, the project can commit to further testing using more reliable methods following bulk excavation to refine or adjust infiltration rates, and/or apply higher factors of safety to borehole methods to account for the inherent uncertainty in these measurements and conversions.

Fill Conditions: There are two types of fills – those that are engineered or documented, and those that are undocumented. Undocumented fills are fills placed without engineering controls or construction quality assurance and are subject to great uncertainty. Engineered fills are generally placed using construction quality assurance procedures and may have criteria for grain-size and fines content, and the properties can be very well understood. However, for engineered fills, infiltration rates may still be quite uncertain due to layering and heterogeneities introduced as part of construction that cannot be precisely controlled.

If the bottom of a BMP (infiltration surface) is proposed to be located in a fill location, the infiltration surface may not exist prior to grading. How then can the infiltration rate be determined? For example, if a proposed infiltration BMP is to be located with its bottom elevation in 10 feet of fill, how could one reasonably establish an infiltration rate prior to the fill being placed?

Where possible, infiltration BMPs on fill material should be designed such that their infiltrating surface extends into native soils. Additionally, for shallow fill depths, fill material can be selectively graded (i.e., high permeability granular material placed below proposed BMPs) to provide reliable infiltration properties until the infiltrating water reaches native soils. In some cases, due to considerable fill depth, the extension of the BMP down to natural soil and/or selective grading of fill material may prove infeasible. In addition, fill material will result in some compaction of now buried native soils potentially reducing their ability to infiltrate. In these cases, because of the uncertainty of fill parameters as described above as well as potential compaction of the native soils, an infiltration BMP may not be feasible.

If the source of fill material is defined and this material is known to be of a granular nature and that the native soils below is permeable and will not be highly compacted, infiltration through compacted fill materials may still be feasible. In this case, a project phasing approach could be used including the following general steps, (1) collect samples from areas expected to be used as borrow sites for fill

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

activities, (2) remold samples to approximately the proposed degree of compaction and measure the saturated hydraulic conductivity of remolded samples using laboratory methods, (3) if infiltration rates appear adequate for infiltration, then apply an appropriate factor of safety and use the initial rates for preliminary design, (4) following placement of fill, conduct in-situ testing to refine design infiltration rates and adjust the design as needed; the infiltration rate of native soil below the fill should also be tested at this time to determine if compaction as a result of fill placement has significantly reduced its infiltration rate. The project geotechnical engineer should be involved in decision making whenever infiltration is proposed in the vicinity of engineered fill structures so that potential impacts of infiltration on the strength and stability of fills and pavement structures can be evaluated.

D.4.3 Effects of Direct and Incidental Compaction

It is widely recognized that compaction of soil has a major influence on infiltration rates (Pitt et al. 2008). However, direct (intentional) compaction is an essential aspect of project construction and indirect compaction (such as by movement of machinery, placement of fill, stockpiling of materials, and foot traffic) can be difficult to avoid in some parts of the project site. Infiltration testing strategies should attempt to measure soils at a degree of compaction that resembles anticipated post-construction conditions.

Ideally, infiltration systems should be located outside of areas where direct compaction will be required and should be staked off to minimize incidental compaction from vehicles and stockpiling. For these conditions, no adjustment of test results is needed.

However, in some cases, infiltration BMPs will be constructed in areas to be compacted. For these areas, it may be appropriate to include field compaction tests or prepare laboratory samples and conducting infiltration testing to approximate the degree of compaction that will occur in post-construction conditions. Alternatively, testing could be conducted on undisturbed soil, and an additional factor of safety could be applied to account for anticipated infiltration after compaction. To develop a factor of safety associated with incidental compaction, samples could be compacted to various degrees of compaction, their hydraulic conductivity measured, and a “response curve” developed to relate the degree of compaction to the hydraulic conductivity of the material.

D.4.4 Temperature Effects on Infiltration Rate

The rate of infiltration through soil is affected by the viscosity of water, which in turn is affected by the temperature of water. As such, infiltration rate is strongly dependent on the temperature of the infiltrating water (Cedergren, 1997). For example, Emerson (2008) found that wintertime infiltration rates below a BMP in Pennsylvania were approximately half their peak summertime rates. As such, it is important to consider the effects of temperature when planning tests and interpreting results.

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

If possible, testing should be conducted at a temperature that approximates the typical runoff temperatures for the site during the times when rainfall occurs. If this is not possible, then the results of infiltration tests should be adjusted to account for the difference between the temperature at the time of testing and the typical temperature of runoff when rainfall occurs.

The measured infiltration can be adjusted by the ratio of the viscosity at the test temperature versus the typical temperature when rainfall occurs (Cedergren, 1997), per the following formula:

$$K_{\text{Typical}} = K_{\text{Test}} \times \left(\frac{\mu_{\text{Test}}}{\mu_{\text{Typical}}} \right)$$

Where:

K_{Typical} = the typical infiltration rate expected at typical temperatures when rainfall occurs

K_{Test} = the infiltration rate measured or estimated under the conditions of the test

μ_{Typical} = the viscosity of water at the typical temperature expected when rainfall occurs

μ_{Test} = the viscosity of water at the temperature at which the test was conducted

D.4.5 Number of Infiltration Tests Needed

The heterogeneity inherent in soils implies that all but the smallest proposed infiltration facilities would benefit from infiltration tests in multiple locations. The following requirements apply for in situ infiltration/percolation testing:

- In situ infiltration/ percolation testing shall be conducted at a minimum of two locations within 50-feet of each proposed storm water infiltration/ percolation BMP.
- In situ infiltration/percolation testing shall be conducted using an approved method listed in Table D.3-1
- Testing shall be conducted at approximately the same depth and in the same material as the base of the proposed storm water BMP.

Should I use a factor of safety for design infiltration rate?

D.5 Selecting a Safety Factor

Monitoring of actual facility performance has shown that the full-scale infiltration rate can be much lower than the rate measured by small-scale testing (King County Department of Natural Resources and Parks, 2009). Factors such as soil variability and groundwater mounding may be responsible for much of this difference. Additionally, the infiltration rate of BMPs naturally declines between maintenance cycles as the BMP surface becomes occluded and particulates accumulate in the infiltrative layer.

In the past, infiltration structures have been shown to have a relatively short lifespan. Over 50 percent of infiltration systems either partially or completely failed within the first 5 years of operation (United States EPA, 1999). In a Maryland study on infiltration trenches (Lindsey et al. 1991), 53 percent were not operating as designed, 36 percent were clogged, and 22 percent showed reduced filtration. In a study of 12 infiltration basins (Galli 1992), none of which had built-in pretreatment systems, all had failed within the first two years of operation.

Given the known potential for infiltration BMPs to degrade or fail over time, an appropriate factor of safety applied to infiltration testing results is strongly recommended. This section presents a recommended thought process for selecting a safety factor. This method considers factor of safety to be a function of:

- Site suitability considerations, and
- Design-related considerations.

These factors and the method for using them to compute a safety factor are discussed below. Importantly, this method encourages rigorous site investigation, good pretreatment, and commitments to routine maintenance to provide technically-sound justification for using a lower factor of safety.

D.5.1 Determining Factor of Safety

Worksheet D.5-1, at the end of this section can be used in conjunction with Tables D.5-1 and D.5-2 to determine an appropriate safety factor. Tables D.5-1 and D.5-2 assign point values to design considerations; the values are entered into Worksheet D.5-1, which assign a weighting factor for each design consideration.

The following procedure can be used to estimate an appropriate factor of safety to be applied to the infiltration testing results. When assigning a factor of safety, care should be taken to understand what other factors of safety are implicit in other aspects of the design to avoid incorporating compounding factors of safety that may result in significant over-design.

1. For each consideration shown above, determine whether the consideration is a high, medium, or low concern.
2. For all high concerns in Table D.5-1, assign a factor value of 3, for medium concerns, assign a factor value of 2, and for low concerns assign a factor value of 1.
3. Multiply each of the factors in Table D.5-1 by 0.25 and then add them together. This should yield a number between 1 and 3.
4. For all high concerns in Table D.5-2, assign a factor value of 3, for medium concerns, assign a factor value of 2, and for low concerns assign a factor value of 1.
5. Multiply each of the factors in Table D.5-2 by 0.5 and then add them together. This should yield a number between 1 and 3.
6. Multiply the two safety factors together to get the final combined safety factor. If the combined safety factor is less than 2, then 2 should be used as the safety factor.
7. Divide the tested infiltration rate by the combined safety factor to obtain the adjusted design infiltration rate for use in sizing the infiltration facility.

Note: The minimum combined adjustment factor should not be less than 2.0 and the maximum combined adjustment factor should not exceed 9.0.

D.5.2 Site Suitability Considerations for Selection of an Infiltration Factor of Safety

Considerations related to site suitability include:

- Soil assessment methods – the site assessment extent (e.g., number of borings, test pits, etc.) and the measurement method used to estimate the short-term infiltration rate.
- Predominant soil texture/percent fines – soil texture and the percent of fines can influence the potential for clogging. Finer grained soils may be more susceptible to clogging.

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

- Site soil variability – site with spatially heterogeneous soils (vertically or horizontally) as determined from site investigations are more difficult to estimate average properties for resulting in a higher level of uncertainty associated with initial estimates.
- Depth to seasonal high groundwater/impervious layer – groundwater mounding may become an issue during excessively wet conditions where shallow aquifers or shallow clay lenses are present.

These considerations are summarized in Table D.5-1 below, in addition to presenting classification of concern.

Table 0-1: Suitability Assessment Related Considerations for Infiltration Facility Safety Factors

Consideration	High Concern – 3 points	Medium Concern – 2 points	Low Concern – 1 point
Assessment methods (see explanation below)	Use of soil survey maps or simple texture analysis to estimate short-term infiltration rates Use of well permeameter or borehole methods without accompanying continuous boring log Relatively sparse testing with direct infiltration methods	Use of well permeameter or borehole methods with accompanying continuous boring log Direct measurement of infiltration area with localized infiltration measurement methods (e.g., infiltrometer) Moderate spatial resolution	Direct measurement with localized (i.e., small-scale) infiltration testing methods at relatively high resolution ¹ or Use of extensive test pit infiltration measurement methods ²
Texture Class	Silty and clayey soils with significant fines	Loamy soils	Granular to slightly loamy soils
Site soil variability	Highly variable soils indicated from site assessment, or Unknown variability	Soil borings/test pits indicate moderately homogeneous soils	Soil borings/test pits indicate relatively homogeneous soils
Depth to groundwater/ impervious layer	<5 ft below facility bottom	5-15 ft below facility bottom	>15 below facility bottom

1 - Localized (i.e., small scale) testing refers to methods such as the double-ring infiltrometer and borehole tests)

2 - Extensive infiltration testing refers to methods that include excavating a significant portion of the proposed infiltration area, filling the excavation with water, and monitoring drawdown. The excavation should be to the depth of the proposed infiltration surface and ideally be at least 30 to 100 square feet.

D.5.3 Design Related Considerations for Selection of an Infiltration Factor of Safety

Design related considerations include:

- Level of pretreatment and expected influent sediment loads – credit should be given for good pretreatment to account for the reduced probability of clogging from high sediment loading. Appendix B.6 describes performance criteria for “flow-thru treatment” based 80 percent capture of total suspended solids, which provides excellent levels of pretreatment. Additionally, the Washington State Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology provides a certification for “pre-treatment” based on 50 percent removal of TSS, which provides moderate levels of treatment. Current approved technologies are listed at: <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html>. Use of certified technologies can allow a lower factor of safety. Also, facilities designed to capture runoff from relatively clean surfaces such as rooftops are likely to see low sediment loads and therefore may be designed with lower safety factors. Finally, the amount of landscaped area and its vegetation coverage characteristics should be considered. For example in arid areas with more soils exposed, open areas draining to infiltration systems may contribute excessive sediments.
- Compaction during construction – proper construction oversight is needed during construction to ensure that the bottoms of infiltration facility are not impacted by significant incidental compaction. Facilities that use proper construction practices and oversight need less restrictive safety factors.

Table 0-2: Design Related Considerations for Infiltration Facility Safety Factors

Consideration	High Concern – 3 points	Medium Concern – 2 points	Low Concern – 1 point
Level of pretreatment/ expected influent sediment loads	Limited pretreatment using gross solids removal devices only, such as hydrodynamic separators, racks and screens AND tributary area includes landscaped areas, steep slopes, high traffic areas, road sanding, or any other areas expected to produce high sediment, trash, or debris loads.	Good pretreatment with BMPs that mitigate coarse sediments such as vegetated swales AND influent sediment loads from the tributary area are expected to be moderate (e.g., low traffic, mild slopes, stabilized pervious areas, etc.). Performance of pretreatment consistent with “pretreatment BMP performance criteria” (50% TSS removal) in Appendix B.6	Excellent pretreatment with BMPs that mitigate fine sediments such as bioretention or media filtration OR sedimentation or facility only treats runoff from relatively clean surfaces, such as rooftops/non-sanded road surfaces. Performance of pretreatment consistent with “flow-thru treatment control BMP performance criteria” (i.e., 80% TSS removal) in Appendix B.6

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

Consideration	High Concern – 3 points	Medium Concern – 2 points	Low Concern – 1 point
Redundancy/ resiliency	No “backup” system is provided; the system design does not allow infiltration rates to be restored relatively easily with maintenance	The system has a backup pathway for treated water to discharge if clogging occurs <u>or</u> infiltration rates can be restored via maintenance.	The system has a backup pathway for treated water to discharge if clogging occurs <u>and</u> infiltration rates can be relatively easily restored via maintenance.
Compaction during construction	Construction of facility on a compacted site or increased probability of unintended/ indirect compaction.	Medium probability of unintended/ indirect compaction.	Equipment traffic is effectively restricted from infiltration areas during construction and there is low probability of unintended/ indirect compaction.

D.5.4 Implications of a Factor of Safety in BMP Feasibility and Design

The above method will provide safety factors in the range of 2 to 9. From a simplified practical perspective, this means that the size of the facility will need to increase in area from 2 to 9 times relative to that which might be used without a safety factor. Clearly, numbers toward the upper end of this range will make all but the best locations prohibitive in land area and cost.

In order to make BMPs more feasible and cost effective, steps should be taken to plan and execute the implementation of infiltration BMPs in a way that will reduce the safety factors needed for those projects. A commitment to effective site design and source control thorough site investigation, use of effective pretreatment controls, good construction practices, and restoration of the infiltration rates of soils that are damaged by prior compaction should lower the safety factor that should be applied, to help improve the long term reliability of the system and reduce BMP construction cost. While these practices decrease the recommended safety factor, they do not totally mitigate the need to apply a factor of safety. The minimum recommended safety factor of 2.0 is intended to account for the remaining uncertainty and long-term deterioration that cannot be technically mitigated.

Because there is potential for an applicant to “exaggerate” factor of safety to artificially prove infeasibility, an upper cap on the factor of safety is proposed for feasibility screening. A maximum factor of safety of 2.0 is recommended for infiltration feasibility screening such that an artificially high factor of safety cannot be used to inappropriately rule out infiltration, unless justified. If the site passes the feasibility analysis at a factor of safety of 2.0, then infiltration must investigated, but a higher factor of safety may be selected at the discretion of the design engineer.

Appendix D: Approved Infiltration Rate Assessment Methods

Worksheet 0-1: Factor of Safety and Design Infiltration Rate Worksheet

Factor of Safety and Design Infiltration Rate Worksheet			Worksheet D.5-1		
Factor Category		Factor Description	Assigned Weight (w)	Factor Value (v)	Product (p) $p = w \times v$
A	Suitability Assessment	Soil assessment methods	0.25		
		Predominant soil texture	0.25		
		Site soil variability	0.25		
		Depth to groundwater / impervious layer	0.25		
		Suitability Assessment Safety Factor, $S_A = \sum p$			
B	Design	Level of pretreatment/ expected sediment loads	0.5		
		Redundancy/resiliency	0.25		
		Compaction during construction	0.25		
		Design Safety Factor, $S_B = \sum p$			
Combined Safety Factor, $S_{total} = S_A \times S_B$					
Observed Infiltration Rate, inch/hr, $K_{observed}$ (corrected for test-specific bias)					
Design Infiltration Rate, in/hr, $K_{design} = K_{observed} / S_{total}$					
Supporting Data					
Briefly describe infiltration test and provide reference to test forms:					



BMP Design Fact Sheets

BMP Design Fact Sheets

The following fact sheets were developed to assist the project applicants with designing BMPs to meet the storm water obligations:

MS4 Category	Manual Category	Design Fact Sheet
Source Control	Source Control	SC: Source Control BMP Requirements
Site Design	Site Design	SD-1: Street Trees
		SD-5: Impervious Area Dispersion
		SD-6A: Green Roofs
		SD-6B: Permeable Pavement (Site Design BMP)
		SD-8: Rain Barrels
Retention	Harvest and Use	HU-1: Cistern
	Infiltration	INF-1: Infiltration Basins
		INF-2: Bioretention
		INF-3: Permeable Pavement (Pollutant Control)
	Partial Retention	PR-1: Biofiltration with Partial Retention
Biofiltration	Biofiltration	BF-1: Biofiltration
		BF-2: Nutrient Sensitive Media Design
		BF-3: Proprietary Biofiltration
Flow-thru Treatment Control	Flow-thru Treatment Control with Alternative Compliance	FT-1: Vegetated Swales
		FT-2: Media Filters
		FT-3: Sand Filters
		FT-4: Dry Extended Detention Basin
		FT-5: Proprietary Flow-thru Treatment Control
		PL: Plant List

E.1 Source Control BMP Requirements

Worksheet 0-1: Source Control BMP Requirements

How to comply:

Projects shall comply with this requirement by implementing all source control BMPs listed in this section that are applicable to their project. Applicability shall be determined through consideration of the development project's features and anticipated pollutant sources. Appendix E.1 provides guidance for identifying source control BMPs applicable to a project. Checklist I.4 in Appendix I shall be used to document compliance with source control BMP requirements.

How to use this worksheet:

1. Review Column 1 and identify which of these potential sources of storm water pollutants apply to your site. Check each box that applies.
2. Review Column 2 and incorporate all of the corresponding applicable BMPs in your project site plan.
3. Review Columns 3 and 4 and incorporate all of the corresponding applicable permanent controls and operational BMPs in a table in your project-specific storm water management report. Describe your specific BMPs in an accompanying narrative, and explain any special conditions or situations that required omitting BMPs or substituting alternatives.

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP Shall Consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative
<input type="checkbox"/> A. Onsite storm drain inlets <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable	<input type="checkbox"/> Locations of inlets.	<input type="checkbox"/> Mark all inlets with the words “No Dumping! Flows to Bay” or similar.	<input type="checkbox"/> Maintain and periodically repaint or replace inlet markings. <input type="checkbox"/> Provide storm water pollution prevention information to new site owners, lessees, or operators. <input type="checkbox"/> See applicable operational BMPs in Fact Sheet SC-44, “Drainage System Maintenance,” in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com . <input type="checkbox"/> Include the following in lease agreements: “Tenant shall not allow anyone to discharge anything to storm drains or to store or deposit materials so as to create a potential discharge to storm drains.”

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative
<input type="checkbox"/> B. Interior floor drains and elevator shaft sump pumps <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable		<input type="checkbox"/> State that interior floor drains and elevator shaft sump pumps will be plumbed to sanitary sewer.	<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect and maintain drains to prevent blockages and overflow.
<input type="checkbox"/> C. Interior parking garages <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable		<input type="checkbox"/> State that parking garage floor drains will be plumbed to the sanitary sewer.	<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect and maintain drains to prevent blockages and overflow.
<input type="checkbox"/> D1. Need for future indoor & structural pest control <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable		<input type="checkbox"/> Note building design features that discourage entry of pests.	<input type="checkbox"/> Provide Integrated Pest Management information to owners, lessees, and operators.

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> D2. Landscape/ Outdoor Pesticide Use <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Show locations of existing trees or areas of shrubs and ground cover to be undisturbed and retained. <input type="checkbox"/> Show self-retaining landscape areas, if any. <input type="checkbox"/> Show storm water treatment facilities. 	<p>State that final landscape plans will accomplish all of the following.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Preserve existing drought tolerant trees, shrubs, and ground cover to the maximum extent possible. <input type="checkbox"/> Design landscaping to minimize irrigation and runoff, to promote surface infiltration where appropriate, and to minimize the use of fertilizers and pesticides that can contribute to storm water pollution. <input type="checkbox"/> Where landscaped areas are used to retain or detain storm water, specify plants that are tolerant of periodic saturated soil conditions. <input type="checkbox"/> Consider using pest-resistant plants, especially adjacent to hardscape. <input type="checkbox"/> To ensure successful establishment, select plants appropriate to site soils, slopes, climate, sun, wind, rain, land use, air movement, ecological consistency, and plant interactions. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Maintain landscaping using minimum or no pesticides. <input type="checkbox"/> See applicable operational BMPs in Fact Sheet SC-41, “Building and Grounds Maintenance,” in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com. <input type="checkbox"/> Provide IPM information to new owners, lessees and operators.

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> E. Pools, spas, ponds, decorative fountains, and other water features. <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Show location of water feature and a sanitary sewer cleanout in an accessible area within 10 feet. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> If the local municipality requires pools to be plumbed to the sanitary sewer, place a note on the plans and state in the narrative that this connection will be made according to local requirements. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> See applicable operational BMPs in Fact Sheet SC-72, “Fountain and Pool Maintenance,” in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> F. Food service <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> For restaurants, grocery stores, and other food service operations, show location (indoors or in a covered area outdoors) of a floor sink or other area for cleaning floor mats, containers, and equipment. <input type="checkbox"/> On the drawing, show a note that this drain will be connected to a grease interceptor before discharging to the sanitary sewer. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Describe the location and features of the designated cleaning area. <input type="checkbox"/> Describe the items to be cleaned in this facility and how it has been sized to ensure that the largest items can be accommodated. 	

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> G. Refuse areas <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Show where site refuse and recycled materials will be handled and stored for pickup. See local municipal requirements for sizes and other details of refuse areas. <input type="checkbox"/> If dumpsters or other receptacles are outdoors, show how the designated area will be covered, graded, and paved to prevent run- on and show locations of berms to prevent runoff from the area. Also show how the designated area will be protected from wind dispersal. <input type="checkbox"/> Any drains from dumpsters, compactors, and tallow bin areas shall be connected to a grease removal device before discharge to sanitary sewer. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> State how site refuse will be handled and provide supporting detail to what is shown on plans. <input type="checkbox"/> State that signs will be posted on or near dumpsters with the words “Do not dump hazardous materials here” or similar. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> State how the following will be implemented: Provide adequate number of receptacles. Inspect receptacles regularly; repair or replace leaky receptacles. Keep receptacles covered. Prohibit/prevent dumping of liquid or hazardous wastes. Post “no hazardous materials” signs. Inspect and pick up litter daily and clean up spills immediately. Keep spill control materials available on-site. See Fact Sheet SC-34, “Waste Handling and Disposal” in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative Table and Narrative
<input type="checkbox"/> H. Industrial processes. <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable	<input type="checkbox"/> Show process area.	<input type="checkbox"/> If industrial processes are to be located onsite, state: “All process activities to be performed indoors. No processes to drain to exterior or to storm drain system.”	<input type="checkbox"/> See Fact Sheet SC-10, “Non-Stormwater Discharges” in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com .
<input type="checkbox"/> I. Outdoor storage of equipment or materials. (See rows J and K for source control measures for vehicle cleaning, repair, and maintenance.) <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable	<input type="checkbox"/> Show any outdoor storage areas, including how materials will be covered. Show how areas will be graded and bermed to prevent run-on or runoff from area and protected from wind dispersal. <input type="checkbox"/> Storage of non-hazardous liquids shall be covered by a roof and/or drain to the sanitary sewer system, and be contained by berms, dikes, liners, or vaults. <input type="checkbox"/> Storage of hazardous materials and wastes must be in compliance with the local hazardous materials ordinance and a Hazardous Materials Management Plan for the site.	<input type="checkbox"/> Include a detailed description of materials to be stored, storage areas, and structural features to prevent pollutants from entering storm drains. Where appropriate, reference documentation of compliance with the requirements of local Hazardous Materials Programs for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Hazardous Waste Generation ▪ Hazardous Materials Release Response and Inventory ▪ California Accidental Release Prevention Program ▪ Aboveground Storage Tank ▪ Uniform Fire Code Article 80 Section 103(b) & (c) 1991 ▪ Underground Storage Tank 	<input type="checkbox"/> See the Fact Sheets SC-31, “Outdoor Liquid Container Storage” and SC-33, “Outdoor Storage of Raw Materials” in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com .

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> J. Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Show on drawings as appropriate: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Commercial/industrial facilities having vehicle /equipment cleaning needs shall either provide a covered, bermed area for washing activities or discourage vehicle/equipment washing by removing hose bibs and installing signs prohibiting such uses. (2) Multi-dwelling complexes shall have a paved, bermed, and covered car wash area (unless car washing is prohibited onsite and hoses are provided with an automatic shut-off to discourage such use). (3) Washing areas for cars, vehicles, and equipment shall be paved, designed to prevent run-on to or runoff from the area, and plumbed to drain to the sanitary sewer. (4) Commercial car wash facilities shall be designed such that no runoff from the facility is discharged to the storm drain system. Wastewater from the facility shall discharge to the sanitary sewer, or a wastewater reclamation system shall be installed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> If a car wash area is not provided, describe measures taken to discourage onsite car washing and explain how these will be enforced. 	<p>Describe operational measures to implement the following (if applicable):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Washwater from vehicle and equipment washing operations shall not be discharged to the storm drain system. <input type="checkbox"/> Car dealerships and similar may rinse cars with water only. <input type="checkbox"/> See Fact Sheet SC-21, “Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning,” in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> K. Vehicle/Equipment Repair and Maintenance <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Accommodate all vehicle equipment repair and maintenance indoors. Or designate an outdoor work area and design the area to protect from rainfall, run-on runoff, and wind dispersal. <input type="checkbox"/> Show secondary containment for exterior work areas where motor oil, brake fluid, gasoline, diesel fuel, radiator fluid, acid-containing batteries or other hazardous materials or hazardous wastes are used or stored. Drains shall not be installed within the secondary containment areas. <input type="checkbox"/> Add a note on the plans that states either (1) there are no floor drains, or (2) floor drains are connected to wastewater pretreatment systems prior to discharge to the sanitary sewer and an industrial waste discharge permit will be obtained. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> State that no vehicle repair or maintenance will be done outdoors, or else describe the required features of the outdoor work area. <input type="checkbox"/> State that there are no floor drains or if there are floor drains, note the agency from which an industrial waste discharge permit will be obtained and that the design meets that agency’s requirements. <input type="checkbox"/> State that there are no tanks, containers or sinks to be used for parts cleaning or rinsing or, if there are, note the agency from which an industrial waste discharge permit will be obtained and that the design meets that agency’s requirements. 	<p>In the report, note that all of the following restrictions apply to use the site:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> No person shall dispose of, nor permit the disposal, directly or indirectly of vehicle fluids, hazardous materials, or rinsewater from parts cleaning into storm drains. <input type="checkbox"/> No vehicle fluid removal shall be performed outside a building, nor on asphalt or ground surfaces, whether inside or outside a building, except in such a manner as to ensure that any spilled fluid will be in an area of secondary containment. Leaking vehicle fluids shall be contained or drained from the vehicle immediately. <input type="checkbox"/> No person shall leave unattended drip parts or other open containers containing vehicle fluid, unless such containers are in use or in an area of secondary containment.

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> L. Fuel Dispensing Areas <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Fueling areas¹ shall have impermeable floors (i.e., portland cement concrete or equivalent smooth impervious surface) that are (1) graded at the minimum slope necessary to prevent ponding; and (2) separated from the rest of the site by a grade break that prevents run-on of storm water to the MEP. <input type="checkbox"/> Fueling areas shall be covered by a canopy that extends a minimum of ten feet in each direction from each pump. [Alternative: The fueling area must be covered and the cover’s minimum dimensions must be equal to or greater than the area within the grade break or fuel dispensing area¹.] The canopy [or cover] shall not drain onto the fueling area. 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> The property owner shall dry sweep the fueling area routinely. <input type="checkbox"/> See the Business Guide Sheet, “Automotive Service—Service Stations” in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.

1. The fueling area shall be defined as the area extending a minimum of 6.5 feet from the corner of each fuel dispenser or the length at which the hose and nozzle assembly may be operated plus a minimum of one foot, whichever is greater.

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative
<p>M. Loading Docks</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Show a preliminary design for the loading dock area, including roofing and drainage. Loading docks shall be covered and/or graded to minimize run-on to and runoff from the loading area. Roof downspouts shall be positioned to direct storm water away from the loading area. Water from loading dock areas should be drained to the sanitary sewer where feasible. Direct connections to storm drains from depressed loading docks are prohibited. <input type="checkbox"/> Loading dock areas draining directly to the sanitary sewer shall be equipped with a spill control valve or equivalent device, which shall be kept closed during periods of operation. <input type="checkbox"/> Provide a roof overhang over the loading area or install door skirts (cowling) at each bay that enclose the end of the trailer. 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Move loaded and unloaded items indoors as soon as possible. <input type="checkbox"/> See Fact Sheet SC-30, “Outdoor Loading and Unloading,” in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> N. Fire Sprinkler Test Water <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Provide a means to drain fire sprinkler test water to the sanitary sewer. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> See the note in Fact Sheet SC-41, “Building and Grounds Maintenance,” in the CASQA Stormwater Quality Handbooks at www.cabmphandbooks.com.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> O. Miscellaneous Drain or Wash Water <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Boiler drain lines <input type="checkbox"/> Condensate drain lines <input type="checkbox"/> Rooftop equipment <input type="checkbox"/> Drainage sumps <input type="checkbox"/> Roofing, gutters, and trim <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Boiler drain lines shall be directly or indirectly connected to the sanitary sewer system and may not discharge to the storm drain system. <input type="checkbox"/> Condensate drain lines may discharge to landscaped areas if the flow is small enough that runoff will not occur. Condensate drain lines may not discharge to the storm drain system. <input type="checkbox"/> Rooftop mounted equipment with potential to produce pollutants shall be roofed and/or have secondary containment. <input type="checkbox"/> Any drainage sumps onsite shall feature a sediment sump to reduce the quantity of sediment in pumped water. <input type="checkbox"/> Avoid roofing, gutters, and trim made of copper or other unprotected metals that may leach into runoff. 	

If These Sources Will Be on the Project Site ...	... Then Your SWQMP shall consider These Source Control BMPs		
1 Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants	2 Permanent Controls—Show on Drawings	3 Permanent Controls—List in Table and Narrative	4 Operational BMPs—Include in Table and Narrative
<input type="checkbox"/> P. Plazas, sidewalks, and parking lots. <input type="checkbox"/> Not Applicable			<input type="checkbox"/> Plazas, sidewalks, and parking lots shall be swept regularly to prevent the accumulation of litter and debris. Debris from pressure washing shall be collected to prevent entry into the storm drain system. Washwater containing any cleaning agent or degreaser shall be collected and discharged to the sanitary sewer and not discharged to a storm drain.

E.2 SD-1 Street Trees



Street Trees (Source: County of San Diego LID Manual – EOA, Inc.)

MS4 Permit Category

Site Design

Manual Category

Site Design

Applicable Performance Standard

Site Design

Primary Benefits

Volume Reduction

Description

Trees planted in the right-of-way can be used as storm water management tools in addition to other typical benefits associated with trees, including energy conservation, air quality improvement, and aesthetic enhancement. Typical storm water management benefits associated with trees include:

- **Interception of rainfall** – tree surfaces (roots, foliage, bark, and branches) intercept, evaporate, store, or convey precipitation to the soil before it reaches surrounding impervious surfaces
- **Reduced erosion** – trees protect denuded area by intercepting or reducing the velocity of rain drops as they fall through the tree canopy
- **Increased infiltration** – soil conditions created by roots and fallen leaves promote infiltration
- **Treatment of storm water** – trees provide treatment through uptake of nutrients and other storm water pollutants (phytoremediation) and support of other biological processes that break down pollutants

Typical street tree system components include:

- Trees of the appropriate species for site conditions and constraints
- Available growing space based on tree species, soil type, water availability, surrounding land uses, and project goals

Appendix E: BMP Design Fact Sheets

- Optional suspended pavement design to provide structural support for adjacent pavement without requiring compaction of underlying layers
- Optional root barrier devices as needed; a root barrier is a device installed in the ground, between a tree and the sidewalk, intended to guide roots down and away from the sidewalk in order to prevent sidewalk lifting from tree roots.
- Optional tree grates; to be considered to maximize available space for pedestrian circulation and to protect tree roots from compaction related to pedestrian circulation; tree grates are typically made up of porous material that will allow the runoff to soak through.
- Optional shallow surface depression for ponding of excess runoff
- Optional planter box drain

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to provide incidental treatment. Street trees primarily functions as site design BMPs for incidental treatment. Benefits from street trees are accounted for by adjustment factors presented in Appendix B.2. This credit can apply to non-street trees as well (that meet the same criteria).

Design Criteria and Considerations

Street Trees must meet the following design criteria and considerations. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Tree species is appropriately chosen for the development (private or public). For public rights-of-ways, local planning guidelines and zoning provisions for the permissible species and placement of trees are consulted. A list of trees appropriate for site design that can be used by all county municipalities are provided in Appendix E.20	Proper tree placement and species selection minimizes problems such as pavement damage by surface roots and poor growth.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>														
<p>Location of trees planted along public streets follows local requirements and guidelines. Vehicle and pedestrian line of sight are considered in tree selection and placement.</p> <p>Unless exemption is granted by the City Engineer the following minimum tree separation distance is followed</p>	<p>Roadway safety for both vehicular and pedestrian traffic is a key consideration for placement along public streets.</p>														
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Improvement</th> <th>Minimum distance to Street Tree</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Traffic Signal, Stop sign</td> <td>20 feet</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Underground Utility lines (except sewer)</td> <td>5 feet</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Sewer Lines</td> <td>10 feet</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Above ground utility structures (Transformers, Hydrants, Utility poles, etc.)</td> <td>10 feet</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Driveways</td> <td>10 feet</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Intersections (intersecting curb lines of two streets)</td> <td>25 feet</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Improvement	Minimum distance to Street Tree	Traffic Signal, Stop sign	20 feet	Underground Utility lines (except sewer)	5 feet	Sewer Lines	10 feet	Above ground utility structures (Transformers, Hydrants, Utility poles, etc.)	10 feet	Driveways	10 feet	Intersections (intersecting curb lines of two streets)	25 feet	
Improvement	Minimum distance to Street Tree														
Traffic Signal, Stop sign	20 feet														
Underground Utility lines (except sewer)	5 feet														
Sewer Lines	10 feet														
Above ground utility structures (Transformers, Hydrants, Utility poles, etc.)	10 feet														
Driveways	10 feet														
Intersections (intersecting curb lines of two streets)	25 feet														
<p>Underground utilities and overhead wires are considered in the design and avoided or circumvented. Underground utilities are routed around or through the planter in suspended pavement applications. All underground utilities are protected from water and root penetration.</p>	<p>Tree growth can damage utilities and overhead wires resulting in service interruptions. Protecting utilities routed through the planter prevents damage and service interruptions.</p>														
<p>Suspended pavement design was developed where appropriate to minimize soil compaction and improve infiltration and filtration capabilities.</p> <p>Suspended pavement was constructed with an approved structural cell.</p>	<p>Suspended pavement designs provide structural support without compaction of the underlying layers, thereby promoting tree growth.</p> <p>Recommended structural cells include poured in place concrete columns, Silva Cells manufactured by Deeproot Green Infrastructures and Stratacell and Stratavault systems manufactured by Citygreen Systems.</p>														

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> A minimum soil volume of 2 cubic feet per square foot of canopy projection volume is provided for each tree. Canopy projection area is the ground area beneath the tree, measured at the drip line.	The minimum soil volume ensures that there is adequate storage volume to allow for unrestricted evapotranspiration.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where street trees can be used in the site design to achieve incidental treatment. Street trees reduce runoff volumes from the site. Refer to Appendix B.2.

E.3 SD-5 Impervious Area Dispersion



Photo Credit: Orange County Technical Guidance Document

MS4 Permit Category

Site Design

Manual Category

Site Design

Applicable Performance Criteria

Site Design

Primary Benefits

Volume Reduction

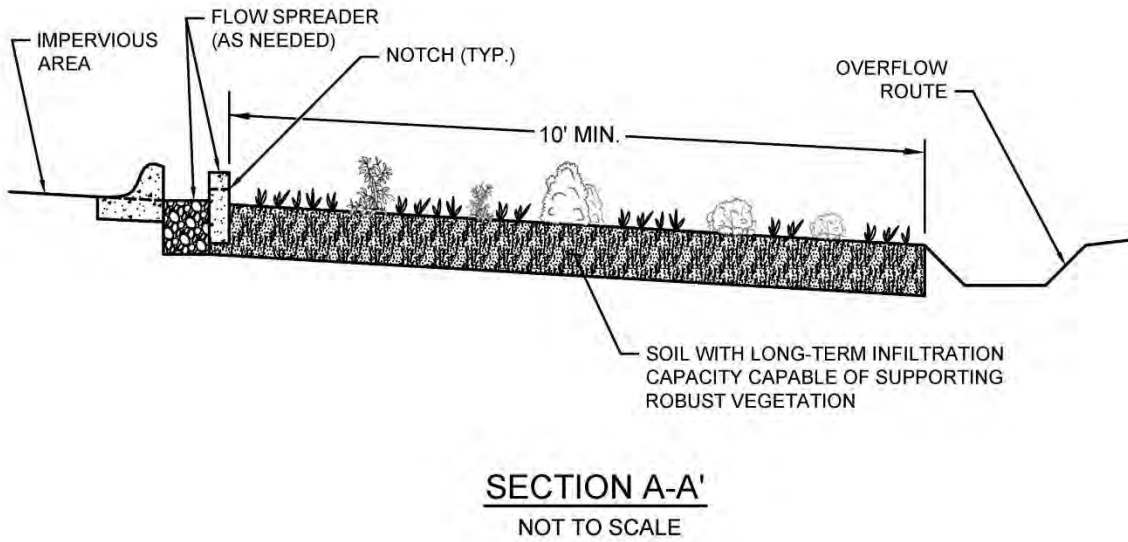
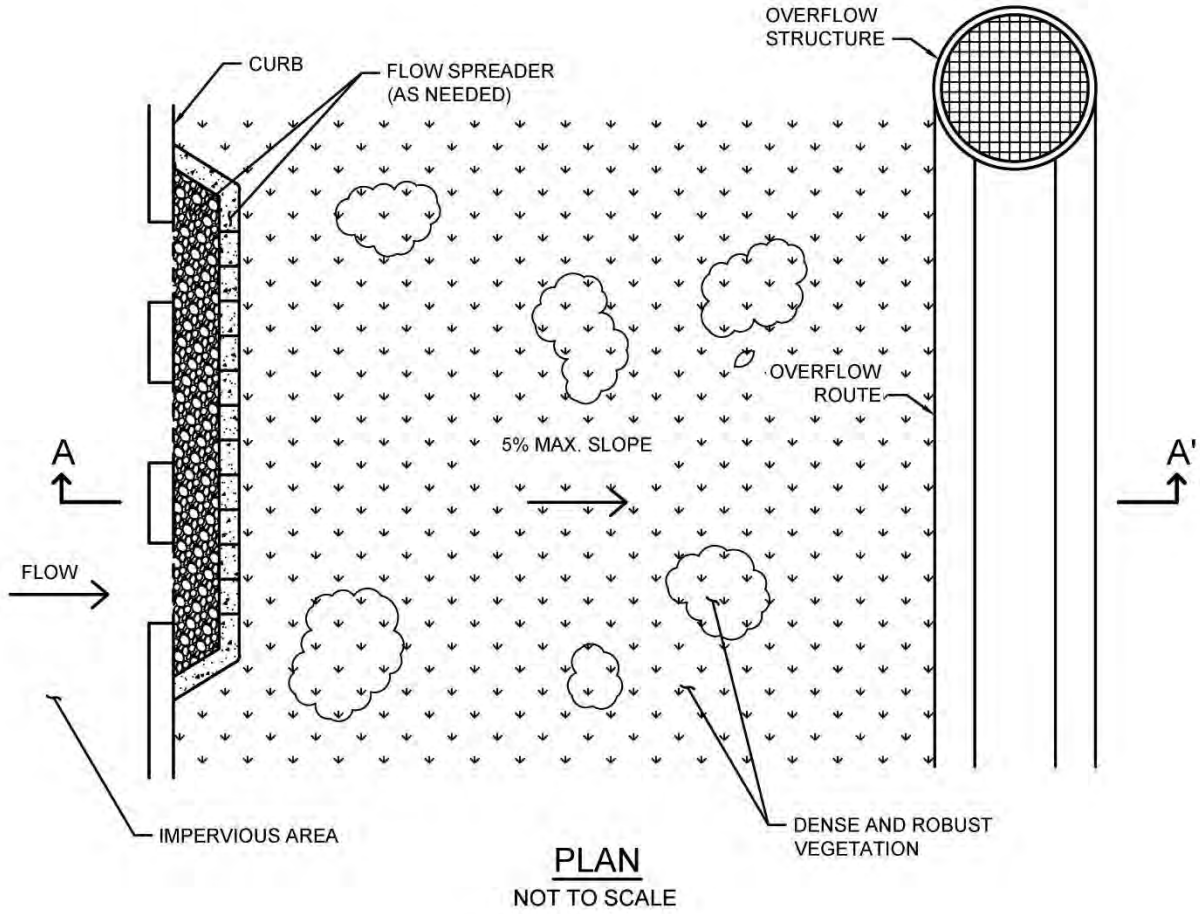
Peak Flow Attenuation

Description

Impervious area dispersion (dispersion) refers to the practice of effectively disconnecting impervious areas from directly draining to the storm drain system by routing runoff from impervious areas such as rooftops (through downspout disconnection), walkways, and driveways onto the surface of adjacent pervious areas. The intent is to slow runoff discharges, and reduce volumes. Dispersion with partial or full infiltration results in significant volume reduction by means of infiltration and evapotranspiration.

Typical dispersion components include:

- An impervious surface from which runoff flows will be routed with minimal piping to limit concentrated inflows
- Splash blocks, flow spreaders, or other means of dispersing concentrated flows and providing energy dissipation as needed
- Dedicated pervious area, typically vegetated, with in-situ soil infiltration capacity for partial or full infiltration
- Optional soil amendments to improve vegetation support, maintain infiltration rates and enhance treatment of routed flows
- Overflow route for excess flows to be conveyed from dispersion area to the storm drain system or discharge point



Typical plan and section view of an Impervious Area Dispersion BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce impervious area and DCV. Impervious area dispersion primarily functions as a site design BMP for reducing the effective imperviousness of a site by providing partial or full infiltration of the flows that are routed to pervious dispersion areas and otherwise slowing down excess flows that eventually reach the storm drain system. This can significantly reduce the DCV for the site.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Dispersion must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Dispersion is over areas with soil types capable of supporting or being amended (e.g., with sand or compost) to support vegetation. Media amendments must be tested to verify that they are not a source of pollutants.	Soil must have long-term infiltration capacity for partial or full infiltration and be able to support vegetation to provide runoff treatment. Amendments to improve plant growth must not have negative impact on water quality.
<input type="checkbox"/> Dispersion has vegetated sheet flow over a relatively large distance (minimum 10 feet) from inflow to overflow route.	Full or partial infiltration requires relatively large areas to be effective depending on the permeability of the underlying soils.
<input type="checkbox"/> Pervious areas should be flat (with less than 5% slopes) and vegetated.	Flat slopes facilitate sheet flows and minimize velocities, thereby improving treatment and reducing the likelihood of erosion.
<i>Inflow velocities</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
<i>Dedication</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Dispersion areas must be owned by the project owner and be dedicated for the purposes of dispersion to the exclusion of other future uses that might reduce the effectiveness of the dispersion area.	Dedicated dispersion areas prevent future conversion to alternate uses and facilitate continued full and partial infiltration benefits.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<i>Vegetation</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Dispersion typically requires dense and robust vegetation for proper function. Drought tolerant species should be selected to minimize irrigation needs. A plant list to aid in selection can be found in Appendix E.20.	Vegetation improves resistance to erosion and aids in runoff treatment.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where dispersion can be used in the site design to reduce the DCV for pollutant control sizing.
2. Calculate the DCV for storm water pollutant control per Appendix B.2, taking into account reduced runoff from dispersion.
3. Determine if a DMA is considered “Self-retaining” if the impervious to pervious ratio is:
 - a. 2:1 when the pervious area is composed of Hydrologic Soil Group A
 - b. 1:1 when the pervious area is composed of Hydrologic Soil Group B

E.4 SD-6A: Green Roofs



MS4 Permit Category

Site Design

Manual Category

Site Design

Applicable Performance Standard

Site Design

Primary Benefits

Volume Reduction

Peak Flow Attenuation

Location: County of San Diego Operations Center, San Diego, California

Description

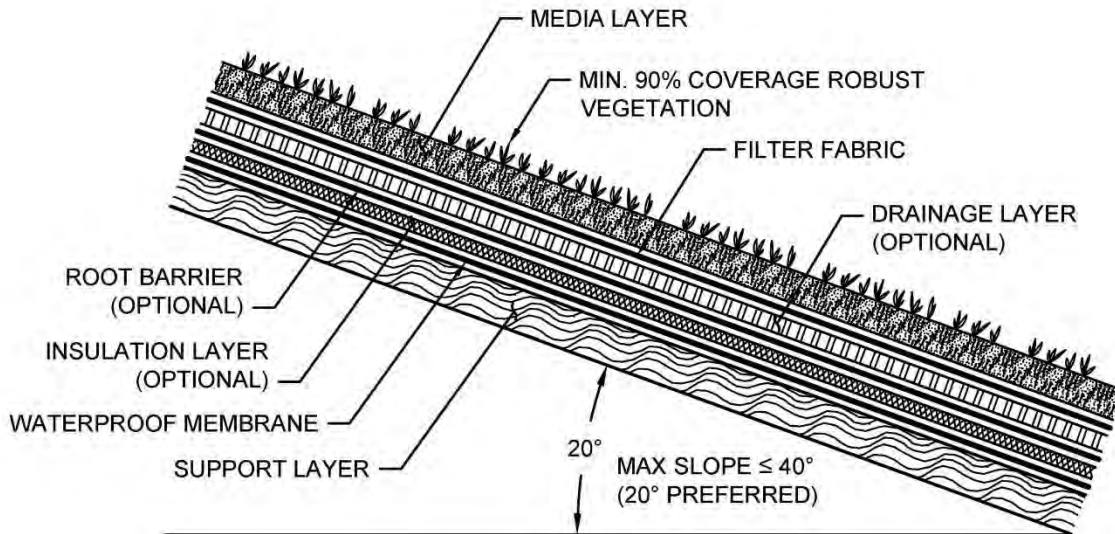
Green roofs are vegetated rooftop systems that reduce runoff volumes and rates, treat storm water pollutants through filtration and plant uptake, provide additional landscape amenity, and create wildlife habitat. Additionally, green roofs reduce the heat island effect and provide acoustical control, air filtration and oxygen production. In terms of building design, they can protect against ultraviolet rays and extend the roof lifetime, as well as increase the building insulation, thereby decreasing heating and cooling costs. There are two primary types of green roofs:

- **Extensive** – lightweight, low maintenance system with low-profile, drought tolerant type groundcover in shallow growing medium (6 inches or less)
- **Intensive** – heavyweight, high maintenance system with a more garden-like configuration and diverse plantings that may include shrubs or trees in a thicker growing medium (greater than 6 inches)

Typical green roof components include, from top to bottom:

- Vegetation that is appropriate to the type of green roof system, climate, and watering conditions
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth

- Filter fabric to prevent migration of fines (soils) into the drainage layer
- Optional drainage layer to convey excess runoff
- Optional root barrier
- Optional insulation layer
- Waterproof membrane
- Structural roof support capable of withstanding the additional weight of a green roof



PROFILE
NOT TO SCALE

Typical profile of a Green Roof BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to provide incidental treatment. Green roofs can be used as a site design feature to reduce the impervious area of the site through replacing conventional roofing. This can reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Green roofs must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Roof slope is $\leq 40\%$ (Roofs that are $\leq 20\%$ are preferred).	Steep roof slopes increases project complexity and requires supplemental anchoring.
<input type="checkbox"/> Structural roof capacity design supports the calculated additional load (lbs/sq. ft) of the vegetation growing medium and additional drainage and barrier layers.	Inadequate structural capacity increases the risk for roof failure and harm to the building and occupants.
<input type="checkbox"/> Design and construction is planned to be completed by an experienced green roof specialist.	A green roof specialist will minimize complications in implementation and potential structural issues that are critical to green roof success.
<input type="checkbox"/> Green roof location and extent must meet fire safety provisions.	Green roof design must not negatively impact fire safety.
<input type="checkbox"/> Maintenance access is included in the green roof design.	Maintenance will facilitate proper functioning of drainage and irrigation components and allow for removal of undesirable vegetation and soil testing, as needed.
<i>Vegetation</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Vegetation is suitable for the green roof type, climate and expected watering conditions. Perennial, self-sowing plants that are drought-tolerant (e.g., sedums, succulents) and require little to no fertilizer, pesticides or herbicides are recommended. Vegetation pre-grown at grade may allow plants to establish prior to facing harsh roof conditions.	Plants suited to the design and expected growing environment are more likely to survive.
<input type="checkbox"/> Vegetation is capable of covering $\geq 90\%$ the roof surface.	Benefits of green roofs are greater with more surface vegetation.
<input type="checkbox"/> Vegetation is robust and erosion-resistant in order to withstand the anticipated rooftop environment (e.g., heat, cold, high winds).	Weak plants will not survive in extreme rooftop environments.
<input type="checkbox"/> Vegetation is fire resistant.	Vegetation that will not burn easily decreases the chance for fire and harm to the building and occupants.
<input type="checkbox"/> Vegetation considers roof sun exposure and shaded areas based on roof slope and	The amount of sunlight the vegetation receives can inhibit growth therefore the beneficial

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
location.	effects of a vegetated roof.
<input type="checkbox"/> An irrigation system (e.g., drip irrigation system) is included as necessary to maintain vegetation.	Proper watering will increase plant survival, especially for new plantings.
<input type="checkbox"/> Media is well-drained and is the appropriate depth required for the green roof type and vegetation supported.	Unnecessary water retention increases structural loading. An adequate media depth increases plant survival.
<input type="checkbox"/> A filter fabric is used to prevent migration of media fines through the system.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the drainage layer.
<input type="checkbox"/> A drainage layer is provided if needed to convey runoff safely from the roof. The drainage layer can be comprised of gravel, perforated sheeting, or other drainage materials.	Inadequate drainage increases structural loading and the risk of harm to the building and occupants.
<input type="checkbox"/> A root barrier comprised of dense material to inhibit root penetration is used if the waterproof membrane will not provide root penetration protection.	Root penetration can decrease the integrity of the underlying structural roof components and increase the risk of harm to the building and occupants.
<input type="checkbox"/> An insulation layer is included as needed to protect against the water in the drainage layer from extracting building heat in the winter and cool air in the summer.	Regulating thermal impacts of green roofs will aid in controlling building heating and cooling costs.
<input type="checkbox"/> A waterproof membrane is used to prevent the roof runoff from vertically migrating and damaging the roofing material. A root barrier may be required to prevent roots from compromising the integrity of the membrane.	Water-damaged roof materials increase the risk of harm to the building and occupants.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where green roofs can be used in the site design to replace conventional roofing to reduce the DCV. These green roof areas can be credited toward reducing runoff generated through representation in storm water calculations as pervious, not impervious, areas but are not credited for storm water pollutant control.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B.2.

E.5 SD-6B Permeable Pavement (Site Design BMP)



Photo Credit: San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual

Description

Permeable pavement is pavement that allows for percolation through void spaces in the pavement surface into subsurface layers. Permeable pavements reduce runoff volumes and rates and can provide pollutant control via infiltration, filtration, sorption, sedimentation, and biodegradation processes. When used as a site design BMP, the subsurface layers are designed to provide storage of storm water runoff so that outflow rates can be controlled via infiltration into subgrade soils. Varying levels of storm water treatment and

flow control can be provided depending on the size of the permeable pavement system relative to its drainage area and the underlying infiltration rates. As a site design BMP permeable pavement areas are designed to be self-retaining and are designed primarily for direct rainfall. Self-retaining permeable pavement areas have a ratio of total drainage area (including permeable pavement) to area of permeable pavement of 1.5:1 or less. Permeable pavement surfaces can be constructed from modular paver units or paver blocks, pervious concrete, porous asphalt, and turf pavers. Sites designed with permeable pavements can significantly reduce the impervious area of the project. Reduction in impervious surfaces decreases the DCV and can reduce the footprint of treatment control and flow control BMPs.

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce impervious area and DCV. Permeable pavement without an underdrain can be used as a site design feature to reduce the impervious area of the site by replacing traditional pavements, including roadways, parking lots, emergency access lanes, sidewalks, trails and driveways.

Typical Permeable Pavement Components (Top to Bottom)
Permeable surface layer
Bedding layer for permeable surface
Aggregate storage layer with optional underdrain(s)
Optional final filter course layer over uncompacted existing subgrade

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where permeable pavements can be used in the site design to replace conventional pavements to reduce the DCV. These areas can be credited toward reducing runoff generated through representation in storm water calculations as pervious, not impervious, areas but are not credited for storm water pollutant control.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B.2, taking into account reduced runoff from permeable pavement areas.

E.6 SD-8 Rain Barrels



Photo Credit: San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual

Description

Rain barrels are containers that can capture rooftop runoff and store it for future use. With controlled timing and volume release, the captured rainwater can be used for irrigation or alternative grey water between storm events, thereby reducing runoff volumes and associated pollutants to downstream waterbodies. Rain barrels tend to be smaller systems, less than 100 gallons. Treatment can be achieved when rain barrels are used as part of a treatment train along with other BMPs that use captured flows in applications that do not result in discharges into the storm drain system. Rooftops are the ideal tributary areas for rain barrels.

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce effective impervious area and DCV. Barrels can be used as a site design feature to reduce the effective impervious area of the site by removing roof runoff from the site discharge. This can reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

Important Considerations

Maintenance: Rain barrels require regular monitoring and cleaning to ensure that they do not become clogged with leaves or other debris.

Economics: Rain barrels have low installation costs.

Limitations: Due to San Diego’s arid climate, some rain barrels may fill only a few times each year.

Typical Rain Barrel Components

Storage container, barrel or tank for holding captured flows
Inlet and associated valves and piping
Outlet and associated valves and piping
Overflow outlet
Optional pump
Optional first flush diverters
Optional roof, supports, foundation, level indicator, and other accessories

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where rain barrels can be used in the site design to capture roof runoff to reduce the DCV. Rain barrels reduce the effective impervious area of the site by removing roof runoff from the site discharge.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B.2, taking into account reduced runoff from permeable pavement areas.

E.7 HU-1 Cistern



MS4 Permit Category

Retention

Manual Category

Harvest and Use

Applicable Performance Standards

Pollutant Control
Flow Control

Primary Benefits

Volume Reduction
Peak Flow Attenuation

Photo Credit: Water Environment Research Foundation: WERF.org

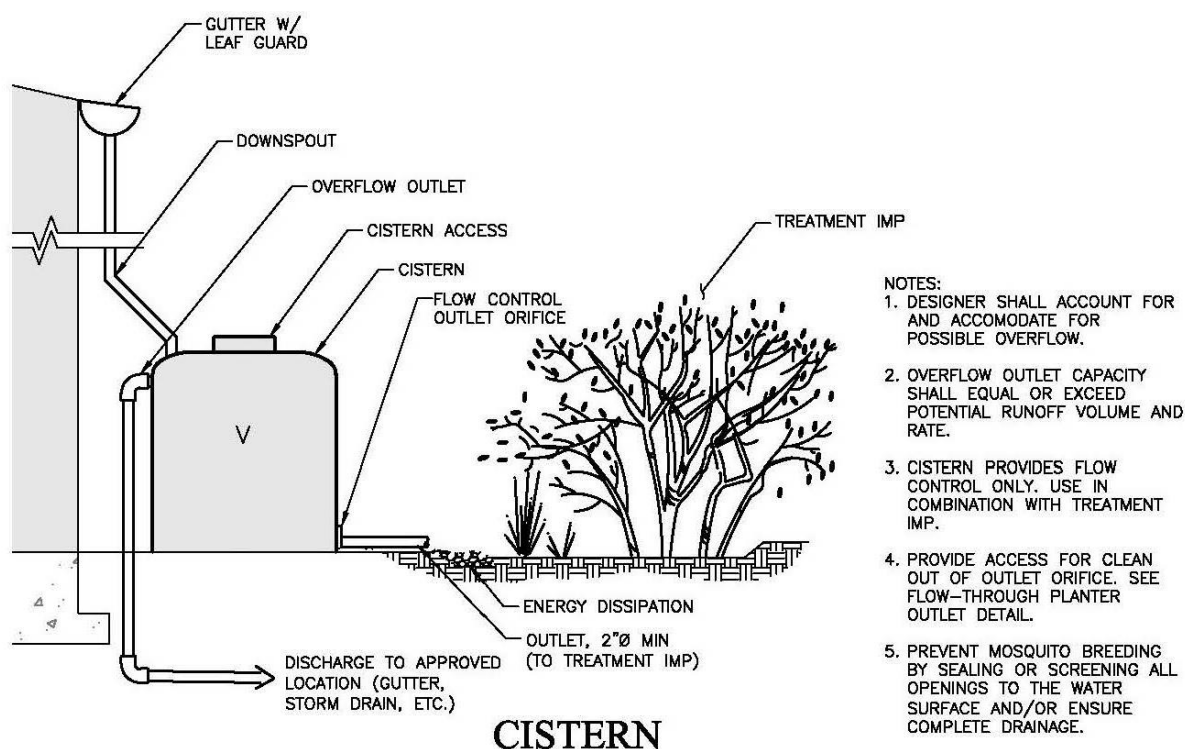
Description

Cisterns are containers that can capture rooftop runoff and store it for future use. With controlled timing and volume release, the captured rainwater can be used for irrigation or alternative grey water between storm events, thereby reducing runoff volumes and associated pollutants to downstream water bodies. Cisterns are larger systems (generally >100 gallons) that can be self-contained aboveground or below ground systems. Treatment can be achieved when cisterns are used as part of a treatment train along with other BMPs that use captured flows in applications that do not result in discharges into the storm drain system. Rooftops are the ideal tributary areas for cisterns.

Typical cistern components include:

- Storage container, barrel or tank for holding captured flows
- Inlet and associated valves and piping
- Outlet and associated valves and piping
- Overflow outlet
- Optional pump

- Optional first flush diverters
- Optional roof, supports, foundation, level indicator, and other accessories



Source: City of San Diego Storm Water Standards

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce effective impervious area and DCV. Cisterns can be used as a site design feature to reduce the effective impervious area of the site by removing roof runoff from the site discharge. This can reduce the DCV and flow control requirements for the site.

Harvest and use for storm water pollutant control. Typical uses for captured flows include irrigation, toilet flushing, cooling system makeup, and vehicle and equipment washing.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Cisterns provide flow control in the form of volume reduction and/or peak flow attenuation and storm water treatment through elimination of discharges of pollutants. Additional flow control can be achieved by sizing the cistern to include additional detention storage and/or real-time automated flow release controls.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Cisterns must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Cisterns are sized to detain the full DCV of contributing area and empty within 36 hours.	Draining the cistern makes the storage volume available to capture the next storm. The applicant has an option to use a different drawdown time up to 96 hours if the volume of the facility is adjusted using the percent capture method in Appendix B.4.2.
<input type="checkbox"/> Cisterns are fitted with a flow control device such as an orifice or a valve to limit outflow in accordance with drawdown time requirements.	Flow control provides flow attenuation benefits and limits cistern discharge to downstream facilities during storm events.
<input type="checkbox"/> Cisterns are designed to drain completely, leaving no standing water, and all entry points are fitted with traps or screens, or sealed.	Complete drainage and restricted entry prevents mosquito habitat.
<input type="checkbox"/> Leaf guards and/or screens are provided to prevent debris from accumulating in the cistern.	Leaves and organic debris can clog the outlet of the cistern.
<input type="checkbox"/> Access is provided for maintenance and the cistern outlets are accessible and designed to allow easy cleaning.	Properly functioning outlets are needed to maintain proper flow control in accordance with drawdown time requirements.
<input type="checkbox"/> Cisterns must be designed and sited such that overflow will be conveyed safely overland to the storm drain system or discharge point.	Safe overflow conveyance prevents flooding and damage of property.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design and Storm Water Pollutant Control

1. Calculate the DCV for site design per Appendix B.
2. Determine the locations on the site where cisterns can be located to capture and detain the DCV from roof areas without subsequent discharge to the storm drain system. Cisterns are best located in close proximity to building and other roofed structures to minimize piping. Cisterns can also be used as part of a treatment train upstream by increasing pollutant control through delayed runoff to infiltration BMPs such as bioretention without underdrain facilities.

3. Use the sizing worksheet in Appendix B.3 to determine if full or partial capture of the DCV is achievable.
4. The remaining DCV to be treated should be calculated for use in sizing downstream BMP(s).

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or duration will typically require significant cistern volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of site design and storm water pollutant control. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that cistern siting and design criteria have been met. Design for flow control can be achieved using various design configurations, shapes, and quantities of cisterns.
2. Iteratively determine the cistern storage volume required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control valve operation.
3. Verify that the cistern is drawdown within 36 hours. The drawdown time can be estimated by dividing the storage volume by the rate of use of harvested water.
4. If the cistern cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, a downstream structure with additional storage volume or infiltration capacity such as a biofiltration can be used to provide remaining flow control.

E.8 INF-1 Infiltration Basin



MS4 Permit Category
Retention
Manual Category
Infiltration
Applicable Performance Standard
Pollutant Control
Flow Control
Primary Benefits
Volume Reduction
Peak Flow Attenuation

Photo Credit: <http://www.stormwaterpartners.com/facilities/basin.html>

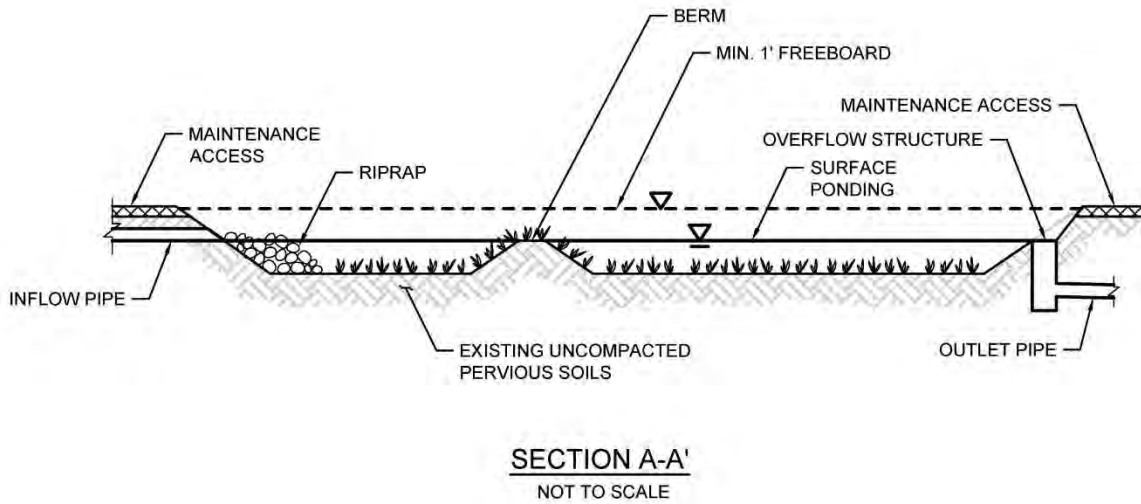
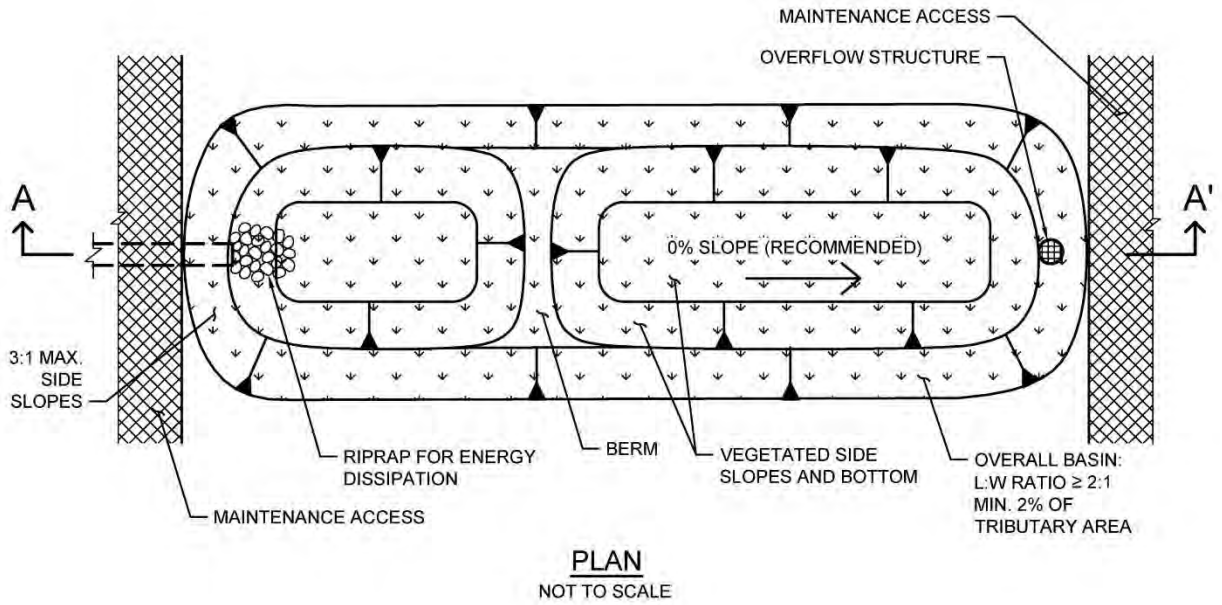
Description

An infiltration basin typically consists of an earthen basin with a flat bottom constructed in naturally pervious soils. An infiltration basin retains storm water and allows it to evaporate and/or percolate into the underlying soils. The bottom of an infiltration basin is typically vegetated with native grasses or turf grass; however other types of vegetation can be used if they can survive periodic inundation and long inter-event dry periods. Treatment is achieved primarily through infiltration, filtration, sedimentation, biochemical processes and plant uptake. Infiltration basins can be constructed as linear **trenches** or as **underground infiltration galleries**.

Typical infiltration basin components include:

- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g., perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Forebay to provide pretreatment surface ponding for captured flows
- Vegetation selected based on basin use, climate, and ponding depth
-

- Uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure



Typical plan and section view of an Infiltration BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Full infiltration BMP for storm water pollutant control. Infiltration basins can be used as a pollutant control BMP, designed to infiltrate runoff from direct rainfall as well as runoff from adjacent areas that are tributary to the BMP. Infiltration basins must be designed with an infiltration storage volume (a function of the surface ponding volume) equal to the full DCV and able to meet drawdown time limitations.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Infiltration basins can also be designed for flow rate and duration control by providing additional infiltration storage through increasing the surface ponding volume.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Infiltration basins must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
<input type="checkbox"/> Selection and design of basin is based on infiltration feasibility criteria and appropriate design infiltration rate (See Appendix C and D).	Must operate as a full infiltration design and must be supported by drainage area and in-situ infiltration rate feasibility findings.
<input type="checkbox"/> Finish grade of the facility is $\leq 2\%$ (0% recommended).	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization with the facility.
<input type="checkbox"/> Settling forebay has a volume $\geq 25\%$ of facility volume below the forebay overflow.	A forebay to trap sediment can decrease frequency of required maintenance.
<input type="checkbox"/> Infiltration of surface ponding is limited to a 36-hour drawdown time.	<p>Prolonged surface ponding reduce volume available to capture subsequent storms.</p> <p>The applicant has an option to use a different drawdown time up to 96 hours if the volume of the facility is adjusted using the percent capture method in Appendix B.4.2.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum freeboard provided is ≥ 1 foot.	Freeboard minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Side slopes are = 3H:1V or shallower.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
<i>Inflow and Overflow Structures</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Inflow and outflow structures are accessible by required equipment (e.g., vector truck) for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
<input type="checkbox"/> Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
<input type="checkbox"/> Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow for on-line basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control

To design infiltration basins for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement and basin area requirements, forebay volume, and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet (Appendix B.4) to determine if full infiltration of the DCV is achievable based on the infiltration storage volume calculated from the surface ponding area and depth for a maximum 36-hour drawdown time. The drawdown time can be estimated by dividing the average depth of the basin by the design infiltration rate. Appendix D provides guidance on evaluating a site's infiltration rate.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Treatment and Flow Control

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding volume, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement and basin area requirements, forebay volume, and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Iteratively determine the surface ponding required to provide infiltration storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits while adhering to the maximum 36-hour drawdown time. Flow rates and durations can be controlled using flow splitters that route the appropriate inflow amounts to the infiltration basin and bypass excess flows to the downstream storm drain system or discharge point.
3. If an infiltration basin cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide additional control.
4. After the infiltration basin has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.9 INF-2 Bioretention



MS4 Permit Category

Retention

Manual Category

Infiltration

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control

Flow Control

Hydromodification Management Potential

Volume Reduction

Treatment

Peak Flow Attenuation

Photo Credit: Ventura County Technical Guidance Document

Description

Bioretention (bioretention without underdrain) facilities are vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation and soil, or engineered media prior to infiltrating into native soils. These facilities are designed to infiltrate the full DCV. Bioretention facilities are commonly incorporated into the site within parking lot landscaping, along roadsides, and in open spaces. They can be constructed inground or partially aboveground, such as planter boxes with open bottoms (no impermeable liner at the bottom) to allow infiltration. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, infiltration, biochemical processes and plant uptake.

Typical bioretention without underdrain components include:

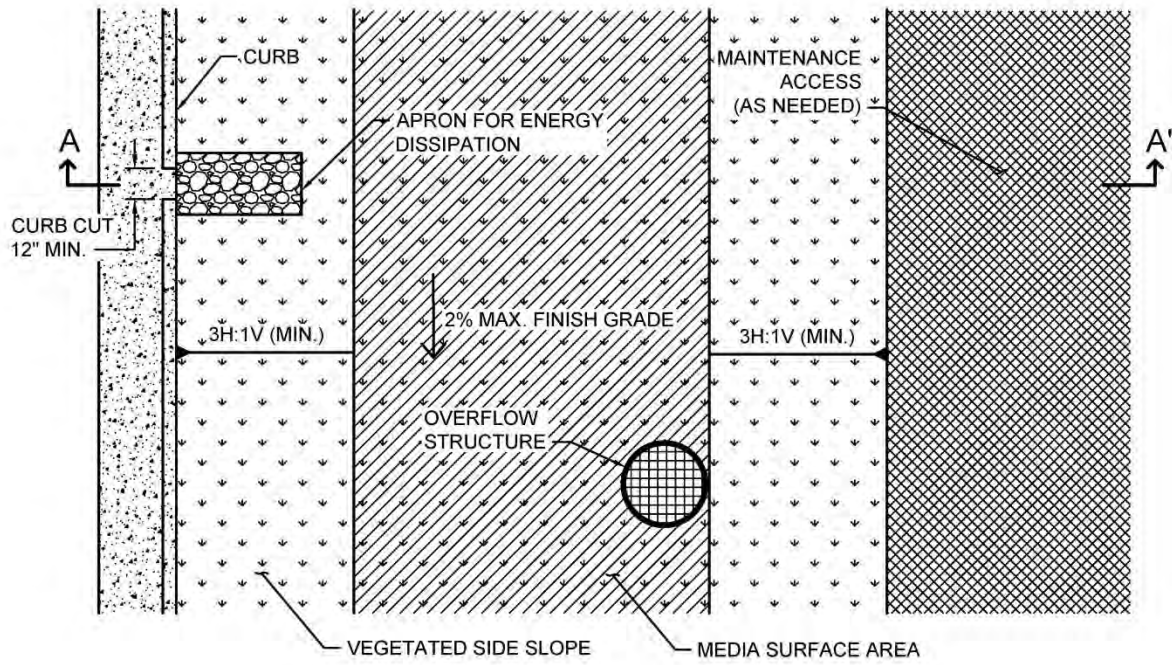
- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g, perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Shallow surface ponding for captured flows
- Side slope and basin bottom vegetation selected based on expected climate and ponding depth
- Non-floating mulch layer (optional)

Appendix E: BMP Design Fact Sheets

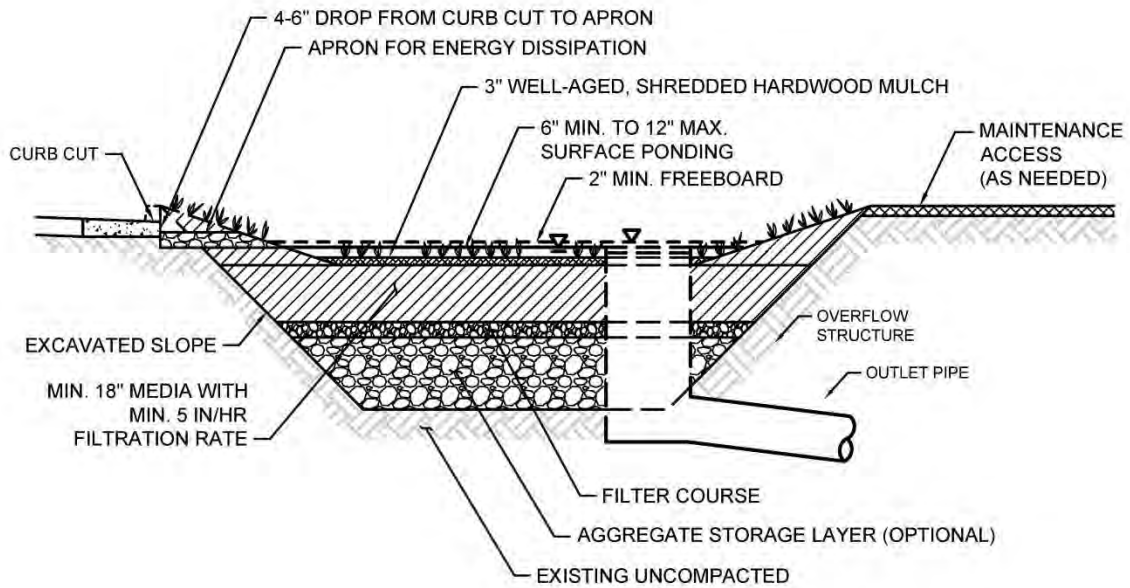
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth
- Filter course layer consisting of aggregate to prevent the migration of fines into uncompacted native soils or the optional aggregate storage layer
- Optional aggregate storage layer for additional infiltration storage
- Uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

- **Full infiltration BMP for storm water pollutant control.** Bioretention can be used as a pollutant control BMP designed to infiltrate runoff from direct rainfall as well as runoff from adjacent tributary areas. Bioretention facilities must be designed with an infiltration storage volume (a function of the ponding, media and aggregate storage volumes) equal to the full DCV and able to meet drawdown time limitations.
- **Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration.** Bioretention facilities can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control. This may be accomplished by providing greater infiltration storage with increased surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volume for storm water flow control.



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and section view of a Bioretention BMP

Design Criteria and Considerations

Bioretention must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
<input type="checkbox"/> Selection and design of BMP is based on infiltration feasibility criteria and appropriate design infiltration rate presented in Appendix C and D.	Must operate as a full infiltration design and must be supported by drainage area and in-situ infiltration rate feasibility findings.
<input type="checkbox"/> Contributing tributary area is ≤ 5 acres (≤ 1 acre preferred).	Bigger BMPs require additional design features for proper performance. Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in the BMP and 2) incorporate additional design features requested by the City Engineer for proper performance of the regional BMP.
<input type="checkbox"/> Finish grade of the facility is $\leq 2\%$. In long bioretention facilities where the potential for internal erosion and channelization exists, the use of check dams is required.	Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility. Internal check dams reduce velocity and dissipate energy.
Surface Ponding	
<input type="checkbox"/> Surface ponding is limited to a 24-hour drawdown time.	24-hour drawdown time is recommended for plant health.
<input type="checkbox"/> Surface ponding depth is ≥ 6 and ≤ 12 inches.	Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns. Surface ponding depth greater than 12 inches (for additional pollutant control or

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
	<p>surface outlet structures or flow-control orifices) may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) surface ponding depth drawdown time is less than 24 hours; and 2) safety issues and fencing requirements are considered (typically ponding greater than 18” will require a fence and/or flatter side slopes) and 3) potential for elevated clogging risk is considered.</p>
<p><input type="checkbox"/> A minimum of 2 inches of freeboard is provided.</p>	<p>Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.</p>
<p><input type="checkbox"/> Side slopes are stabilized with vegetation and are $\geq 3H: 1V$.</p>	<p>Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.</p>
<i>Vegetation</i>	
<p><input type="checkbox"/> Plantings are suitable for the climate and expected ponding depth. A plant list to aid in selection can be found in Appendix E.20.</p>	<p>Plants suited to the climate and ponding depth are more likely to survive.</p>
<p><input type="checkbox"/> An irrigation system with a connection to water supply is provided as needed.</p>	<p>Seasonal irrigation might be needed to keep plants healthy.</p>
<i>Mulch (Optional or Mandatory – Dependent on jurisdiction)</i>	
<p><input type="checkbox"/> A minimum of 3 inches of well-aged, shredded hardwood mulch that has been stockpiled or stored for at least 12 months is provided. Mulch must be non-floating to avoid clogging of overflow structure.</p>	<p>Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth. Aging mulch kills pathogens and weed seeds and allows beneficial microbes to multiply.</p>
<i>Media Layer</i>	
<p><input type="checkbox"/> Media maintains a minimum filtration rate of 5 in/hr over lifetime of facility. A minimum initial filtration rate of 10 in/hr is recommended.</p>	<p>A high filtration rate through the soil mix minimizes clogging potential and allows flows to quickly enter the aggregate storage layer, thereby minimizing bypass.</p>
<p><input type="checkbox"/> Media is a minimum 18 inches deep, meeting either of these two media specifications:</p>	<p>A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper</p>

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<p>City of San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual (page B-18) (July 2011, unless superseded by more recent edition) or County of San Diego Low Impact Development Handbook: Appendix G -Bioretention Soil Specification (June 2014, unless superseded by more recent edition).</p>	<p>roots.</p> <p>Standard specifications shall be followed.</p>
<p><input type="checkbox"/> Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications contained in the City or County LID Manual, the media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1.</p>	<p>For non-standard or proprietary designs, compliance with F.1 ensures that adequate treatment performance will be provided.</p>
<p><input type="checkbox"/> Media surface area is 3% of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor or greater.</p>	<p>Greater surface area to tributary area ratios decrease loading rates per square foot and therefore increase longevity.</p> <p>Adjusted runoff factor is to account for site design BMPs implemented upstream of the BMP (such as rain barrels, impervious area dispersion, etc.). Refer to Appendix B.2 guidance.</p> <p>Use Worksheet B.5-1 Line 26 to estimate the minimum surface area required per this criteria.</p>
<i>Filter Course Layer (Optional)</i>	
<p><input type="checkbox"/> A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.</p>	<p>Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.</p>
<p><input type="checkbox"/> Filter course is washed and free of fines.</p>	<p>Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility and impede infiltration.</p>
<p><input type="checkbox"/> Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.</p>	<p>Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.</p>

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<i>Aggregate Storage Layer (Optional)</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Class 2 Permeable per Caltrans specification 68-1.025 is recommended for the storage layer. Washed, open-graded crushed rock may be used, however a 4-6 inch washed pea gravel filter course layer at the top of the crushed rock is required.	<p>Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Maximum aggregate storage layer depth is determined based on the infiltration storage volume that will infiltrate within a 36-hour drawdown time.	<p>A maximum drawdown time to facilitate provision of adequate storm water storage for the next storm event.</p>
<i>Inflow and Overflow Structures</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Inflow and overflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance. Overflow structures must be connected to downstream storm drain system or appropriate discharge point.	<p>Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	<p>High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Curb cut inlets are at least 12 inches wide, have a 4-6 inch reveal (drop) and an apron and energy dissipation as needed.	<p>Inlets must not restrict flow and apron prevents blockage from vegetation as it grows in. Energy dissipation prevents erosion.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow for on-line basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	<p>Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.</p>

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design bioretention for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement and basin area requirements, maximum side and finish grade slope, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.

Appendix E: BMP Design Fact Sheets

2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine if full infiltration of the DCV is achievable based on the available infiltration storage volume calculated from the bioretention without underdrain footprint area, effective depths for surface ponding, media and aggregate storage layers, and in-situ soil design infiltration rate for a maximum 36-hour drawdown time for the aggregate storage layer, with surface ponding no greater than a maximum 24-hour drawdown. The drawdown time can be estimated by dividing the average depth of the basin by the design infiltration rate of the underlying soil. Appendix D provides guidance on evaluating a site's infiltration rate. A generic sizing worksheet is provided in Appendix B.4.
4. Where the DCV cannot be fully infiltrated based on the site or bioretention constraints, an underdrain can be added to the design (use biofiltration with partial retention factsheet).

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations shall be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary area ratio. Design for flow control can be achieved using various design configurations.
2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide infiltration storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits while adhering to the maximum drawdown times for surface ponding and aggregate storage. Flow rates and durations can be controlled using flow splitters that route the appropriate inflow amounts to the bioretention facility and bypass excess flows to the downstream storm drain system or discharge point.
3. If bioretention without underdrain facility cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by the MS4 permit, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide additional control.
4. After bioretention without underdrain BMPs have been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.10 INF-3 Permeable Pavement (Pollutant Control)



MS4 Permit Category

Retention
Flow-thru Treatment
Control

Manual Category

Infiltration
Flow-thru Treatment
Control

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control
Flow Control

Primary Benefits

Volume Reduction
Peak Flow Attenuation

Location: Kellogg Park, San Diego, California

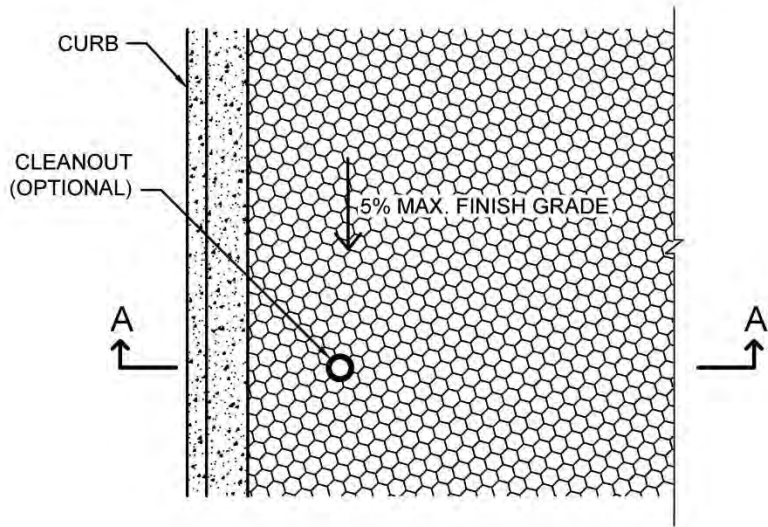
Description

Permeable pavement is pavement that allows for percolation through void spaces in the pavement surface into subsurface layers. The subsurface layers are designed to provide storage of storm water runoff so that outflows, primarily via infiltration into subgrade soils or release to the downstream conveyance system, can be at controlled rates. Varying levels of storm water treatment and flow control can be provided depending on the size of the permeable pavement system relative to its drainage area, the underlying infiltration rates, and the configuration of outflow controls. Pollutant control permeable pavement is designed to receive runoff from a larger tributary area than site design permeable pavement (see SD-6B). Pollutant control is provided via infiltration, filtration, sorption, sedimentation, and biodegradation processes.

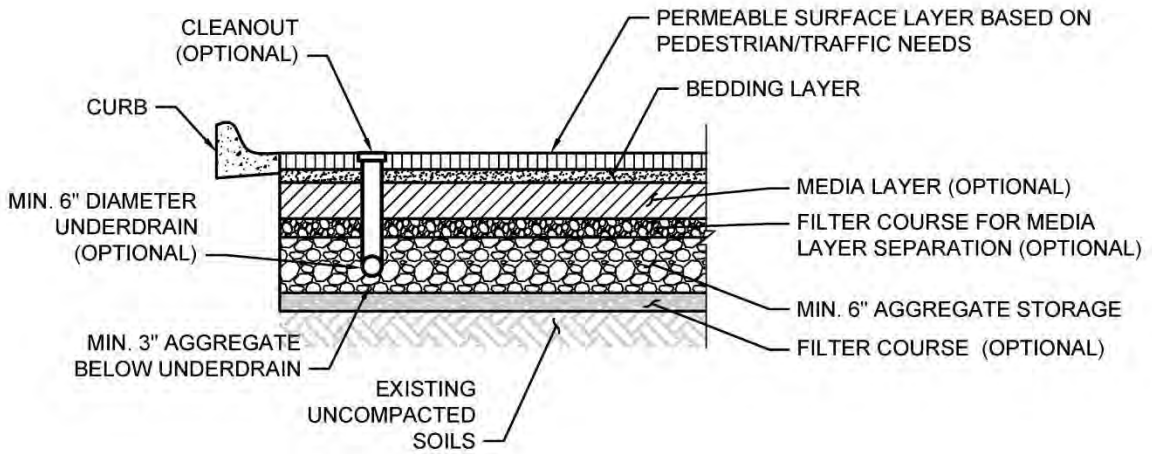
Typical permeable pavement components include, from top to bottom:

- Permeable surface layer
- Bedding layer for permeable surface
- Aggregate storage layer with optional underdrain(s)

- Optional final filter course layer over uncompacted existing subgrade



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and Section view of a Permeable Pavement BMP

Subcategories of permeable pavement include modular paver units or paver blocks, pervious concrete, porous asphalt, and turf pavers. These subcategory variations differ in the material used for the permeable surface layer but have similar functions and characteristics below this layer.

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce impervious area and DCV. See site design option SD-6B.

Full infiltration BMP for storm water pollutant control. Permeable pavement without an underdrain and without impermeable liners can be used as a pollutant control BMP, designed to infiltrate runoff from direct rainfall as well as runoff from adjacent areas that are tributary to the pavement. The system must be designed with an infiltration storage volume (a function of the aggregate storage volume) equal to the full DCV and able to meet drawdown time limitations.

Partial infiltration BMP with flow-thru treatment for storm water pollutant control. Permeable pavement can be designed so that a portion of the DCV is infiltrated by providing an underdrain with infiltration storage below the underdrain invert. The infiltration storage depth should be determined by the volume that can be reliably infiltrated within drawdown time limitations. Water discharged through the underdrain is considered flow-thru treatment and is not considered biofiltration treatment. Storage provided above the underdrain invert is included in the flow-thru treatment volume.

Flow-thru treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. The system may be lined and/or installed over impermeable native soils with an underdrain provided at the bottom to carry away filtered runoff. Water quality treatment is provided via unit treatment processes other than infiltration. This configuration is considered to provide flow-thru treatment, not biofiltration treatment. Significant aggregate storage provided above the underdrain invert can provide detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an orifice in an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain. **PDPs have the option to add saturated storage to the flow-thru configuration in order to reduce the DCV that the BMP is required to treat.** Saturated storage can be added to this design by including an upturned elbow installed at the downstream end of the underdrain or via an internal weir structure designed to maintain a specific water level elevation. The DCV can be reduced by the amount of saturated storage provided.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. With any of the above configurations, the system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control. This may include having a deeper aggregate storage layer that allows for significant detention storage above the underdrain, which can be further controlled via inclusion of an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Permeable pavements must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
<input type="checkbox"/> Selection must be based on infiltration feasibility criteria.	Full or partial infiltration designs must be supported by drainage area feasibility findings.
<input type="checkbox"/> An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
<input type="checkbox"/> Permeable pavement is not placed in an area with significant overhanging trees or other vegetation.	Leaves and organic debris can clog the pavement surface.
<input type="checkbox"/> For pollutant control permeable pavement, the ratio of the total drainage area (including the permeable pavement) to the permeable pavement should not exceed 4:1.	Higher ratios increase the potential for clogging but may be acceptable for relatively clean tributary areas.
<input type="checkbox"/> Finish grade of the permeable pavement has a slope $\leq 5\%$.	Flatter surfaces facilitate increased runoff capture.
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum depth to groundwater and bedrock ≥ 10 ft.	A minimum separation facilitates infiltration and lessens the risk of negative groundwater impacts.
<input type="checkbox"/> Contributing tributary area includes effective sediment source control and/or pretreatment measures such as raised curbed or grass filter strips.	Sediment can clog the pavement surface.
<input type="checkbox"/> Direct discharges to permeable pavement are only from downspouts carrying “clean” roof	Roof runoff typically carries less sediment than runoff from other impervious

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
runoff that are equipped with filters to remove gross solids.	surfaces and is less likely to clog the pavement surface.
<i>Permeable Surface Layer</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Permeable surface layer type is appropriately chosen based on pavement use and expected vehicular loading.	Pavement may wear more quickly if not durable for expected loads or frequencies.
<input type="checkbox"/> Permeable surface layer type is appropriate for expected pedestrian traffic.	Expected demographic and accessibility needs (e.g., adults, children, seniors, runners, high-heeled shoes, wheelchairs, strollers, bikes) requires selection of appropriate surface layer type that will not impede pedestrian needs.
<i>Bedding Layer for Permeable Surface</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Bedding thickness and material is appropriate for the chosen permeable surface layer type.	<p>Porous asphalt requires a 2- to 4-inch layer of asphalt and a 1- to 2-inch layer of choker course (single-sized crushed aggregate, one-half inch) to stabilize the surface.</p> <p>Pervious concrete also requires an aggregate course of clean gravel or crushed stone with a minimum amount of fines.</p> <p>Permeable Interlocking Concrete Paver requires 1 or 2 inches of sand or No. 8 aggregate to allow for leveling of the paver blocks.</p> <p>Similar to Permeable Interlocking Concrete Paver, plastic grid systems also require a 1- to 2-inch bedding course of either gravel or sand.</p> <p>For Permeable Interlocking Concrete Paver and plastic grid systems, if sand is used, a geotextile should be used between the sand course and the reservoir media to prevent the sand from migrating into the stone media.</p>

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Aggregate used for bedding layer is washed prior to placement.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the permeable pavement system aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.
<i>Media Layer (Optional) –used between bedding layer and aggregate storage layer to provide pollutant treatment control</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> The pollutant removal performance of the media layer is documented by the applicant.	Media used for BMP design should be shown via research or testing to be appropriate for expected pollutants of concern and flow rates.
<input type="checkbox"/> A filter course is provided to separate the media layer from the aggregate storage layer.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.
<input type="checkbox"/> If a filter course is used, calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
<input type="checkbox"/> Consult permeable pavement manufacturer to verify that media layer provides required structural support.	Media must not compromise the structural integrity or intended uses of the permeable pavement surface.
<i>Aggregate Storage Layer</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Aggregate used for the aggregate storage layer is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum layer depth is 6 inches and for infiltration designs, the maximum depth is determined based on the infiltration storage volume that will infiltrate within a 36-hour drawdown time.	A minimum depth of aggregate provides structural stability for expected pavement loads.
<i>Underdrain and Outflow Structures</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Underdrains and outflow structures, if used, are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will improve the performance and extend the life of the permeable pavement system.

<i>Siting and Design</i>		<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
<i>Filter Course (Optional)</i>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog subgrade and impede infiltration.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where permeable pavement can be used in the site design to replace traditional pavement to reduce the impervious area and DCV. These permeable pavement areas can be credited toward reducing runoff generated through representation in storm water calculations as pervious, not impervious, areas but are not credited for storm water pollutant control. These permeable pavement areas should be designed as self-retaining with the appropriate tributary area ratio identified in the design criteria.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B, taking into account reduced runoff from self-retaining permeable pavement areas.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design permeable pavement for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, maximum finish grade slope, and the recommended tributary area ratio for non-self-retaining permeable pavement. If infiltration is infeasible, the permeable pavement can be designed as flow-thru treatment per the sizing worksheet. If infiltration is feasible, calculations should follow the remaining design steps.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.

Appendix E: BMP Design Fact Sheets

3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine if full or partial infiltration of the DCV is achievable based on the available infiltration storage volume calculated from the permeable pavement footprint, aggregate storage layer depth, and in-situ soil design infiltration rate for a maximum 36-hour drawdown time. The applicant has an option to use a different drawdown time up to 96 hours if the volume of the facility is adjusted using the percent capture method in Appendix B.4.2.
4. Where the DCV cannot be fully infiltrated based on the site or permeable pavement constraints, an underdrain must be incorporated above the infiltration storage to carry away runoff that exceeds the infiltration storage capacity.
5. The remaining DCV to be treated should be calculated for use in sizing downstream BMP(s).

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant aggregate storage volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, maximum finish grade slope, and the recommended tributary area ratio for non-self-retaining permeable pavement. Design for flow control can be achieved using various design configurations, but a flow-thru treatment design will typically require a greater aggregate storage layer volume than designs which allow for full or partial infiltration of the DCV.
2. Iteratively determine the area and aggregate storage layer depth required to provide infiltration and/or detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If the permeable pavement system cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, a downstream structure with sufficient storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After permeable pavement has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.11 PR-1 Biofiltration with Partial Retention



Location: 805 and Bonita Road, Chula Vista, CA.

MS4 Permit Category

NA

Manual Category

Partial Retention

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control

Flow Control

Primary Benefits

Volume Reduction

Treatment

Peak Flow Attenuation

Description

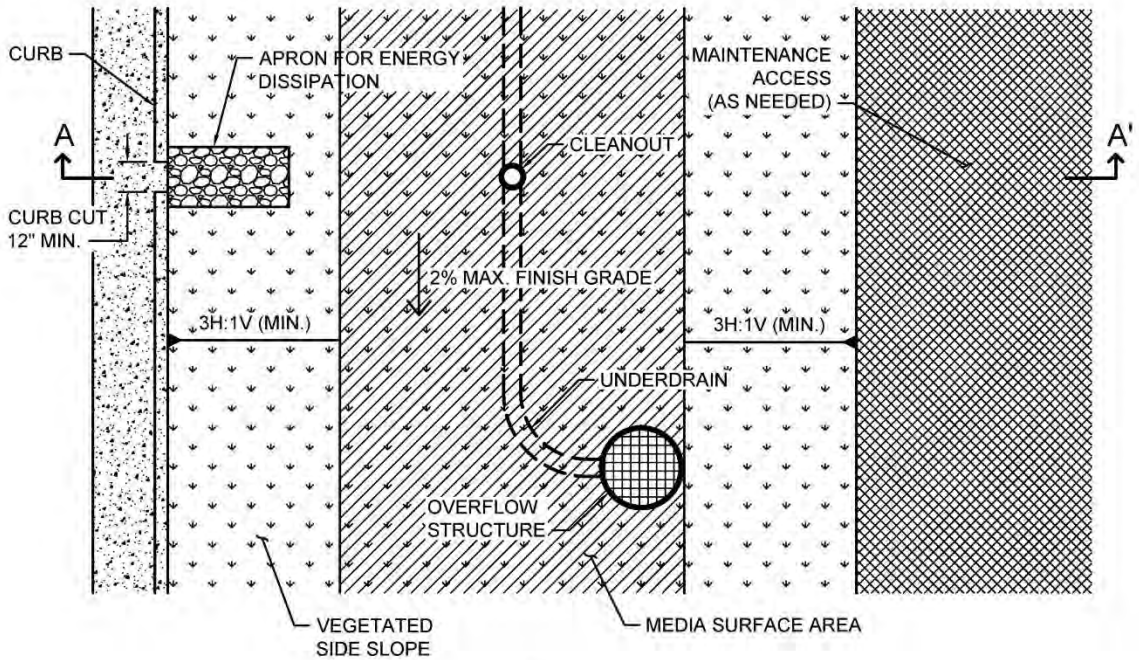
Biofiltration with partial retention (partial infiltration and biofiltration) facilities are vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation, and soil or engineered media prior to infiltrating into native soils, discharge via underdrain, or overflow to the downstream conveyance system. Where feasible, these BMPs have an elevated underdrain discharge point that creates storage capacity in the aggregate storage layer. Biofiltration with partial retention facilities are commonly incorporated into the site within parking lot landscaping, along roadsides, and in open spaces. They can be constructed in ground or partially aboveground, such as planter boxes with open bottoms to allow infiltration. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, infiltration, biochemical processes and plant uptake.

Typical biofiltration with partial retention components include:

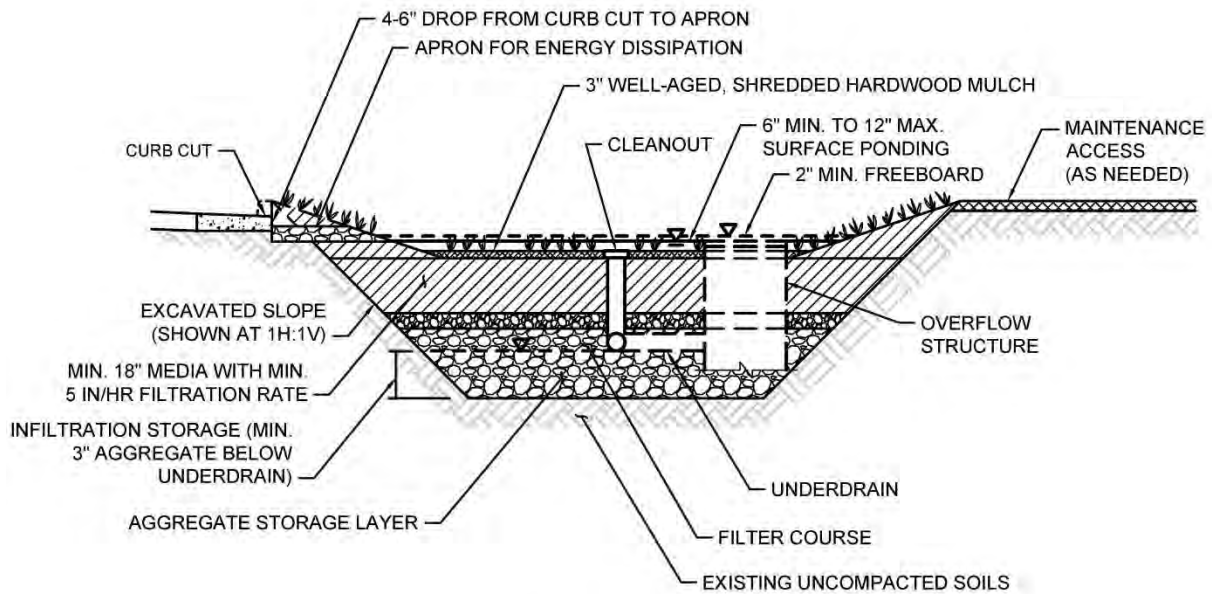
- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g, perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Shallow surface ponding for captured flows
- Side Slope and basin bottom vegetation selected based on climate and ponding depth
- Non-floating mulch layer (Optional)
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth
- Filter course layer consisting of aggregate to prevent the migration of fines into uncompacted native soils or the optional aggregate storage layer
- Aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)

Appendix E: BMP Design Fact Sheets

- Uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and Section view of a Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Partial infiltration BMP with biofiltration treatment for storm water pollutant control. Biofiltration with partial retention can be designed so that a portion of the DCV is infiltrated by providing infiltration storage below the underdrain invert. The infiltration storage depth should be determined by the volume that can be reliably infiltrated within drawdown time limitations. Water discharged through the underdrain is considered biofiltration treatment. Storage provided above the underdrain within surface ponding, media, and aggregate storage is included in the biofiltration treatment volume.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. The system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control by primarily providing increased surface ponding and/or having a deeper aggregate storage layer. This will allow for significant detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an orifice in an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Biofiltration with partial retention must meet the following design criteria and considerations. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
<input type="checkbox"/> Selection and design of basin is based on infiltration feasibility criteria and appropriate design infiltration rate (See Appendix C and D).	Must operate as a partial infiltration design and must be supported by drainage area and in-situ infiltration rate feasibility findings.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Contributing tributary area shall be ≤ 5 acres (≤ 1 acre preferred).	<p>Bigger BMPs require additional design features for proper performance.</p> <p>Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in the BMP and 2) incorporate additional design features as requested by the City Engineer for proper performance of the regional BMP.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Finish grade of the facility is $\leq 2\%$.	<p>Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility.</p>
<i>Surface Ponding</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Surface ponding is limited to a 24-hour drawdown time.	<p>Surface ponding limited to 24 hours for plant health.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Surface ponding depth is ≥ 6 and ≤ 12 inches.	<p>Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns.</p> <p>Surface ponding depth greater than 12 inches (for additional pollutant control or surface outlet structures or flow-control orifices) may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) surface ponding depth drawdown time is less than 24 hours; and 2) safety issues and fencing requirements are considered (typically ponding greater than 18" will require a fence and/or flatter side slopes) and 3) potential for elevated clogging risk is considered.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> A minimum of 2 inches of freeboard is provided.	<p>Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Side slopes are stabilized with vegetation and are = 3H:1V or shallower.	<p>Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and are easier to maintain.</p>

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<i>Vegetation</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Plantings are suitable for the climate and expected ponding depth. A plant list to aid in selection can be found in Appendix E.20	Plants suited to the climate and ponding depth are more likely to survive.
<input type="checkbox"/> An irrigation system with a connection to water supply should be provided as needed.	Seasonal irrigation might be needed to keep plants healthy.
<i>Mulch (Mandatory)</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> A minimum of 3 inches of well-aged, shredded hardwood mulch that has been stockpiled or stored for at least 12 months is provided. Mulch must be non-floating to avoid clogging of overflow structure.	Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth. Aging mulch kills pathogens and weed seeds and allows the beneficial microbes to multiply.
<i>Media Layer</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Media maintains a minimum filtration rate of 5 in/hr over lifetime of facility. An initial filtration rate of 8 to 12 in/hr is recommended to allow for clogging over time; the initial filtration rate should not exceed 12 inches per hour.	A filtration rate of at least 5 inches per hour allows soil to drain between events, and allows flows to relatively quickly enter the aggregate storage layer, thereby minimizing bypass. The initial rate should be higher than long term target rate to account for clogging over time. However an excessively high initial rate can have a negative impact on treatment performance, therefore an upper limit is needed.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<p>Media is a minimum 18 inches deep, meeting either of these two media specifications:</p> <p>City of San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual (page B-18) (July 2011, unless superseded by more recent edition) or County of San Diego Low Impact Development Handbook: Appendix G -Bioretention Soil Specification (June 2014, unless superseded by more recent edition).</p> <p>Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications contained in the City or County LID Manual, the media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1.</p>	<p>A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper roots.</p> <p>Standard specifications shall be followed.</p> <p>For non-standard or proprietary designs, compliance with F.1 ensures that adequate treatment performance will be provided.</p>
<p>Media surface area is 3% of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor or greater.</p>	<p>Greater surface area to tributary area ratios: a) maximizes volume retention as required by the MS4 Permit and b) decrease loading rates per square foot and therefore increase longevity.</p> <p>Adjusted runoff factor is to account for site design BMPs implemented upstream of the BMP (such as rain barrels, impervious area dispersion, etc.). Refer to Appendix B.2 guidance.</p> <p>Use Worksheet B.5-1 Line 26 to estimate the minimum surface area required per this criteria.</p>
<p>Where receiving waters are impaired or have a TMDL for nutrients, the system is designed with nutrient sensitive media design (see fact sheet BF-2).</p>	<p>Potential for pollutant export is partly a function of media composition; media design must minimize potential for export of nutrients, particularly where receiving waters are impaired for nutrients.</p>

<i>Siting and Design</i>		<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<i>Filter Course Layer</i>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility
<input type="checkbox"/>	Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
<i>Aggregate Storage Layer</i>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Class 2 Permeable per Caltrans specification 68-1.025 is recommended for the storage layer. Washed, open-graded crushed rock may be used, however a 4-6 inch washed pea gravel filter course layer at the top of the crushed rock is required.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Maximum aggregate storage layer depth below the underdrain invert is determined based on the infiltration storage volume that will infiltrate within a 48-hour drawdown time.	A maximum drawdown time is needed for vector control and to facilitate providing storm water storage for the next storm event.
<i>Inflow, Underdrain, and Outflow Structures</i>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Inflow, underdrains and outflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods. (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Curb cut inlets are at least 12 inches wide, have a 4-6 inch reveal (drop) and an apron and energy dissipation as needed.	Inlets must not restrict flow and apron prevents blockage from vegetation as it grows in. Energy dissipation prevents erosion.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked. Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
<input type="checkbox"/> Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
<input type="checkbox"/> An underdrain cleanout with a minimum 6-inch diameter and lockable cap is placed every 250 to 300 feet as required based on underdrain length.	Properly spaced cleanouts will facilitate underdrain maintenance.
<input type="checkbox"/> Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow for on-line infiltration basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Nutrient Sensitive Media Design

To design biofiltration with partial retention with underdrain for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design biofiltration with partial retention and an underdrain for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Generalized sizing procedure is presented in Appendix B.5. The surface ponding should be verified to have a maximum 24-hour drawdown time.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide detention and/or infiltration storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If biofiltration with partial retention cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with significant storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After biofiltration with partial retention has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.
- 5.

E.12 BF-1 Biofiltration



Location: 43rd Street and Logan Avenue, San Diego, California

MS4 Permit Category

Biofiltration

Manual Category

Biofiltration

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control

Flow Control

Primary Benefits

Treatment

Volume Reduction (Incidental)

Peak Flow Attenuation (Optional)

Description

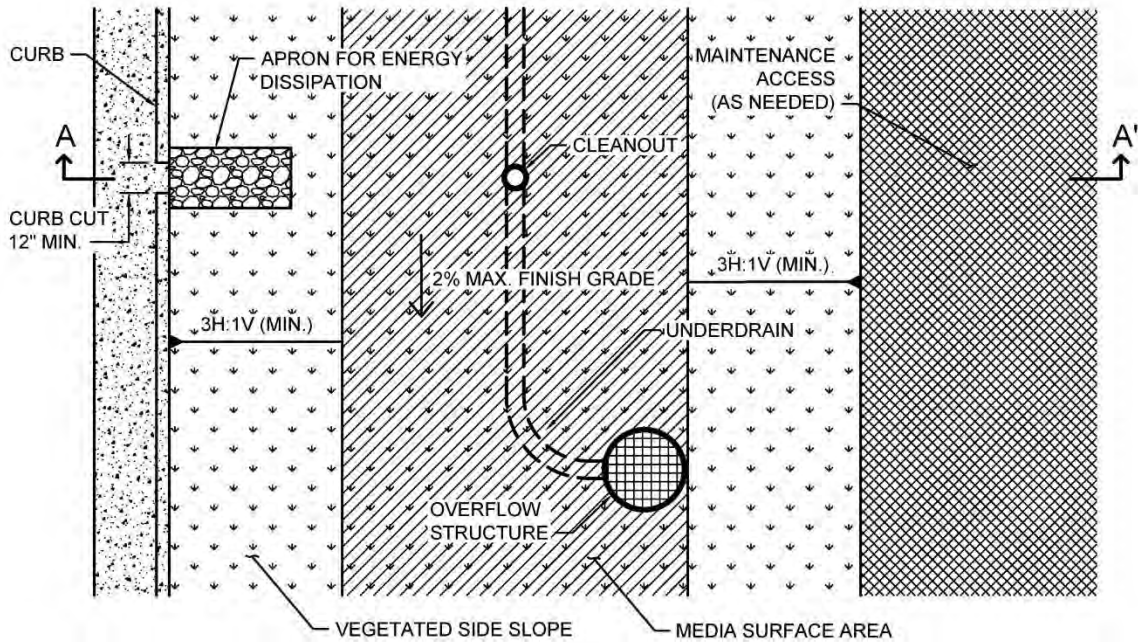
Biofiltration (Bioretention with underdrain) facilities are vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation, and soil or engineered media prior to discharge via underdrain or overflow to the downstream conveyance system. Bioretention with underdrain facilities are commonly incorporated into the site within parking lot landscaping, along roadsides, and in open spaces. Because these types of facilities have limited or no infiltration, they are typically designed to provide enough hydraulic head to move flows through the underdrain connection to the storm drain system. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, biochemical processes and plant uptake.

Typical bioretention with underdrain components include:

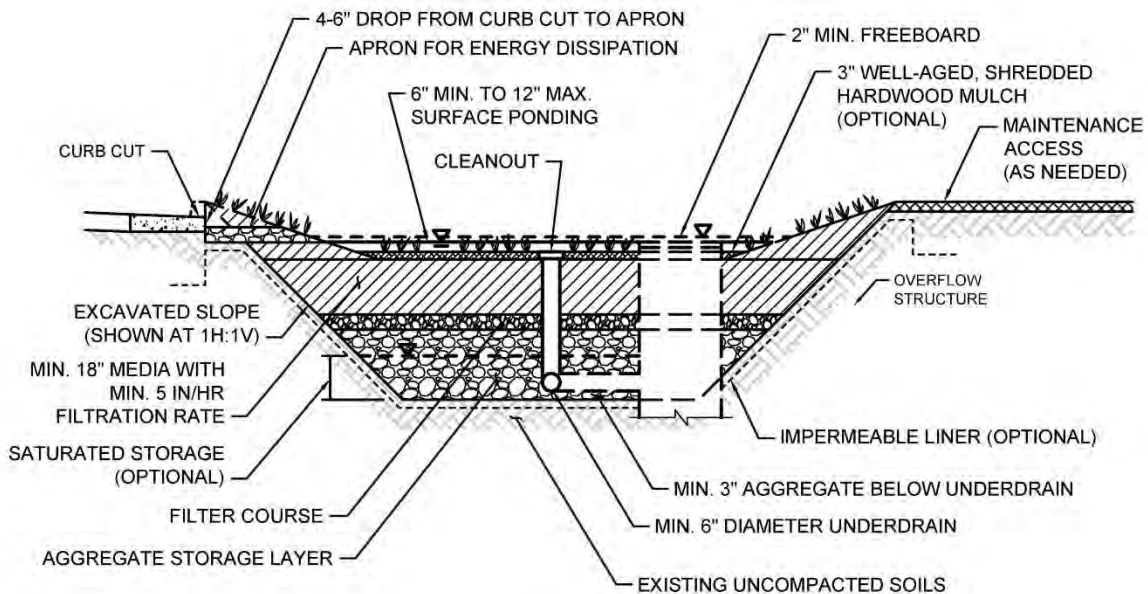
- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g, perimeter flow spreader or filter strips)
- Energy dissipation mechanism for concentrated inflows (e.g., splash blocks or riprap)
- Shallow surface ponding for captured flows
- Side slope and basin bottom vegetation selected based on expected climate and ponding depth
- Non-floating mulch layer (Optional)
- Media layer (planting mix or engineered media) capable of supporting vegetation growth
- Filter course layer consisting of aggregate to prevent the migration of fines into uncompacted native soils or the aggregate storage layer
- Aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)

Appendix E: BMP Design Fact Sheets

- Impermeable liner or uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility
- Overflow structure



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and Section view of a Biofiltration BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Biofiltration Treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration, and an underdrain is provided at the bottom to carry away filtered runoff. This configuration is considered to provide biofiltration treatment via flow through the media layer. Storage provided above the underdrain within surface ponding, media, and aggregate storage is considered included in the biofiltration treatment volume. Saturated storage within the aggregate storage layer can be added to this design by raising the underdrain above the bottom of the aggregate storage layer or via an internal weir structure designed to maintain a specific water level elevation.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. The system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control by primarily providing increased surface ponding and/or having a deeper aggregate storage layer above the underdrain. This will allow for significant detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Bioretention with underdrain must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
<input type="checkbox"/> An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Contributing tributary area shall be ≤ 5 acres (≤ 1 acre preferred).	<p>Bigger BMPs may require additional design features for proper performance.</p> <p>Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in the BMP and 2) incorporate additional design features requested by the City Engineer for proper performance of the regional BMP.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Finish grade of the facility is $\leq 2\%$.	<p>Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility.</p>
<i>Surface Ponding</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Surface ponding is limited to a 24-hour drawdown time.	<p>Surface ponding limited to 24 hour for plant health.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Surface ponding depth is ≥ 6 and ≤ 12 inches.	<p>Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns.</p> <p>Surface ponding depth greater than 12 inches (for additional pollutant control or surface outlet structures or flow-control orifices) may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) surface ponding depth drawdown time is less than 24 hours; and 2) safety issues and fencing requirements are considered (typically ponding greater than 18" will require a fence and/or flatter side slopes) and 3) potential for elevated clogging risk is considered.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> A minimum of 2 inches of freeboard is provided.	<p>Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.</p>

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Side slopes are stabilized with vegetation and are = 3H:1V or shallower.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
<i>Vegetation</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Plantings are suitable for the climate and expected ponding depth. A plant list to aid in selection can be found in Appendix E.20.	Plants suited to the climate and ponding depth are more likely to survive.
<input type="checkbox"/> An irrigation system with a connection to water supply should be provided as needed.	Seasonal irrigation might be needed to keep plants healthy.
<i>Mulch (Mandatory)</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> A minimum of 3 inches of well-aged, shredded hardwood mulch that has been stockpiled or stored for at least 12 months is provided.	Mulch will suppress weeds and maintain moisture for plant growth. Aging mulch kills pathogens and weed seeds and allows the beneficial microbes to multiply.
<i>Media Layer</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Media maintains a minimum filtration rate of 5 in/hr over lifetime of facility. An initial filtration rate of 8 to 12 in/hr is recommended to allow for clogging over time; the initial filtration rate should not exceed 12 inches per hour.	A filtration rate of at least 5 inches per hour allows soil to drain between events. The initial rate should be higher than long term target rate to account for clogging over time. However an excessively high initial rate can have a negative impact on treatment performance, therefore an upper limit is needed.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<p>Media is a minimum 18 inches deep, meeting either of these two media specifications:</p> <p>City of San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual (page B-18) (July 2011, unless superseded by more recent edition) or County of San Diego Low Impact Development Handbook: Appendix G -Bioretention Soil Specification (June 2014, unless superseded by more recent edition).</p> <p>Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications contained in the City or County LID Manual, the media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1.</p>	<p>A deep media layer provides additional filtration and supports plants with deeper roots.</p> <p>Standard specifications shall be followed.</p> <p>For non-standard or proprietary designs, compliance with F.1 ensures that adequate treatment performance will be provided.</p>
<p>Media surface area is 3% of contributing area times adjusted runoff factor or greater.</p>	<p>Greater surface area to tributary area ratios: a) maximizes volume retention as required by the MS4 Permit and b) decrease loading rates per square foot and therefore increase longevity.</p> <p>Adjusted runoff factor is to account for site design BMPs implemented upstream of the BMP (such as rain barrels, impervious area dispersion, etc.). Refer to Appendix B.2 guidance.</p> <p>Use Worksheet B.5-1 Line 26 to estimate the minimum surface area required per this criteria.</p>
<p>Where receiving waters are impaired or have a TMDL for nutrients, the system is designed with nutrient sensitive media design (see fact sheet BF-2).</p>	<p>Potential for pollutant export is partly a function of media composition; media design must minimize potential for export of nutrients, particularly where receiving waters are impaired for nutrients.</p>
<i>Filter Course Layer</i>	
<p>A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.</p>	<p>Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.</p>

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility and impede infiltration.
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
<i>Aggregate Storage Layer</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Class 2 Permeable per Caltrans specification 68-1.025 is recommended for the storage layer. Washed, open-graded crushed rock may be used, however a 4-6 inch washed pea gravel filter course layer at the top of the crushed rock is required.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.
<input type="checkbox"/> The depth of aggregate provided (12-inch typical) and storage layer configuration is adequate for providing conveyance for underdrain flows to the outlet structure.	Proper storage layer configuration and underdrain placement will minimize facility drawdown time.
<i>Inflow, Underdrain, and Outflow Structures</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Inflow, underdrains and outflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
<input type="checkbox"/> Inflow velocities are limited to 3 ft/s or less or use energy dissipation methods. (e.g., riprap, level spreader) for concentrated inflows.	High inflow velocities can cause erosion, scour and/or channeling.
<input type="checkbox"/> Curb cut inlets are at least 12 inches wide, have a 4-6 inch reveal (drop) and an apron and energy dissipation as needed.	Inlets must not restrict flow and apron prevents blockage from vegetation as it grows in. Energy dissipation prevents erosion.
<input type="checkbox"/> Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
<input type="checkbox"/> An underdrain cleanout with a minimum 6-inch diameter and lockable cap is placed every 250 to 300 feet as required based on underdrain length.	Properly spaced cleanouts will facilitate underdrain maintenance.
<input type="checkbox"/> Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow for on-line infiltration basins and water quality peak flow for off-line basins.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design bioretention with underdrain for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet presented in Appendix B.5 to size biofiltration BMPs.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, maximum side and finish grade slopes, and the recommended media surface area tributary ratio.

Appendix E: BMP Design Fact Sheets

2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If bioretention with underdrain cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with significant storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After bioretention with underdrain has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.13 Nutrient Sensitive Media Design

Some studies of bioretention with underdrains have observed export of nutrients, particularly inorganic nitrogen (nitrate and nitrite) and dissolved phosphorus. This has been observed to be a short-lived phenomenon in some studies or a long term issue in some studies. The composition of the soil media, including the chemistry of individual elements is believed to be an important factor in the potential for nutrient export. Organic amendments, often compost, have been identified as the most likely source of nutrient export. The quality and stability of organic amendments can vary widely.

The biofiltration media specifications contained in the County of San Diego Low Impact Development Handbook: Appendix G -Bioretention Soil Specification (June 2014, unless superseded by more recent edition) and the City of San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual (page B-18) (July 2011, unless superseded by more recent edition) were developed with consideration of the potential for nutrient export. These specifications include criteria for individual component characteristics and quality in order to control the overall quality of the blended mixes. As of the publication of this manual, the June 2014 County of San Diego specifications provide more detail regarding mix design and quality control.

The City and County specifications noted above were developed for general purposes to meet permeability and treatment goals. In cases where the BMP discharges to receiving waters with nutrient impairments or nutrient TMDLs, the biofiltration media should be designed with the specific goal of minimizing the potential for export of nutrients from the media. Therefore, in addition to adhering to the City or County media specifications, the following guidelines should be followed:

1. Select plant palette to minimize plant nutrient needs

A landscape architect or agronomist should be consulted to select a plant palette that minimizes nutrient needs. Utilizing plants with low nutrient needs results in less need to enrich the biofiltration soil mix. If nutrient quantity is then tailored to plants with lower nutrient needs, these plants will generally have less competition from weeds, which typically need higher nutrient content. The following practices are recommended to minimize nutrient needs of the plant palette:

- **Utilize native, drought-tolerant plants and grasses where possible.** Native plants generally have a broader tolerance for nutrient content, and can be longer lived in leaner/lower nutrient soils.
- **Start plants from smaller starts or seed.** Younger plants are generally more tolerant of lower nutrient levels and tend to help develop soil structure as they grow. Given the lower cost of smaller plants, the project should be able to accept a plant mortality rate that is somewhat higher than starting from larger plants and providing high organic content.

2. Minimize excess nutrients in media mix

Once the low-nutrient plant palette is established (item 1), the landscape architect and/or agronomist should be consulted to assist in the design of a biofiltration media to balance the interests of plant establishment, water retention capacity (irrigation demand), and the potential for nutrient export. The following guidelines should be followed:

- **The mix should not exceed the nutrient needs of plants.** In conventional landscape design, the nutrient needs of plants are often exceeded intentionally in order to provide a factor of safety for plant survival. This practice must be avoided in biofiltration media as excess nutrients will increase the chance of export. The mix designer should keep in mind that nutrients can be added later (through mulching, tilling of amendments into the surface), but it is not possible to remove nutrients, once added.
- **The actual nutrient content and organic content of the selected organic amendment source should be determined when specifying mix proportions.** Nutrient content (i.e., C:N ratio; plant extractable nutrients) and organic content (i.e., % organic material) are relatively inexpensive to measure via standard agronomic methods and can provide important information about mix design. If mix design relies on approximate assumption about nutrient/organic content and this is not confirmed with testing (or the results of prior representative testing), it is possible that the mix could contain much more nutrient than intended.
- **Nutrients are better retained in soils with higher cation exchange capacity.** Cation exchange capacity can be increased through selection of organic material with naturally high cation exchange capacity, such as peat or coconut coir pith, and/or selection of inorganic material with high cation exchange capacity such as some sands or engineered minerals (e.g., low P-index sands, zeolites, rhyolites, etc). Including higher cation exchange capacity materials would tend to reduce the net export of nutrients. Natural silty materials also provide cation exchange capacity; however potential impacts to permeability need to be considered.
- **Focus on soil structure as well as nutrient content.** Soil structure is loosely defined as the ability of the soil to conduct and store water and nutrients as well as the degree of aeration of the soil. Soil structure can be more important than nutrient content in plant survival and biologic health of the system. If a good soil structure can be created with very low amounts of organic amendment, plants survivability should still be provided. While soil structure generally develops with time, biofiltration media can be designed to promote earlier development of soil structure. Soil structure is enhanced by the use of amendments with high humus content (as found in well-aged organic material). In addition, soil structure can be enhanced through the use of organic material with a distribution of particle sizes (i.e., a more heterogeneous mix).

- **Consider alternatives to compost.** Compost, by nature, is a material that is continually evolving and decaying. It can be challenging to determine whether tests previously done on a given compost stock are still representative. It can also be challenging to determine how the properties of the compost will change once placed in the media bed. More stable materials such as aged coco coir pith, peat, biochar, shredded bark, and/or other amendments should be considered.

With these considerations, it is anticipated that less than 10 percent organic amendment by volume could be used, while still balancing plant survivability and water retention. If compost is used, designers should strongly consider utilizing less than 10 percent by volume.

3. Design with partial retention and/or internal water storage

An internal water storage zone, as described in Fact Sheet PR-1 is believed to improve retention of nutrients. For lined systems, an internal water storage zone worked by providing a zone that fluctuates between aerobic and anaerobic conditions, resulting in nitrification/denitrification. In soils that will allow infiltration, a partial retention design (PR-1) allows significant volume reduction and can also promote nitrification/denitrification.

Acknowledgment: This fact sheet has been adapted from the Orange County Technical Guidance Document (May 2011). It was originally developed based on input from: Deborah Deets, City of Los Angeles Bureau of Sanitation, Drew Ready, Center for Watershed Health, Rick Fisher, ASLA, City of Los Angeles Bureau of Engineering, Dr. Garn Wallace, Wallace Laboratories, Glen Dake, GDML, and Jason Schmidt, Tree People. The guidance provided herein does not reflect the individual opinions of any individual listed above and should not be cited or otherwise attributed to those listed.

E.14 BF-3 Proprietary Biofiltration Systems

The purpose of this fact sheet is to help explain the potential role of proprietary BMPs in meeting biofiltration requirements, when full retention of the DCV is not feasible. The fact sheet does not describe design criteria like the other fact sheets in this appendix because this information varies by BMP product model.

Criteria for Use of a Proprietary BMP as a Biofiltration BMP

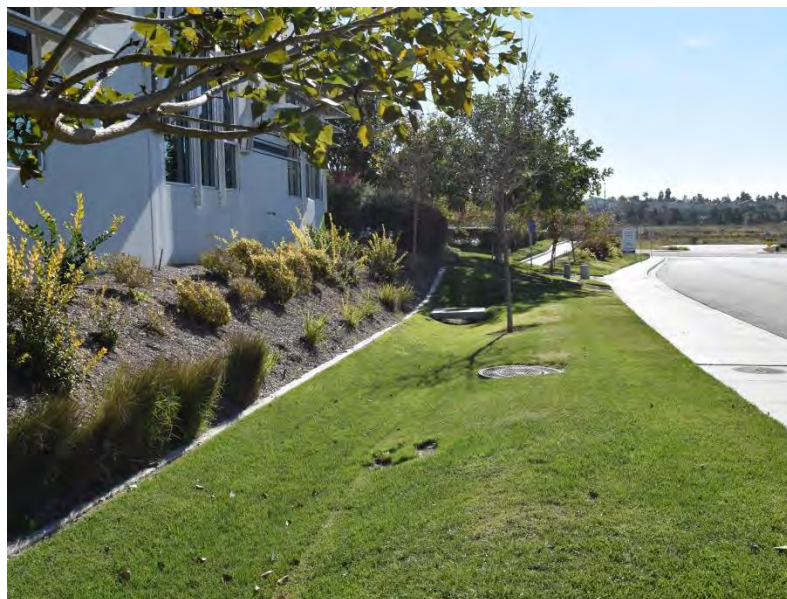
A proprietary BMP may be acceptable as a “biofiltration BMP” under the following conditions:

- (1) The BMP meets the minimum design criteria listed in Appendix F, including the pollutant treatment performance standard in Appendix F.1;
- (2) The BMP is designed and maintained in a manner consistent with its performance certifications (See explanation in Appendix F.2); and
- (3) The BMP is acceptable at the discretion of the City Engineer. The City Engineer has no obligation to accept any proprietary biofiltration BMP.

Guidance for Sizing a Proprietary BMP as a Biofiltration BMP

Proprietary biofiltration BMPs must meet the same sizing guidance as non-proprietary BMPs. Sizing is typically based on capturing and treating 1.50 times the DCV not reliably retained. Guidance for sizing biofiltration BMPs to comply with requirements of this manual is provided in Appendix F.2.

E.15 FT-1 Vegetated Swales



MS4 Permit Category

Flow-thru Treatment Control

Manual Category

Flow-thru Treatment Control

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control

Primary Benefits

Treatment

Volume Reduction (Incidental)

Peak Flow Attenuation

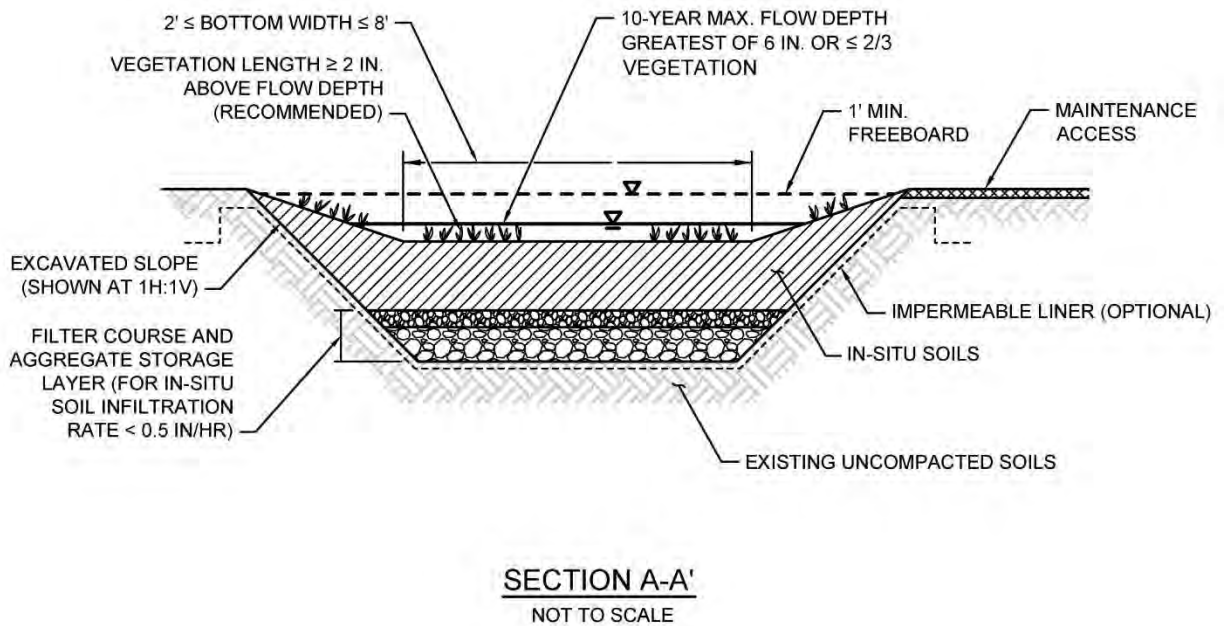
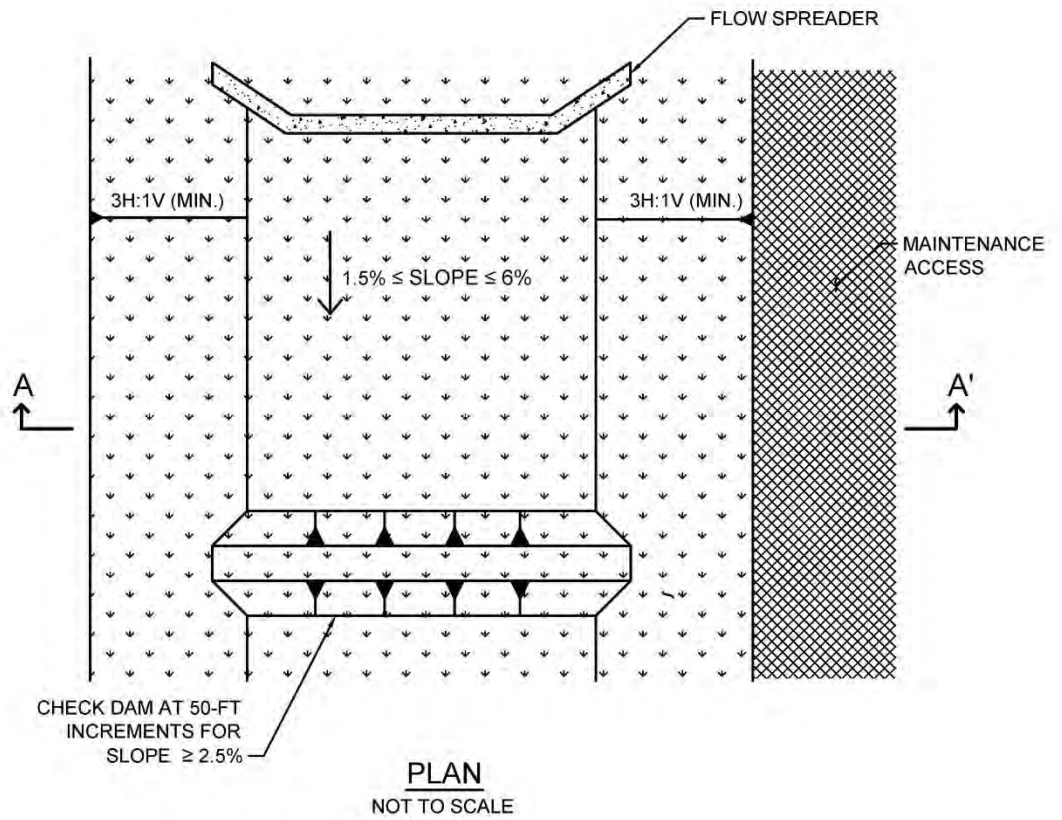
Location: Eastlake Business Center, Chula Vista, California; Photo Credit: Eric Mosolgo

Description

Vegetated swales are shallow, open channels that are designed to remove storm water pollutants by physically straining/filtering runoff through vegetation in the channel. Swales can be used in place of traditional curbs and gutters and are well-suited for use in linear transportation corridors to provide both conveyance and treatment via filtration. An effectively designed vegetated swale achieves uniform sheet flow through densely vegetated areas. When soil conditions allow, infiltration and volume reduction are enhanced by adding a gravel drainage layer underneath the swale. Vegetated swales with a subsurface media layer can provide enhanced infiltration, water retention, and pollutant-removal capabilities. Pollutant removal effectiveness can also be maximized by increasing the hydraulic residence time of water in swale using weirs or check dams.

Typical vegetated swale components include:

- Inflow distribution mechanisms (e.g., flow spreader)
- Surface flow
- Vegetated surface layer
- Check dams (if required)
- Optional aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)



Typical plan and Section view of a Vegetated Swale BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Site design BMP to reduce runoff volumes and storm peaks. Swales without underdrains are an alternative to lined channels and pipes and can provide volume reduction through infiltration. Swales can also reduce the peak runoff discharge rate by increasing the time of concentration of the site and decreasing runoff volumes and velocities.

Flow-thru treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration with an underdrain and designed to provide pollutant removal through settling and filtration in the channel vegetation (usually grasses). This configuration is considered to provide flow-thru treatment via horizontal surface flow through the swale. Sizing for flow-thru treatment control is based on the surface flow rate through the swale that meets water quality treatment performance objectives.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Vegetated swales must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
<input type="checkbox"/> An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
<input type="checkbox"/> Contributing tributary area ≤ 2 acres.	Higher ratios increase the potential for clogging but may be acceptable for relatively clean tributary areas.
<input type="checkbox"/> Longitudinal slope is $\geq 1.5\%$ and $\leq 6\%$.	Flatter swales facilitate increased water quality treatment while minimum slopes prevent ponding.
<input type="checkbox"/> For site design goal, in-situ soil infiltration rate ≥ 0.5 in/hr (if < 0.5 in/hr, an underdrain is required and design goal is for pollutant control only).	Well-drained soils provide volume reduction and treatment. An underdrain should only be provided when soil infiltration rates are low or per geotechnical or groundwater concerns.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
Surface Flow	
<input type="checkbox"/> Maximum flow depth is ≤ 6 inches or $\leq \frac{2}{3}$ the vegetation length, whichever is greater. Ideally, flow depth will be ≥ 2 inches below shortest plant species.	Flow depth must fall within the height range of the vegetation for effective water quality treatment via filtering.
A minimum of 1 foot of freeboard is provided.	Freeboard minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
<input type="checkbox"/> Cross sectional shape is trapezoidal or parabolic with side slopes $\geq 3H:1V$.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
<input type="checkbox"/> Bottom width is ≥ 2 feet and ≤ 8 feet.	A minimum of 2 feet minimizes erosion. A maximum of 8 feet prevents channel braiding.
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum hydraulic residence time ≥ 10 minutes.	Longer hydraulic residence time increases pollutant removal.
<input type="checkbox"/> Swale is designed to safely convey the 10-yr storm event unless a flow splitter is included to allow only the water quality event.	Planning for larger storm events lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.
<input type="checkbox"/> Flow velocity is ≤ 1 ft/s for water quality event. Flow velocity for 10-yr storm event is ≤ 3 ft/s.	Lower flow velocities provide increased pollutant removal via filtration and minimize erosion.
Vegetated Surface Layer (amendment with media is Optional)	
<input type="checkbox"/> Soil is amended with 2 inches of media mixed into the top 6 inches of in-situ soils, as needed, to promote plant growth (optional). For enhanced pollutant control, 2 feet of media can be used in place of in-situ soils. Media meets either of these two media specifications: City of San Diego Low Impact Development Design Manual, July 2011 (page B-18); Or County of San Diego Low Impact Development Handbook, June 2014: Appendix G -Bioretention Soil Specification.	Amended soils aid in plant establishment and growth. Media replacement for in-situ soils can improve water quality treatment and site design volume reduction.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Vegetation is appropriately selected low-growing, erosion-resistant plant species that effectively bind the soil, thrive under site-specific climatic conditions and require little or no irrigation.	Plants suited to the climate and expected flow conditions are more likely to survive.
<i>Check Dams</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> Check dams are provided at 50-foot increments for slopes $\geq 2.5\%$.	Check dams prevent erosion and increase the hydraulic residence time by lowering flow velocities and providing ponding opportunities.
<i>Filter Course Layer (For Underdrain Design)</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> A filter course is used to prevent migration of fines through layers of the facility. Filter fabric is not used.	Migration of media can cause clogging of the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade. Filter fabric is more likely to clog.
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter course is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the facility and impede infiltration.
<input type="checkbox"/> Filter course calculations assessing suitability for particle migration prevention have been completed.	Gradation relationship between layers can evaluate factors (e.g., bridging, permeability, and uniformity) to determine if particle sizing is appropriate or if an intermediate layer is needed.
<i>Aggregate Storage Layer (For Underdrain Design)</i>	
<input type="checkbox"/> The depth of aggregate provided (12-inch typical) and storage layer configuration is adequate for providing conveyance for underdrain flows to the outlet structure.	Proper storage layer configuration and underdrain placement will minimize facility drawdown time.
<input type="checkbox"/> Aggregate used for the aggregate storage layer is washed and free of fines.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog aggregate storage layer void spaces or underdrain.

<i>Siting and Design</i>		<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<i>Inflow and Underdrain Structures</i>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Inflow and underdrains are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Underdrains are made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
<input type="checkbox"/>	An underdrain cleanout with a minimum 6-inch diameter and lockable cap is placed every 250 to 300 feet as required based on underdrain length.	Properly spaced cleanouts will facilitate underdrain maintenance.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Site Design

1. Determine the areas where vegetated swales can be used in the site design to replace traditional curb and gutter facilities and provide volume reduction through infiltration.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design vegetated swales for storm water pollutant control only, the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including bottom width and longitudinal and side slope requirements.
2. Calculate the design flow rate per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine flow-thru treatment sizing of the vegetated swale and if flow velocity, flow depth, and hydraulic residence time meet required criteria. Swale configuration should be adjusted as necessary to meet design requirements.

E.16 FT-2 Media Filters



MS4 Permit Category

Flow-thru Treatment Control

Manual Category

Flow-thru Treatment Control

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control

Flow Control

Primary Benefits

Treatment

Peak Flow Attenuation (Optional)

Photo Credit: Contech Stormwater Solutions

Description

Media filters are manufactured devices that consist of a series of modular filters packed with engineered media that can be contained in a catch basin, manhole, or vault that provide treatment through filtration and sedimentation. The manhole or vault may be divided into multiple chambers where the first chamber acts as a presettling basin for removal of coarse sediment while the next chamber acts as the filter bay and houses the filter cartridges. A variety of media types are available from various manufacturers that can target pollutants of concern via primarily filtration, sorption, ion exchange, and precipitation. **Specific products must be selected to meet the flow-thru BMP selection requirements described in Appendix B.6.** Treatment effectiveness is contingent upon proper maintenance of filter units.

Typical media filter components include:

- Vault for flow storage and media housing
- Inlet and outlet
- Media filters

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Flow-thru treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. Water quality treatment is provided through filtration. This configuration is considered to provide flow-thru treatment, not biofiltration treatment. Storage provided within the vault restricted by an outlet is considered detention storage and is included in calculations for the flow-thru treatment volume.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Media filters can also be designed for flow rate and duration control via additional detention storage. The vault storage can be designed to accommodate higher volumes than the storm water pollutant control volume and can utilize multi-stage outlets to mitigate both the duration and rate of flows within a prescribed range.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Media filters must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
<input type="checkbox"/> Recommended for tributary areas with limited available surface area or where surface BMPs would restrict uses.	Maintenance needs may be more labor intensive for media filters than surface BMPs. Lack of surface visibility creates additional risk that maintenance needs may not be completed in a timely manner.
<input type="checkbox"/> Vault storage drawdown time ≤ 96 hours.	Provides vector control.
<input type="checkbox"/> Vault storage drawdown time ≤ 36 hours if the vault is used for equalization of flows for pollutant treatment.	Provides required capacity to treat back to back storms. Exception to the 36 hour drawdown criteria is allowed if additional vault storage is provided using the curves in Appendix B.4.2.

Inflow and Outflow Structures

<input type="checkbox"/> Inflow and outflow structures are accessible by required equipment (e.g., vector truck) for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
--	---

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design a media filter for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken

1. Verify that the selected BMP complies with BMP selection requirements in Appendix B.6.
2. Verify that placement and tributary area requirements have been met.
3. Calculate the required DCV and/or flow rate per Appendix B.6.3 based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
4. Media filter can be designed either for DCV or flow rate. To estimate the drawdown time, divide the vault storage by the treatment rate of media filters.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant vault storage volume, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that placement and tributary area requirements have been met.
2. Iteratively determine the vault storage volume required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows to MS4.
3. If a media filter cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After the media filter has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.
5. Verify that the vault drawdown time is 96 hours or less. To estimate the drawdown time:
 - a. Divide the vault volume by the filter surface area.
 - b. Divide the result (a) by the design filter rate.

E.17 FT-3 Sand Filters



MS4 Permit Category

Flow-thru Treatment Control

Manual Category

Flow-thru Treatment Control

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control

Flow Control

Primary Benefits

Treatment

Volume Reduction (Incidental)

Peak Flow Attenuation (Optional)

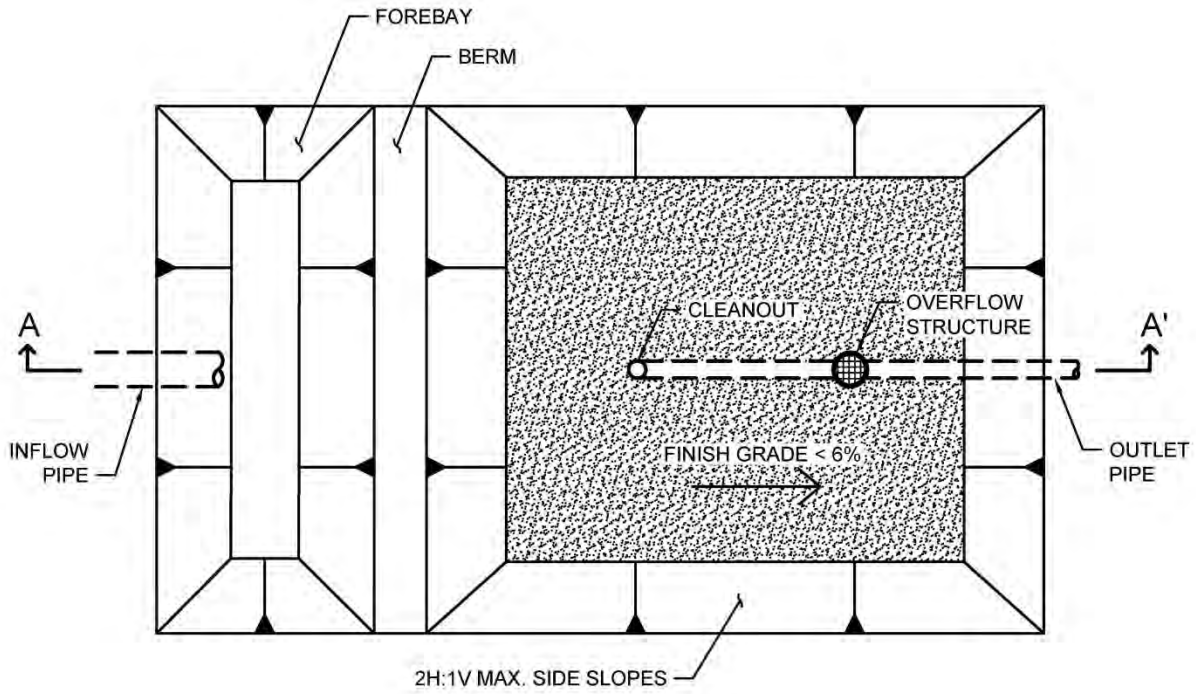
Photo Credit: City of San Diego LID Manual

Description

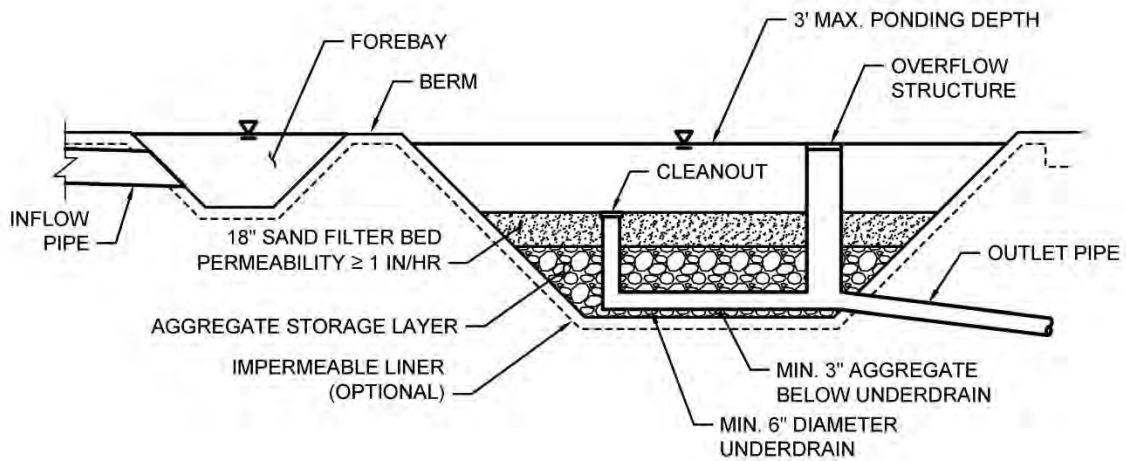
Sand filters operate by filtering storm water through a constructed sand bed with an underdrain system. Runoff enters the filter and spreads over the surface. Sand filter beds can be enclosed within concrete structures or within earthen containment. As flows increase, water backs up on the surface of the filter where it is held until it can percolate through the sand. The treatment pathway is downward (vertical) through the media to an underdrain system that is connected to the downstream storm drain system. As storm water passes through the sand, pollutants are trapped on the surface of the filter, in the small pore spaces between sand grains or are adsorbed to the sand surface. The high filtration rates of sand filters, which allow a large runoff volume to pass through the media in a short amount of time, can provide efficient treatment for storm water runoff.

Typical sand filter components include:

- Forebay for pretreatment/energy dissipation
- Surface ponding for captured flows
- Sand filter bed
- Aggregate storage layer with underdrain(s)
- Overflow structure



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



SECTION A-A'
NOT TO SCALE

Typical plan and Section view of a Sand Filter BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Flow-thru treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration, and an underdrain is provided at the bottom to carry away filtered runoff. This configuration is considered to provide flow-thru treatment via vertical flow through the sand filter bed. Storage provided above the underdrain within surface ponding, the sand filter bed, and aggregate storage is considered included in the flow-thru treatment volume. Saturated storage within the aggregate storage layer can be added to this design by including an upturned elbow installed at the downstream end of the underdrain or via an internal weir structure designed to maintain a specific water level elevation.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. The system can be designed to provide flow rate and duration control by primarily providing increased surface ponding and/or having a deeper aggregate storage layer above the underdrain. This will allow for significant detention storage, which can be controlled via inclusion of an outlet structure at the downstream end of the underdrain.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Sand filters must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
<input type="checkbox"/> An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Contributing tributary area (≤ 5 acres).	<p>Bigger BMPs require additional design features for proper performance.</p> <p>Contributing tributary area greater than 5 acres may be allowed at the discretion of the City Engineer if the following conditions are met: 1) incorporate design features (e.g. flow spreaders) to minimizing short circuiting of flows in the BMP and 2) incorporate additional design features requested by the City Engineer for proper performance of the regional BMP.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Finish grade of facility is $< 6\%$.	<p>Flatter surfaces reduce erosion and channelization within the facility.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Earthen side slopes are $\geq 3H:1V$.	<p>Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Surface ponding is limited to a 36-hour drawdown time.	<p>Provides required capacity to treat back to back storms. Exception to the 36 hour drawdown criteria is allowed if additional surface storage is provided using the curves in Appendix B.4.2.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Surface ponding is limited to a 96-hour drawdown time.	<p>Prolonged surface ponding can create a vector hazard.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Maximum ponding depth does not exceed 3 feet.	<p>Surface ponding capacity lowers subsurface storage requirements and results in lower cost facilities. Deep surface ponding raises safety concerns.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Sand filter bed consists of clean washed concrete or masonry sand (passing $\frac{1}{4}$ inch sieve) or sand similar to the ASTM C33 gradation.	<p>Washing sand will help eliminate fines that could clog the void spaces of the aggregate storage layer.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/> Sand filter bed permeability is at least 1 in/hr.	<p>A high filtration rate through the media allows flows to quickly enter the aggregate storage layer, thereby minimizing bypass.</p>

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Sand filter bed depth is at least 18 inches deep.	Different pollutants are removed in various zones of the media using several mechanisms. Some pollutants bound to sediment, such as metals, are typically removed within 18 inches of the media.
<input type="checkbox"/> Aggregate storage should be washed, bank-run gravel.	Washing aggregate will help eliminate fines that could clog the aggregate storage layer void spaces or subgrade.
<input type="checkbox"/> The depth of aggregate provided (12-inch typical) and storage layer configuration is adequate for providing conveyance for underdrain flows to the outlet structure.	Proper storage layer configuration and underdrain placement will minimize facility drawdown time.
<input type="checkbox"/> Inflow, underdrains and outflow structures are accessible for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
<input type="checkbox"/> Inflow must be non-erosive sheet flow (≤ 3 ft/s) unless an energy-dissipation device, flow diversion/splitter or forebay is installed.	Concentrated flow and/or excessive volumes can cause erosion in a sand filter and can be detrimental to the treatment capacity of the system.
<input type="checkbox"/> Underdrain outlet elevation should be a minimum of 3 inches above the bottom elevation of the aggregate storage layer.	A minimal separation from subgrade or the liner lessens the risk of fines entering the underdrain and can improve hydraulic performance by allowing perforations to remain unblocked.
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum underdrain diameter is 6 inches.	Smaller diameter underdrains are prone to clogging.
<input type="checkbox"/> Underdrains should be made of slotted, PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D 3034 or equivalent or corrugated, HDPE pipe conforming to AASHTO 252M or equivalent.	Slotted underdrains provide greater intake capacity, clog resistant drainage, and reduced entrance velocity into the pipe, thereby reducing the chances of solids migration.
<input type="checkbox"/> Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design a sand filter for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, and maximum finish grade slope.
2. Calculate the required DCV and/or flow rate per Appendix B.6.3 based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Sand filter can be designed either for DCV or flow rate. To estimate the drawdown time, divide the average ponding depth by the permeability of the filter sand.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding and/or aggregate storage volumes, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the Manual.

1. Verify that siting and design criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, and maximum finish grade slope.
2. Iteratively determine the facility footprint area, surface ponding and/or aggregate storage layer depth required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If a sand filter cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by the MS4 permit, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After the sand filter has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.18 FT-4 Dry Extended Detention Basin



MS4 Permit Category

Flow-thru Treatment Control

Manual Category

Flow-thru Treatment Control

Applicable Performance Standard

Pollutant Control

Flow Control

Primary Benefits

Treatment

Volume Reduction (Incidental)

Peak Flow Attenuation

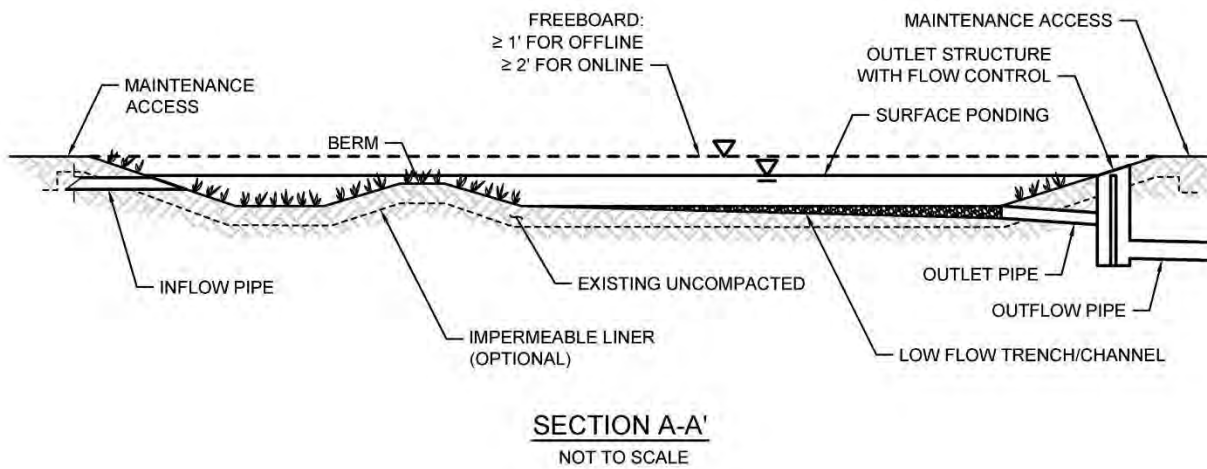
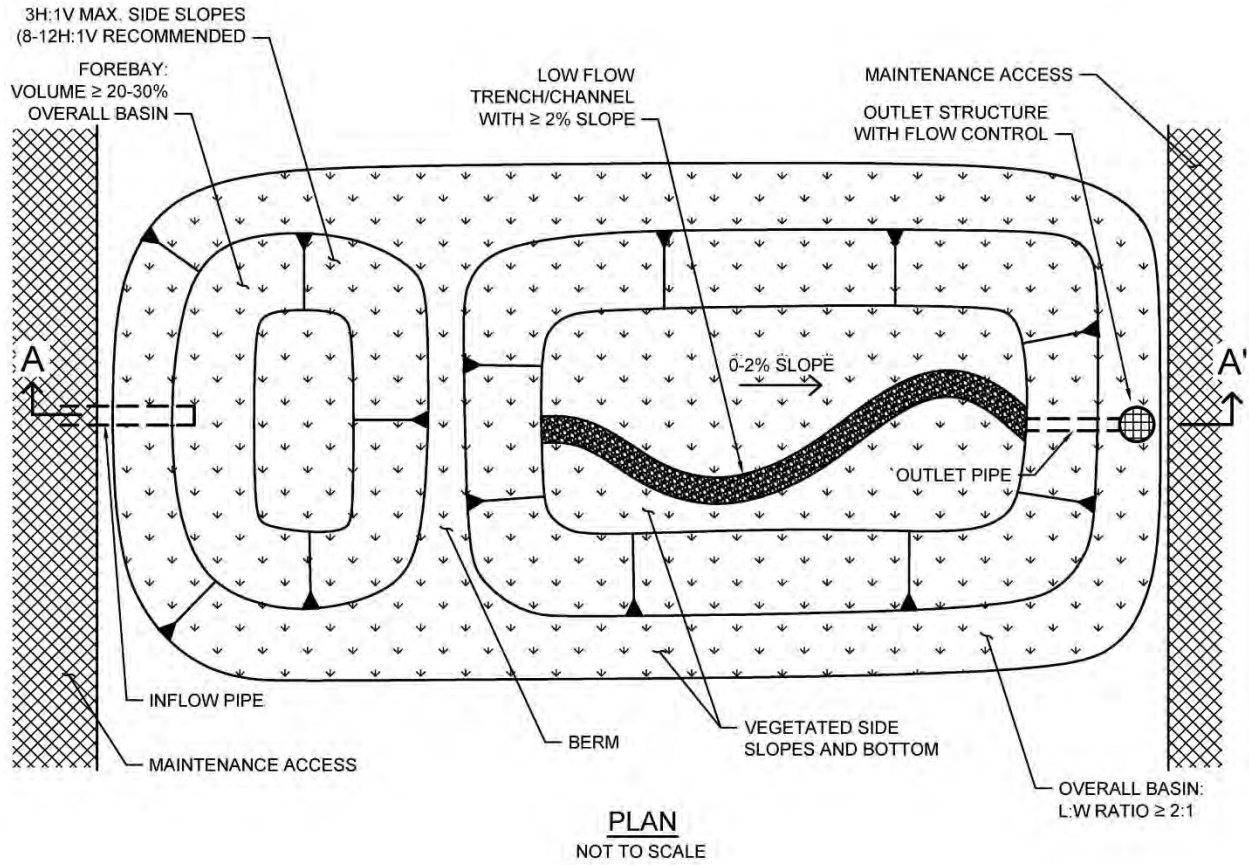
Location: Rolling Hills Ranch, Chula Vista, California; Photo Credit: Eric Mosolgo

Description

Dry extended detention basins are basins that have been designed to detain storm water for an extended period to allow sedimentation and typically drain completely between storm events. A portion of the dissolved pollutant load may also be removed by filtration, uptake by vegetation, and/or through infiltration. The slopes, bottom, and forebay of dry extended detention basins are typically vegetated. Considerable storm water volume reduction can occur in dry extended detention basins when they are located in permeable soils and are not lined with an impermeable barrier. Dry extended detention basins are generally appropriate for developments of ten acres or larger, and have the potential for multiple uses including parks, playing fields, tennis courts, open space, and overflow parking lots. They can also be used to provide flow control by modifying the outlet control structure and providing additional detention storage.

Typical dry extended detention basins components include:

- Forebay for pretreatment
- Surface ponding for captured flows
- Vegetation selected based on basin use, climate, and ponding depth
- Low flow channel, outlet, and overflow device
- Impermeable liner or uncompacted native soils at the bottom of the facility



Typical plan and Section view of a Dry Extended Detention Basin BMP

Design Adaptations for Project Goals

Flow-thru treatment BMP for storm water pollutant control. The system is lined or un-lined to provide incidental infiltration and designed to detain storm water to allow particulates and associated pollutants to settle out. This configuration is considered to provide flow-thru treatment, not biofiltration treatment. Storage provided as surface ponding above a restricted outlet invert is considered detention storage and is included in calculations for the flow-thru treatment volume.

Integrated storm water flow control and pollutant control configuration. Dry extended detention basins can also be designed for flow control. The surface ponding can be designed to accommodate higher volumes than the storm water pollutant control volume and can utilize multi-stage outlets to mitigate both the duration and rate of flows within a prescribed range.

Design Criteria and Considerations

Dry extended detention basins must meet the following design criteria. Deviations from the below criteria may be approved at the discretion of the City Engineer if it is determined to be appropriate:

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Placement observes geotechnical recommendations regarding potential hazards (e.g., slope stability, landslides, and liquefaction zones) and setbacks (e.g., slopes, foundations, utilities).	Must not negatively impact existing site geotechnical concerns.
<input type="checkbox"/> An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is included if site constraints indicate that infiltration or lateral flows should not be allowed.	Lining prevents storm water from impacting groundwater and/or sensitive environmental or geotechnical features. Incidental infiltration, when allowable, can aid in pollutant removal and groundwater recharge.
<input type="checkbox"/> Contributing tributary area is large (typically \geq 10 acres).	Dry extended detention basins require significant space and are more cost-effective for treating larger drainage areas.
<input type="checkbox"/> Longitudinal basin bottom slope is 0 - 2%.	Flatter slopes promote ponding and settling of particles.
<input type="checkbox"/> Basin length to width ratio is \geq 2:1 (L:W).	A larger length to width ratio provides a longer flow path to promote settling.
<input type="checkbox"/> Forebay is included that encompasses 20 - 30% of the basin volume.	A forebay to trap sediment can decrease frequency of required maintenance.

<i>Siting and Design</i>	<i>Intent/Rationale</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> Side slopes are $\geq 3H:1V$.	Gentler side slopes are safer, less prone to erosion, able to establish vegetation more quickly and easier to maintain.
<input type="checkbox"/> Surface ponding drawdown time is between 24 and 96 hours.	Minimum drawdown time of 24 hours allows for adequate settling time and maximizes pollutant removal. Maximum drawdown time of 96 hours provides vector control.
<input type="checkbox"/> Minimum freeboard provided is ≥ 1 foot for offline facilities and ≥ 2 feet for online facilities.	Freeboard provides room for head over overflow structures and minimizes risk of uncontrolled surface discharge.
<input type="checkbox"/> Inflow and outflow structures are accessible by required equipment (e.g., vector truck) for inspection and maintenance.	Maintenance will prevent clogging and ensure proper operation of the flow control structures.
<input type="checkbox"/> A low flow channel or trench with a $\geq 2\%$ slope is provided. A gravel infiltration trench is provided where infiltration is allowable.	Aids in draining or infiltrating dry weather flows.
<input type="checkbox"/> Overflow is safely conveyed to a downstream storm drain system or discharge point. Size overflow structure to pass 100-year peak flow.	Planning for overflow lessens the risk of property damage due to flooding.
<input type="checkbox"/> The maximum rate at which runoff is discharged is set below the erosive threshold for the site.	Extended low flows can have erosive effects.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach for Storm Water Pollutant Control Only

To design dry extended detention basins for storm water pollutant control only (no flow control required), the following steps should be taken:

1. Verify that siting and criteria have been met, including placement requirements, contributing tributary area, forebay volume, and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Calculate the DCV per Appendix B based on expected site design runoff for tributary areas.
3. Use the sizing worksheet to determine flow-thru treatment sizing of the surface ponding of the dry extended detention basin, which includes calculations for a maximum 96-hour drawdown time.

Conceptual Design and Sizing Approach when Storm Water Flow Control is Applicable

Control of flow rates and/or durations will typically require significant surface ponding volume, and therefore the following steps should be taken prior to determination of storm water pollutant

Appendix E: BMP Design Fact Sheets

control design. Pre-development and allowable post-project flow rates and durations should be determined as discussed in Chapter 6 of the manual.

1. Verify that siting and criteria have been met, including placement requirements, tributary area, and maximum slopes for basin sides and bottom.
2. Iteratively determine the surface ponding required to provide detention storage to reduce flow rates and durations to allowable limits. Flow rates and durations can be controlled from detention storage by altering outlet structure orifice size(s) and/or water control levels. Multi-level orifices can be used within an outlet structure to control the full range of flows.
3. If a dry extended detention basin cannot fully provide the flow rate and duration control required by this manual, an upstream or downstream structure with appropriate storage volume such as an additional basin or underground vault can be used to provide remaining controls.
4. After the dry extended detention basin has been designed to meet flow control requirements, calculations must be completed to verify if storm water pollutant control requirements to treat the DCV have been met.

E.19 FT-5 Proprietary Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMPs

The purpose of this fact sheet is to help explain the potential role of proprietary BMPs in meeting flow thru treatment control BMP requirements. The fact sheet does not describe design criteria like the other fact sheets in this appendix because this information varies by BMP product model.

Criteria for Use of a Proprietary BMP as a Flow-Thru Treatment Control BMP

A proprietary BMP may be acceptable as a “flow-thru treatment control BMP” under the following conditions:

- (1) The BMP is selected and sized consistent with the method and criteria described in Appendix B.6;
- (2) The BMP is designed and maintained in a manner consistent with its performance certifications (See explanation in Appendix B.6); and
- (3) The BMP is acceptable at the discretion of the City Engineer. The City Engineer has no obligation to accept any proprietary flow-thru treatment control BMP.

Guidance for Sizing Proprietary BMPs

Proprietary flow-thru BMPs must meet the same sizing guidance as other flow-thru treatment control BMPs. Guidance for sizing flow-thru BMPs to comply with requirements of this manual is provided in Appendix B.6.

Appendix E: BMP Design Fact Sheets

E.20 Plant List (PL)

Plant Name		Irrigation Requirements		Preferred Location in Basin		Applicable Bioretention Sections (Un-Lined Facilities)				Applicability to Flow-Through Planter? (Lined Facility)	
Latin Name	Common Name	Temporary Irrigation during Plant Establishment Period	Permanent Irrigation (Drip / Spray) ⁽¹⁾	Basin Bottom	Basin Side Slopes	Section A Treatment-Only Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group A or B Soils	Section B Treatment-Only Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group C or D soils	Section C Treatment Plus Flow Control Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group A or B Soils	Section D Treatment Plus Flow Control Bioretention in Hydrologic Soil Group C or D Soils	NO Applicable to Un-lined Facilities Only (Bioretention Only)	YES Can Use in Lined or Un-Lined Facility (Flow-Through Planter OR Bioretention)
TREES⁽²⁾											
<i>Alnus rhombifolia</i>	White Alder	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
<i>Platanus racemosa</i>	California Sycamore	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
<i>Salix lasiolepis</i>	Arroyo Willow	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	
<i>Salix lucida</i>	Lance-Leaf Willow	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	
<i>Sambucus mexicana</i>	Blue Elderberry	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	
SHRUBS / GROUNDCOVER											
<i>Achillea millefolium</i>	Yarrow	X			X	X	X				X
<i>Agrostis palens</i>	Thingrass	X			X	X	X	X	X		X
<i>Anemopsis californica</i>	Yerba Manza	X			X	X	X	X	X		X
<i>Baccharis douglasii</i>	Marsh Baccahris	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
<i>Carex praegracillis</i>	California Field Sedge	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
<i>Carex spissa</i>	San Diego Sedge	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
<i>Carex subfusca</i>	Rusty Sedge	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
<i>Distichlis spicata</i>	Salt Grass	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
<i>Eleocharis macrostachya</i>	Pale Spike Rush	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
<i>Festuca rubra</i>	Red Fescue	X	X	X	X	X	X				X
<i>Festuca californica</i>	California Fescue	X	X		X	X	X				X
<i>Iva hayesiana</i>	Hayes Iva	X			X	X	X				X
<i>Juncus Mexicana</i>	Mexican Rush	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
<i>Jucus patens</i>	California Gray Rush	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
<i>Leymus condensatus 'Canyon Prince'</i>	Canyon Prince Wild Rye	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
<i>Mahonia nevinii</i>	Nevin's Barberry	X			X	X	X	X	X		X
<i>Muhlenburgia rigens</i>	Deergrass	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X
<i>Mimulus cardinalis</i>	Scarlet Monkeyflower	X		X	X	X	X				X
<i>Ribes speciosum</i>	Fushia Flowering Goose.	X			X	X	X				X
<i>Rosa californica</i>	California Wild Rose	X	X		X	X	X				X
<i>Scirpus cenusus</i>	Low Bullrush	X	X	X		X	X	X	X		X
<i>Sisyrinchium bellum</i>	Blue-eyed Grass	X			X	X	X				X

1. All plants will benefit from some supplemental irrigation during hot dry summer months, particularly those on basin side slopes and further inland.
2. All trees should be planted a min. of 10' away from any drain pipes or structures.



Biofiltration Standard and Checklist

Introduction

The MS4 Permit and this manual define a specific category of storm water pollutant treatment BMPs called “biofiltration BMPs.” The MS4 Permit (Section E.3.c.1) states:

Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to have an appropriate hydraulic loading rate to maximize storm water retention and pollutant removal, as well as to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP, and must be sized to:

- a) **Treat 1.5 times the DCV not reliably retained onsite, OR**
- b) **Treat the DCV not reliably retained onsite with a flow-thru design that has a total volume, including pore spaces and pre-filter detention volume, sized to hold at least 0.75 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite.**

A project applicant must be able to affirmatively demonstrate that a given BMP is designed and sized in a manner consistent with this definition to be considered as a “biofiltration BMP” as part of a compliant storm water management plan. Retention is defined in the MS4 Permit as evapotranspiration, infiltration, and harvest and use of storm water vs. discharge to a surface water system.

Contents and Intended Uses

This appendix contains a checklist of the key underlying criteria that must be met for a BMP to be considered a biofiltration BMP. The purpose of this checklist is to facilitate consistent review and approval of biofiltration BMPs that meet the “biofiltration standard” defined by the MS4 Permit.

This checklist includes specific design criteria that are essential to defining a system as a biofiltration BMP; however it does not present a complete design basis. This checklist was used to develop BMP Fact Sheets for PR-1 biofiltration with partial retention and BF-1 biofiltration, which do present a complete design basis. Therefore, biofiltration BMPs that substantially meet all aspects of the Fact sheets PR-1 or BF-1 should be able to complete this checklist without additional documentation beyond what would already be required for a project submittal.

Other biofiltration BMP designs¹ (including both non-proprietary and proprietary designs) may also meet the underlying MS4 Permit requirements to be considered biofiltration BMPs. These BMPs may be classified as biofiltration BMPs if they (1) meet the minimum design criteria listed in this appendix, including the pollutant treatment performance standard in Appendix F.1, (2) are designed and maintained in a manner consistent with their performance certifications (See explanation in Appendix F.2), if applicable, and (3) are acceptable at the discretion of the City Engineer. The applicant may be required to provide additional studies and/or required to meet additional design criteria beyond the scope of this document in order to demonstrate that these criteria are met.

Organization

The checklist in this appendix is organized into the seven (7) main objectives associated with biofiltration BMP design. It describes the associated minimum criteria that must be met in order to qualify a biofiltration BMP as meeting the biofiltration standard. The seven main objectives are listed below. Specific design criteria and associated manual references associated with each of these objectives is provided in the checklist in the following section.

1. Biofiltration BMPs shall be allowed only as described in the BMP selection process in this manual (i.e., retention feasibility hierarchy).
2. Biofiltration BMPs must be sized using acceptable sizing methods described in this manual.
3. Biofiltration BMPs must be sited and designed to achieve maximum feasible infiltration and evapotranspiration.
4. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed with a hydraulic loading rate to maximize pollutant retention, preserve pollutant control/sequestration processes, and minimize potential for pollutant washout.
5. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to promote appropriate biological activity to support and maintain treatment processes.
6. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP.

¹ Defined as biofiltration designs that do not conform to the specific design criteria described in Fact Sheets PR-1 or BF-1. This category includes proprietary BMPs that are sold by a vendor as well as non-proprietary BMPs that are designed and constructed of primarily of more elementary construction materials.

7. Biofiltration BMP must include operations and maintenance design features and planning considerations to provide for continued effectiveness of pollutant and flow control functions.

Biofiltration Criteria Checklist

The applicant shall provide documentation of compliance with each criterion in this checklist as part of the project submittal. The right column of this checklist identifies the submittal information that is recommended to document compliance with each criterion. Biofiltration BMPs that substantially meet all aspects of Fact Sheets PR-1 or BF-1 should still use this checklist; however additional documentation (beyond what is already required for project submittal) should not be required.

1. Biofiltration BMPs shall be allowed to be used only as described in the BMP selection process based on a documented feasibility analysis.

Intent: This manual defines a specific prioritization of pollutant treatment BMPs, where BMPs that retain water (retained includes evapotranspired, infiltrated, and/or harvested and used) must be used before considering BMPs that have a biofiltered discharge to the MS4 or surface waters. Use of a biofiltration BMP in a manner in conflict with this prioritization (i.e., without a feasibility analysis justifying its use) is not permitted, regardless of the adequacy of the sizing and design of the system.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | The project applicant has demonstrated that it is not technically feasible to retain the full DCV onsite. | Document feasibility analysis and findings in project submittal per Appendix C. |
|--------------------------|---|---|

2. Biofiltration BMPs must be sized using acceptable sizing methods.

Intent: The MS4 Permit and this manual defines specific sizing methods that must be used to size biofiltration BMPs. Sizing of biofiltration BMPs is a fundamental factor in the amount of storm water that can be treated and also influences volume and pollutant retention processes.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | The project applicant has demonstrated that biofiltration BMPs are sized to meet one of the biofiltration sizing options available (Appendix B). | Submit sizing worksheets (Appendix B) or other equivalent documentation with project submittal. |
|--------------------------|--|---|

3. Biofiltration BMPs must be sited and designed to achieve maximum feasible infiltration and evapotranspiration.

Intent: Various decisions about BMP placement and design influence how much water is retained via infiltration and evapotranspiration. The MS4 Permit requires that biofiltration BMPs achieve maximum feasible retention (evapotranspiration and infiltration) of storm water volume.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>The biofiltration BMP is sited to allow for maximum infiltration of runoff volume based on the feasibility factors considered in site planning efforts. It is also designed to maximize evapotranspiration through the use of amended media and plants (biofiltration designs without amended media and plants may be permissible; see Item 5).</p>	<p>Document site planning and feasibility analyses in project submittal per Section 5.4.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>For biofiltration BMPs categorized as “Partial Infiltration Feasible,” the infiltration storage depth in the biofiltration design has been selected to drain in 36 hours (+/-25%) or an alternative value shown to maximize infiltration on the site.</p>	<p>Included documentation of estimated infiltration rate per Appendix D; provide calculations using Appendix B.4 and B.5 to show that the infiltration storage depth meets this criterion. Note, depths that are too shallow or too deep may not be acceptable.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>For biofiltration BMP locations categorized as “Partial Infiltration Feasible,” the infiltration storage is over the entire bottom of the biofiltration BMP footprint.</p>	<p>Document on plans that the infiltration storage covers the entire bottom of the BMP (i.e., not just underdrain trenches); or an equivalent footprint elsewhere on the site.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>For biofiltration BMP locations categorized as “Partial Infiltration Feasible,” the sizing factor used for the infiltration storage area is not less than the minimum biofiltration BMP sizing factors shown in Appendix B.5.1.</p>	<p>Provide a table that compares the minimum sizing factor per Appendix B.5.1 to the provided sizing factor. Note: The infiltration storage area could be a separate storage feature located downstream of the biofiltration BMP, not necessarily within the same footprint.</p>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<p>An impermeable liner or other hydraulic restriction layer is only used when needed to avoid geotechnical and/or subsurface contamination issues in locations identified as “Infiltration Not Feasible.”</p>	<p>If using an impermeable liner or hydraulic restriction layer, provide documentation of feasibility findings per Appendix C that recommend the use of this feature.</p>

<input type="checkbox"/>	The use of “compact” biofiltration BMP design ² is permitted only in conditions identified as “Infiltration Not Feasible” and where site-specific documentation demonstrates that the use of larger footprint biofiltration BMPs would be infeasible.	Provide documentation of feasibility findings that recommend no infiltration is feasible. Provide site-specific information to demonstrate that a larger footprint biofiltration BMP would not be feasible.
--------------------------	--	---

4. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed with a hydraulic loading rate to maximize pollutant retention, preserve pollutant control processes, and minimize potential for pollutant washout.

Intent: Various decisions about biofiltration BMP design influence the degree to which pollutants are retained. The MS4 Permit requires that biofiltration BMPs achieve maximum feasible retention of storm water pollutants.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Media selected for the biofiltration BMP meets minimum quality and material specifications per City or County LID Manual, including the maximum allowable design filtration rate and minimum thickness of media.	Provide documentation that media meets the specifications in City or County LID Manual.
--------------------------	--	---

OR

<input type="checkbox"/>	Alternatively, for proprietary designs and custom media mixes not meeting the media specifications contained in the City or County LID Manual, field scale testing data are provided to demonstrate that proposed media meets the pollutant treatment performance criteria in Section F.1 below.	Provide documentation of performance information as described in Section F.1.
--------------------------	--	---

<input type="checkbox"/>	To the extent practicable, filtration rates are outlet controlled (e.g., via an underdrain and orifice/weir) instead of controlled by the infiltration rate of the media.	Include outlet control in designs or provide documentation of why outlet control is not practicable.
--------------------------	---	--

² Compact biofiltration BMPs are defined as features with infiltration storage footprint less than the minimum sizing factors in Appendix B.5.1. Note that if a biofiltration BMP is accompanied by an infiltrating area downstream that has a footprint equal to at least the minimum sizing factors in Appendix B.5.1, then it is not considered to be a compact biofiltration BMP for the purpose of Item 4 of the checklist. For potential configurations with a higher rate biofiltration BMP upstream of an larger footprint infiltration area, the BMP would still need to comply with Item 5 of this checklist for pollutant treatment effectiveness.

<input type="checkbox"/>	The water surface drains to at least 12 inches below the media surface within 24 hours from the end of storm event flow to preserve plant health and promote healthy soil structure.	Include calculations to demonstrate that drawdown rate is adequate.
<input type="checkbox"/>	If nutrients are a pollutant of concern, design of the biofiltration BMP follows nutrient-sensitive design criteria.	Follow specifications for nutrient sensitive design in Fact Sheet BF-2. Or provide alternative documentation that nutrient treatment is addressed and potential for nutrient release is minimized.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Media gradation calculations or geotextile selection calculations demonstrate that migration of media between layers will be prevented and permeability will be preserved.	Follow specification for choking layer or geotextile in Fact Sheet PR-1 or BF-1. Or include calculations to demonstrate that choking layer is appropriately specified.
<p>5. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed to promote appropriate biological activity to support and maintain treatment processes.</p> <p>Intent: Biological processes are an important element of biofiltration performance and longevity.</p>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Plants have been selected to be tolerant of project climate, design ponding depths and the treatment media composition.	Provide documentation justifying plant selection. Refer to the plant list in Appendix E.20.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Plants have been selected to minimize irrigation requirements.	Provide documentation describing irrigation requirements for establishment and long term operation.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Plant location and growth will not impede expected long-term media filtration rates and will enhance long term infiltration rates to the extent possible.	Provide documentation justifying plant selection. Refer to the plant list in Appendix E.20.
<input type="checkbox"/>	If plants are not applicable to the biofiltration design, other biological processes are supported as needed to sustain treatment processes (e.g., biofilm in a subsurface flow wetland).	For biofiltration designs without plants, describe the biological processes that will support effective treatment and how they will be sustained.
<p>6. Biofiltration BMPs must be designed with a hydraulic loading rate to prevent erosion, scour, and channeling within the BMP.</p> <p>Intent: Erosion, scour, and/or channeling can disrupt treatment processes and reduce biofiltration effectiveness.</p>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Scour protection has been provided for both sheet flow and pipe inflows to the BMP, where needed.	Provide documentation of scour protection as described in Fact Sheets PR-1 or BF-1 or approved equivalent.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Where scour protection has not been provided, flows into and within the BMP are kept to non-erosive velocities.	Provide documentation of design checks for erosive velocities as described in Fact Sheets PR-1 or BF-1 or approved equivalent.
<input type="checkbox"/>	For proprietary BMPs, the BMP is used in a manner consistent with manufacturer guidelines and conditions of its third-party certification ³ (i.e., maximum tributary area, maximum inflow velocities, etc., as applicable).	Provide copy of manufacturer recommendations and conditions of third-party certification.
<p>7. Biofiltration BMP must include operations and maintenance design features and planning considerations for continued effectiveness of pollutant and flow control functions.</p> <p>Intent: Biofiltration BMPs require regular maintenance in order provide ongoing function as intended. Additionally, it is not possible to foresee and avoid potential issues as part of design; therefore plans must be in place to correct issues if they arise.</p>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	The biofiltration BMP O&M plan describes specific inspection activities, regular/periodic maintenance activities and specific corrective actions relating to scour, erosion, channeling, media clogging, vegetation health, and inflow and outflow structures.	Include O&M plan with project submittal as described in Chapter 7.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Adequate site area and features have been provided for BMP inspection and maintenance access.	Illustrate maintenance access routes, setbacks, maintenance features as needed on project water quality plans.
<input type="checkbox"/>	For proprietary biofiltration BMPs, the BMP maintenance plan is consistent with manufacturer guidelines and conditions of its third-party certification (i.e., maintenance activities, frequencies).	Provide copy of manufacturer recommendations and conditions of third-party certification.

³ Certifications or verifications issued by the Washington Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program and the New Jersey Corporation for Advanced Technology programs are typically accompanied by a set of guidelines regarding appropriate design and maintenance conditions that would be consistent with the certification/verification

F.1 Pollutant Treatment Performance Standard

Standard biofiltration BMPs that are designed following the criteria in Fact Sheets PR-1 and BF-1 are presumed to meet the pollutant treatment performance standard associated with biofiltration BMPs. This presumption is based on the MS4 Permit Fact Sheet which cites analyses of standard biofiltration BMPs conducted in the Ventura County Technical Guidance Manual (July 2011).

For BMPs that do not meet the biofiltration media specification and/or the range of acceptable media filtration rates described in Fact Sheet, PR-1 and BF-1, additional documentation must be provided to demonstrate that adequate pollutant treatment performance is provided to be considered a biofiltration BMP. Project applicants have three options for documenting compliance:

- 1) Project applicants may provide documentation to substantiate that the minor modifications to the design is expected to provide equal or better pollutant removal performance for the project pollutants of concern than would be provided by a biofiltration design that complies with the criteria in Fact Sheets PR-1 and BF-1. Minor modifications are design elements that deviate only slightly from standard design criteria and are expected to either not impact performance or to improve performance compared to standard biofiltration designs. The reviewing agency has the discretion to accept or reject this documentation and/or request additional documentation to substantiate equivalent or better performance to BF-1 or PR-1, as applicable. Examples of minor deviations include:
 - Different particle size distribution of aggregate, with documentation that system filtration rate will meet specifications.
 - Alternative source of organic components, with documentation of material suitability and stability from appropriate testing agency.
 - Specialized amendments to provide additional treatment mechanisms, and which have negligible potential to upset other treatment mechanisms or otherwise deteriorate performances.

- 2) For proprietary BMPs, project applicants may provide evidence that the BMP has been

certified for use as part of the Washington State Technology Assessment Protocol-Ecology certification program and meets each of the following requirements:

- a. The applicant must demonstrate (using the checklist in this Appendix) that the BMP meets all other conditions to be considered as a biofiltration BMP. For example, a cartridge media filter or hydrodynamic separator would not meet biofiltration BMP design criteria regardless of Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification because they do not support effective biological processes.
 - b. The applicant must select BMPs that have an active Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification, with General Use Level Designation for the appropriate project pollutants of concern as identified in Table F.1-1. The list of certified technologies is updated as new technologies are approved (link below). Technologies with Pilot Use Level Designation and Conditional Use Level Designations are not acceptable. Refer to: <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html>.
 - c. The applicant must demonstrate that BMP is being used in a manner consistent with all conditions of the Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification while meeting the flow rate or volume design criteria that is required for biofiltration BMPs under this manual. Conditions of Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification are available by clicking on the technology name at the website listed in bullet b. Additional discussion about sizing of proprietary biofiltration BMPs to comply with applicable sizing standards is provided below in Section F.2.
- 3) For BMPs that do not fall into options 1 or 2 above, the City Engineer may allow the applicant to submit alternative third-party documentation that the pollutant treatment performance of the system is consistent with the performance levels associated with the necessary Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certifications. Table F.1-1 describes the required levels of certification and Table F.1-2 describes the pollutant treatment performance levels associated with each level of certification. Acceptance of this approach is at the sole discretion of the City Engineer. If Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certifications are not available, preference shall be given to:

- a. Verified third-party, field-scale testing performance under the Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership Tier II Protocol. This protocol is no longer operated, however this is considered to be a valid protocol and historic verifications are considered to be representative provided that product models being proposed are consistent with those that were tested. Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership verifications were conducted under New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing and are archived at the website linked below. Note that Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership verifications must be matched to pollutant treatment standards in Table F.1-2 then matched to an equivalent Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification in Table F.1-1.
- b. Verified third-party, field-scale testing performance under the New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing protocol. Note that New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing verifications must be matched to pollutant treatment standards in Table F.1-2 then matched to an equivalent Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology certification in Table F.1-1.

A list of field-scale verified technologies under Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership Tier II and New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing can be accessed at: <http://www.njcat.org/verification-process/technology-verification-database.html> (refer to field verified technologies only).

Table 0-1: Required Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Certifications for Pollutants of Concern for Biofiltration Performance Standard

Project Pollutant of Concern	Required Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Certification for Biofiltration Performance Standard
Trash	Basic Treatment, Phosphorus Treatment, Enhanced Treatment
Sediments	Basic Treatment, Phosphorus Treatment, Enhanced Treatment
Oil and Grease	Basic Treatment, Phosphorus Treatment, Enhanced Treatment
Nutrients	Phosphorus Treatment ¹
Metals	Enhanced Treatment
Pesticides	Basic Treatment (including filtration) ² Phosphorus Treatment, Enhanced Treatment
Organics	Basic Treatment (including filtration) ² Phosphorus Treatment, Enhanced Treatment
Bacteria and Viruses	Basic Treatment (including bacteria removal processes) ³ , Phosphorus Treatment, Enhanced Treatment
Basic Treatment (including filtration) ² Phosphorus Treatment, Enhanced Treatment	Basic Treatment (including filtration) ² Phosphorus Treatment, Enhanced Treatment

1 – There is no Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology equivalent for nitrogen compounds; however systems that are designed to retain phosphorus (as well as meet basic treatment designation), generally also provide treatment of nitrogen compounds. Where nitrogen is a pollutant of concern, relative performance of available certified systems for nitrogen removal should be considered in BMP selection.

2 – Pesticides, organics, and oxygen demanding substances are typically addressed by particle filtration consistent with the level of treatment required to achieve Basic treatment certification; if a system with Basic treatment certification does not provide filtration, it is not acceptable for pesticides, organics or oxygen demanding substances.

3 – There is no Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology equivalent for pathogens (viruses and bacteria), and testing data are limited because of typical sample hold times. Systems with Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Basic Treatment must include one or more significant bacteria removal process such as media filtration, physical sorption, predation, reduced redox conditions, and/or solar inactivation. Where design options are available to enhance pathogen removal (i.e., pathogen-specific media mix offered by vendor), this design variation should be used.

Table 0-2: Performance Standards for Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology Certification

Performance Goal	Influent Range	Criteria
Basic Treatment	20 – 100 mg/L TSS	Effluent goal \leq 20 mg/L TSS
	100 – 200 mg/L TSS	\geq 80% TSS removal
	>200 mg/L TSS	> 80% TSS removal
Enhanced (Dissolved Metals) Treatment	Dissolved copper 0.005 – 0.02 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and better than basic treatment currently defined as >30% dissolved copper removal
	Dissolved zinc 0.02 – 0.3 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and better than basic treatment currently defined as >60% dissolved zinc removal
Phosphorous Treatment	Total phosphorous 0.1 – 0.5 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and exhibit \geq 50% total phosphorous removal
Oil Treatment	Total petroleum hydrocarbon > 10 mg/L	No ongoing or recurring visible sheen in effluent Daily average effluent Total petroleum hydrocarbon concentration < 10 mg/L Maximum effluent Total petroleum hydrocarbon concentration for a 15 mg/L for a discrete (grab) sample
Pretreatment	50 – 100 mg/L TSS	\leq 50 mg/L TSS
	\geq 200 mg/L TSS	\geq 50% TSS removal

F.2 Guidance on Sizing and Design of Non-Standard Biofiltration BMPs

This section explains the general process for design and sizing of non-standard biofiltration BMPs. This section assumes that the BMPs have been selected based on the criteria in Section F.1.

F.2.1 Guidance on Design per Conditions of Certification/Verification

The biofiltration standard and checklist in this appendix requires that “the BMP is used in a manner consistent with manufacturer guidelines and conditions of its third-party certification.” Practically, what this means is that the BMP is used in the same way in which it was tested and certified. For example, it is not acceptable for a BMP of a given size to be certified/verified with a 100 gallon per minute treatment rate and be applied at a 150 gallon per minute treatment rate in a design.

Certifications or verifications issued by the Washington Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology program and the Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership or New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing programs are typically accompanied by a set of guidelines regarding appropriate design and maintenance conditions that would be consistent with the certification/verification. It is common for these approvals to specify the specific model of BMP, design capacity for given unit sizes, type of media that is the basis for approval, and/or other parameter. The applicant must demonstrate conclusively that the proposed application of the BMP is consistent with these criteria.

For alternate non-proprietary systems that do not have a Technology Acceptance Protocol-Ecology / Technology Acceptance Reciprocity Partnership / New Jersey Corporation for Advance Testing certification (but which still must provide quantitative data per Appendix F.1), it must be demonstrated that the configuration and design proposed for the project is reasonably consistent with the configuration and design under which the BMP was tested to demonstrate compliance with Appendix F.1.

F.2.2 Sizing of Flow-Based Biofiltration BMP

This sizing method is only available when the BMP meets the pollutant treatment performance standard in Appendix F.1.

Proprietary biofiltration BMPs are typically designed as a flow-based BMPs (i.e., a constant treatment capacity with negligible storage volume). Additionally, proprietary biofiltration is only acceptable if no infiltration is feasible and where site-specific documentation demonstrates that the use of larger footprint biofiltration BMPs would be infeasible. The applicable sizing method for biofiltration is therefore reduced to: Treat 1.5 times the DCV.

The following steps should be followed to demonstrate that the system is sized to treat 1.5 times the DCV.

1. Calculate the flow rate required to meet the pollutant treatment performance standard without scaling for the 1.5 factor. Options include either:
 - Calculate the runoff flow rate from a 0.2 inch per hour uniform intensity precipitation event (See methodology Appendix B.6.3), or
 - Conduct a continuous simulation analysis to compute the size required to capture and treat 80 percent of average annual runoff; for small catchments, 5-minute precipitation data should be used to account for short time of concentration. Nearest rain gage with 5-minute precipitation data is allowed for this analysis.
2. Multiply the flow rate from Step 1 by 1.5 to compute the design flow rate for the biofiltration system.
3. Based on the conditions of certification/verification (discussed above), establish the design capacity, as a flow rate, of a given sized unit.
4. Demonstrates that an appropriate unit size and number of units is provided to provide a flow rate that meets the required flow rate from Step 2.



Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

G.1 Guidance for Continuous Simulation Hydrologic Modeling for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego County Region 9

G.1.1 Introduction

Continuous simulation hydrologic modeling is used to demonstrate compliance with the performance standards for hydromodification management in San Diego. There are several available hydrologic models that can perform continuous simulation analyses. Each has different methods and parameters for determining the amount of rainfall that becomes runoff, and for representing the hydraulic operations of certain structural BMPs such as biofiltration with partial retention or biofiltration. This Appendix is intended to:

- Identify acceptable models for continuous simulation hydrologic analyses for hydromodification management;
- Provide guidance for selecting climatology input to the models;
- Provide standards for rainfall loss parameters to be used in the models;
- Provide standards for defining physical characteristics of LID components; and
- Provide guidance for demonstrating compliance with performance standards for hydromodification management.

This Appendix is not a user's manual for any of the acceptable models, nor a comprehensive manual for preparing a hydrologic model. This Appendix provides guidance for selecting model input parameters for the specific purpose of hydromodification management studies. The model preparer must be familiar with the user's manual for the selected software to determine how the parameters are entered to the model.

G1.2 Software for Continuous Simulation Hydrologic Modeling

The following software models may be used for hydromodification management studies in San Diego:

- HSPF – Hydrologic Simulation Program-FORTRAN, distributed by USEPA, public domain.
- SDHM – San Diego Hydrology Model, distributed by Clear Creek Solutions, Inc. This is an HSPF-based model with a proprietary interface that has been customized for use in San Diego for hydromodification management studies.
- SWMM – Storm Water Management Model, distributed by USEPA, public domain.

Third-party and proprietary software, such as XPSWMM or PCSWMM, may be used for hydromodification management studies in San Diego, provided that:

- Input and output data from the software can interface with public domain software such as SWMM. In other words, input files from the third party software should have sufficient functionality to allow export to public domain software for independent validation.
- The software's hydromodification control processes are substantiated.

G.1.3 Climatology Parameters

G.1.3.1 Rainfall

In all software applications for preparation of hydromodification management studies in San Diego, rainfall data must be selected from approved data sets that have been prepared for this purpose. As part of the development of the March 2011 Final HMP, long-term hourly rainfall records were prepared for public use. The rainfall record files are provided on the Project Clean Water website. The rainfall station map is provided in the March 2011 Final HMP and is included in this Appendix as Figure G.1-1.

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

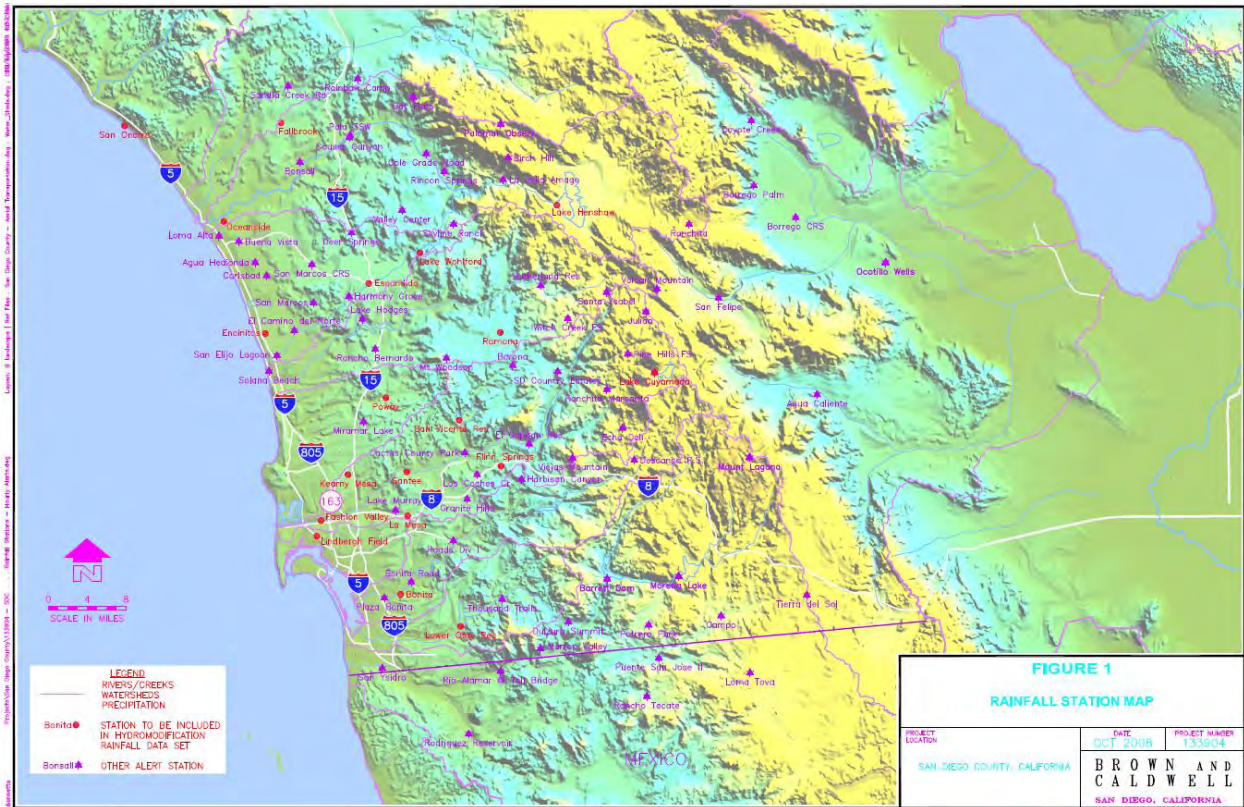


Figure 0-1: Rainfall Station Map

Project applicants preparing continuous simulation models shall select the most appropriate rainfall data set from the rainfall record files provided on the Project Clean Water website. For a given project location, the following factors should be considered in the selection of the appropriate rainfall data set:

- In most cases, the rainfall data set in closest proximity to the project site will be the appropriate choice (refer to the rainfall station map).
- In some cases, the rainfall data set in closest proximity to the project site may not be the most applicable data set. Such a scenario could involve a data set with an elevation significantly different from the project site. In addition to a simple elevation comparison, the project proponent may also consult with the San Diego County’s average annual precipitation isopluvial map, which is provided in the San Diego County Hydrology Manual (2003). Review of this map could provide an initial estimate as to whether the project site is in a similar rainfall zone as compared to the rainfall stations. Generally, precipitation totals in San Diego County increase with increasing elevation.
- Where possible, rainfall data sets should be chosen so that the data set and the project location are both located in the same topographic zone (coastal, foothill, mountain) and

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

major watershed unit (Upper San Luis Rey, Lower San Luis Rey, Upper San Diego River, Lower San Diego River, etc.).

For SDHM users, the approved rainfall data sets are pre-loaded into the software package. SDHM users may select the appropriate rainfall gage within the SDHM program. HSPF or SWMM users shall download the appropriate rainfall record from the Project Clean Water website and load it into the software program.

Both the pre-development and post-project model simulation period shall encompass the entire rainfall record provided in the approved rainfall data set. Scaling the rainfall data is not permitted.

G.1.3.2 Potential Evapotranspiration

Project applicants preparing continuous simulation models shall select a data set from the sources described below to represent potential evapotranspiration.

For HSPF users, this parameter may be entered as an hourly time series. The hourly time series that was used to develop the BMP Sizing Calculator parameters is provided on the project clean water website and may be used for hydromodification management studies in San Diego. For SDHM users, the hourly evaporation data set is pre-loaded into the program. HSPF users may download the evaporation record from the Project Clean Water website and load it into the software program.

For HSPF or SWMM users, this parameter may be entered as monthly values in inches per month or inches per day. Monthly values may be obtained from the California Irrigation Management Information System "Reference Evapotranspiration Zones" brochure and map (herein "CIMIS ETo Zone Map"), prepared by California Department of Water Resources, dated January 2012. The CIMIS ETo Zone Map is available from www.cimis.gov, and is provided in this Appendix as Figure G.1-2. Determine the appropriate reference evapotranspiration zone for the project from the CIMIS ETo Zone Map. The monthly average reference evapotranspiration values are provided below in Table G.1-1.

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

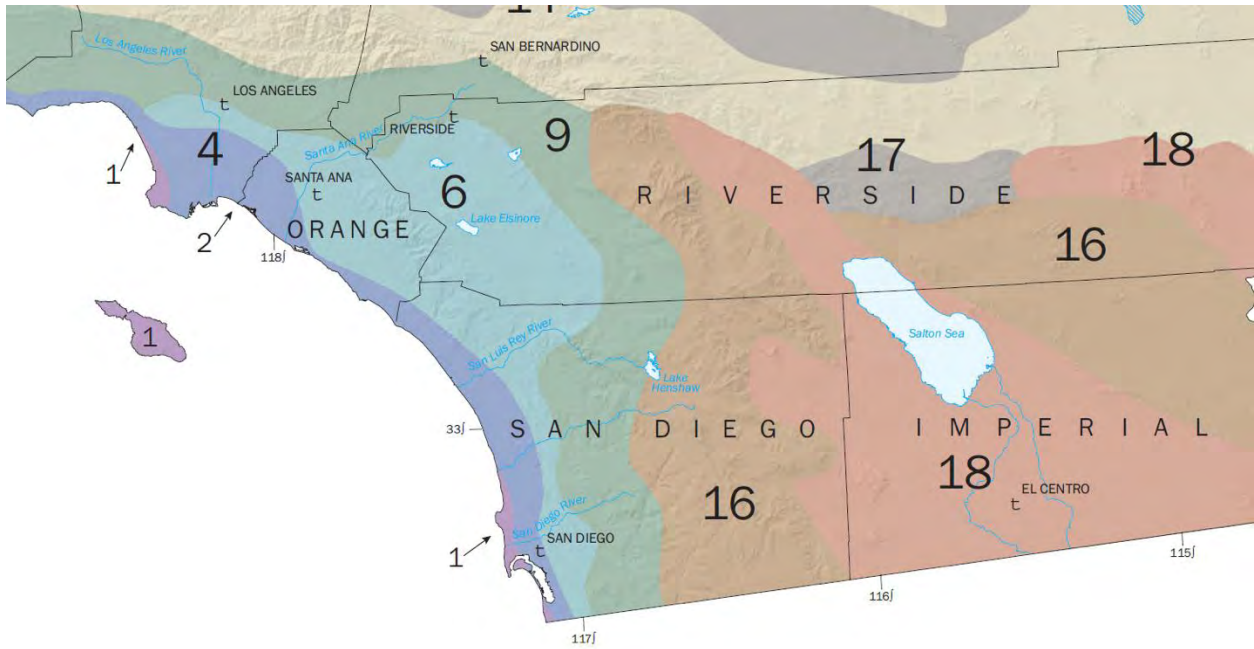


Figure 0-2: California Irrigation Management Information System "Reference Evapotranspiration Zones"

**Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing
Factors**

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

**Table 0-1: Monthly Average Reference Evapotranspiration by ETo Zone
(inches/month and inches/day) for use in SWMM Models for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego County
CIMIS Zones 1, 4, 6, 9, and 16 (See CIMIS ETo Zone Map)**

	January	February	March	April	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December
Zone	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month	in/month
1	0.93	1.4	2.48	3.3	4.03	4.5	4.65	4.03	3.3	2.48	1.2	0.62
4	1.86	2.24	3.41	4.5	5.27	5.7	5.89	5.58	4.5	3.41	2.4	1.86
6	1.86	2.24	3.41	4.8	5.58	6.3	6.51	6.2	4.8	3.72	2.4	1.86
9	2.17	2.8	4.03	5.1	5.89	6.6	7.44	6.82	5.7	4.03	2.7	1.86
16	1.55	2.52	4.03	5.7	7.75	8.7	9.3	8.37	6.3	4.34	2.4	1.55
	January	February	March	April	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December
Days	31	28	31	30	31	30	31	31	30	31	30	31
Zone	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day	in/day
1	0.030	0.050	0.080	0.110	0.130	0.150	0.150	0.130	0.110	0.080	0.040	0.020
4	0.060	0.080	0.110	0.150	0.170	0.190	0.190	0.180	0.150	0.110	0.080	0.060
6	0.060	0.080	0.110	0.160	0.180	0.210	0.210	0.200	0.160	0.120	0.080	0.060
9	0.070	0.100	0.130	0.170	0.190	0.220	0.240	0.220	0.190	0.130	0.090	0.060
16	0.050	0.090	0.130	0.190	0.250	0.290	0.300	0.270	0.210	0.140	0.080	0.050

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

G.1.4 Land Characteristics and Loss Parameters

In all software applications for preparation of hydromodification management studies in San Diego, rainfall loss parameters must be consistent with this Appendix unless the preparer can provide documentation to substantiate use of other parameters, subject to local jurisdiction approval. HSPF and SWMM use different processes and different sets of parameters. SDHM is based on HSPF, therefore parameters for SDHM and HSPF are presented together in Section G.1.4.1. Parameters that have been pre-loaded into SDHM may be used for other HSPF hydromodification management studies outside of SDHM. Parameters for SWMM are presented separately in Section G.1.4.2.

G.1.4.1 Rainfall Loss Parameters for HSPF and SDHM

Rainfall losses in HSPF are characterized by PERLND/PWATER parameters and IMPLND parameters, which describe processes occurring when rainfall lands on pervious lands and impervious lands, respectively. "BASINS Technical Notice 6, Estimating Hydrology and Hydraulic Parameters for HSPF," prepared by the USEPA, dated July 2000, provides details regarding these parameters and summary tables of possible ranges of these parameters. Table G.1-2, excerpted from the above-mentioned document, presents the ranges of these parameters.

For HSPF studies for hydromodification management in San Diego, PERLND/PWATER parameters and IMPLND parameters shall fall within the "possible" range provided in EPA Technical Note 6. To select specific parameters, HSPF users may use the parameters established for development of the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator, and/or the parameters that have been established for SDHM. Parameters for the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator and SDHM are based on research conducted specifically for HSPF modeling in San Diego.

Documentation of parameters selected for the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator is presented in the document titled, San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology, prepared by Brown and Caldwell, dated January 2012 (herein "BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology"). The PERLND/PWATER parameters selected for development of the San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator represent a single composite pervious land cover that is representative of most pre-development conditions for sites that would commonly be managed by the BMP Sizing Calculator. The parameters shown below in Table G.1-3 are excerpted from the BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology.

**Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing
Factors**

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Table 0-2: HSPF PERLND/PWATER and IMPLND Parameters from EPA Technical Note 6

Name	Definition	Units	Range of Values				Function of ...	Comment
			Typical		Possible			
			Min	Max	Min	Max		
PWAT – PARM2								
FOREST	Fraction forest cover	none	0.0	0.50	0.0	0.95	Forest cover	Only impact when SNOW is active
LZSN	Lower Zone Nominal Soil Moisture Storage	inches	3.0	8.0	2.0	15.0	Soils, climate	Calibration
INFILT	Index to Infiltration Capacity	in/hr	0.01	0.25	0.001	0.50	Soils, land use	Calibration , divides surface and subsurface flow
LSUR	Length of overland flow	feet	200	500	100	700	Topography	Estimate from high resolution topo maps or GIS
SLSUR	Slope of overland flow plane	ft/ft	0.01	0.15	0.001	0.30	Topography	Estimate from high resolution topo maps or GIS
KVARY	Variable groundwater recession	1/inches	0.0	3.0	0.0	5.0	Baseflow recession variation	Used when recession rate varies with GW levels
AGWRC	Base groundwater recession	none	0.92	0.99	0.85	0.999	Baseflow recession	Calibration
PWAT – PARM3								
PETMAX	Temp below which ET is reduced	deg. F	35.0	45.0	32.0	48.0	Climate, vegetation	Reduces ET near freezing, when SNOW is active
PETMIN	Temp below which ET is set to zero	deg. F	30.0	35.0	30.0	40.0	Climate, vegetation	Reduces ET near freezing, when SNOW is active
INFEXP	Exponent in infiltration equation	none	2.0	2.0	1.0	3.0	Soils variability	Usually default to 2.0
INFILD	Ratio of max/mean infiltration capacities	none	2.0	2.0	1.0	3.0	Soils variability	Usually default to 2.0
DEEPR	Fraction of GW inflow to deep recharge	none	0.0	0.20	0.0	0.50	Geology, GW recharge	Accounts for subsurface losses
BASETP	Fraction of remaining ET from baseflow	none	0.0	0.05	0.0	0.20	Riparian vegetation	Direct ET from riparian vegetation
AGWETP	Fraction of remaining ET from active GW	none	0.0	0.05	0.0	0.20	Marsh/wetlands extent	Direct ET from shallow GW
PWAT – PARM4								
CEPSC	Interception storage capacity	inches	0.03	0.20	0.01	0.40	Vegetation type/density, land use	Monthly values usually used
UZSN	Upper zone nominal soil moisture storage	inches	0.10	1.0	0.05	2.0	Surface soil conditions, land use	Accounts for near surface retention
NSUR	Manning's n (roughness) for overland flow	none	0.15	0.35	0.05	0.50	Surface conditions, residue, etc.	Monthly values often used for croplands
INTFW	Interflow inflow parameter	none	1.0	3.0	1.0	10.0	Soils, topography, land use	Calibration , based on hydrograph separation
IRC	Interflow recession parameter	none	0.5	0.70	0.30	0.85	Soils, topography, land use	Often start with a value of 0.7, and then adjust
LZETP	Lower zone ET parameter	none	0.2	0.70	0.1	0.9	Vegetation type/density, root depth	Calibration

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

IWAT – PARM2								
LSUR	Length of overland flow	feet	50	150	50	250	Topography, drainage system	Estimate from maps, GIS, or field survey
SLSUR	Slope of overland flow plane	ft/ft	0.01	0.05	0.001	0.15	Topography, drainage	Estimate from maps, GIS, or field survey
NSUR	Manning's n (roughness) for overland flow	none	0.03	0.10	0.01	0.15	Impervious surface conditions	Typical range is 0.05 to 0.10 for roads/parking lots
RETSC	Retention storage capacity	inches	0.03	0.10	0.01	0.30	Impervious surface conditions	Typical range is 0.03 to 0.10 for roads/parking lots
IWAT – PARM3 (PETMAX and PETMIN, same values as shown for PWAT – PARM3)								

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Table 0-3: HSPF PERLND/PWATER Parameters from BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology

	Slope	Hydrologic Soil Group A			Hydrologic Soil Group B			Hydrologic Soil Group C			Hydrologic Soil Group D		
		5%	10%	15%	5%	10%	15%	5%	10%	15%	5%	10%	15%
PWAT_PAR M2	Units												
FOREST	None	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
LZSN	inches	5.2	4.8	4.5	5.0	4.7	4.4	4.8	4.5	4.2	4.8	4.5	4.2
INFILT	in/hr	0.090	0.070	0.045	0.070	0.055	0.040	0.050	0.040	0.032	0.040	0.030	0.020
LSUR	Feet	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200	200
SLSUR	ft/ft	0.05	0.1	0.15	0.05	0.1	0.15	0.05	0.1	0.15	0.05	0.1	0.15
KVARY	1/inches	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
AGWRC	None	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92	0.92
PWAT_PAR M3													
PETMAX (F)	F	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35	35
PETMIN (F)	F	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30	30
INFEXP	None	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
INFILD	None	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
DEEPPFR	None	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4
BASETP	None	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05
AGEWTP	None	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05
PWAT_PAR M4													
CEPSC	inches	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08	0.08
UZSN	inches	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6
NSUR	None	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2
INTFW	None	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
IRC	None	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7
LZETP	None	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Parameters within SDHM are documented in "San Diego Hydrology Model User Manual," prepared by Clear Creek Solutions, Inc. (as of the development of the Manual, the current version of the SDHM User Manual is dated January 2012). Parameters established for SDHM represent "grass" (non-turf grasslands), "dirt," "gravel," and "urban" cover. The documented PERLND and IMPLND parameters for the various land covers and soil types have been pre-loaded into SDHM. SDHM users shall use the parameters that have been pre-loaded into the program without modification unless the preparer can provide documentation to substantiate use of other parameters.

G.1.4.2 Rainfall Loss Parameters for SWMM

In SWMM, rainfall loss parameters (parameters that describe processes occurring when rainfall lands on pervious lands and impervious lands) are entered in the "subcatchment" module. In addition to specifying parameters, the SWMM user must also select an infiltration model.

The SWMM Manual provides details regarding the subcatchment parameters and summary tables of possible ranges of these parameters. For SWMM studies for hydromodification management in San Diego, subcatchment parameters shall fall within the range provided in the SWMM Manual. Some of the parameters depend on the selection of the infiltration model. For consistency across the San Diego region, SWMM users shall use the Green-Ampt infiltration model for hydromodification management studies. Table G.1-4 presents SWMM subcatchment parameters for use in hydromodification management studies in the San Diego region.

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Table 0-4: Subcatchment Parameters for SWMM Studies for Hydromodification Management in San Diego

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Range	Use in San Diego
Name X-Coordinate Y-Coordinate Description Tag Rain Gage Outlet	N/A	N/A – project-specific	Project-specific
Area	acres (ac)	Project-specific	Project-specific
Width	feet (ft)	Project-specific	Project-specific
% Slope	percent (%)	Project-specific	Project-specific
% Imperv	percent (%)	Project-specific	Project-specific
N-imperv	--	0.011 – 0.024 presented in Table A.6 of SWMM Manual	default use 0.012 for smooth concrete, otherwise provide documentation of other surface consistent with Table A.6 of SWMM Manual
N-Perv	--	0.05 – 0.80 presented in Table A.6 of SWMM Manual	default use 0.15 for short prairie grass, otherwise provide documentation of other surface consistent with Table A.6 of SWMM Manual
Dstore-Imperv	inches	0.05 – 0.10 inches presented in Table A.5 of SWMM Manual	0.05
Dstore-Perv	inches	0.10 – 0.30 inches presented in Table A.5 of SWMM Manual	0.10
%ZeroImperv	percent (%)	0% – 100%	25%
Subarea routing	--	OUTLET IMPERVIOUS PERVIOUS	Project-specific, typically OUTLET
Percent Routed	%	0% – 100%	Project-specific, typically 100%
Infiltration	Method	HORTON GREEN_AMPT CURVE_NUMBER	GREEN_AMPT

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Range	Use in San Diego
Suction Head (Green-Ampt)	Inches	1.93 – 12.60 presented in Table A.2 of SWMM Manual	Hydrologic Soil Group A: 1.5 Hydrologic Soil Group B: 3.0 Hydrologic Soil Group C: 6.0 Hydrologic Soil Group D: 9.0
Conductivity (Green-Ampt)	Inches per hour	0.01 – 4.74 presented in Table A.2 of SWMM Manual by soil texture class 0.00 – ≥ 0.45 presented in Table A.3 of SWMM Manual by hydrologic soil group	Hydrologic Soil Group A: 0.3 Hydrologic Soil Group B: 0.2 Hydrologic Soil Group C: 0.1 Hydrologic Soil Group D: 0.025 Note: reduce conductivity by 25% in the post-project condition when native soils will be compacted. For fill soils in post-project condition, see Section G.1.4.3.
Initial Deficit (Green-Ampt)		The difference between soil porosity and initial moisture content. Based on the values provided in Table A.2 of SWMM Manual, the range for completely dry soil would be 0.097 to 0.375	Hydrologic Soil Group A: 0.30 Hydrologic Soil Group B: 0.31 Hydrologic Soil Group C: 0.32 Hydrologic Soil Group D: 0.33 Note: in long-term continuous simulation, this value is not important as the soil will reach equilibrium after a few storm events regardless of the initial moisture content specified.
Groundwater	yes/no	yes/no	NO
LID Controls			Project Specific
Snow Pack Land Uses Initial Buildup Curb Length			Not applicable to hydromodification management studies

G.1.4.3 Pervious Area Rainfall Loss Parameters in Post-Project Condition (HSPF, SDHM, and SWMM)

The following guidance applies to HSPF, SDHM, and SWMM. When modeling pervious areas in the post-project condition, fill soils shall be modeled as hydrologic soil group Type D soils, or the project applicant may provide an actual expected infiltration rate for the fill soil based on testing (must be approved by the City Engineer for use in the model). Where landscaped areas on fill soils will be re-tilled and/or amended in the post-project condition, the landscaped areas may be modeled as Type C soils. Areas to be re-tilled and/or amended in the post-project condition must be shown on the project plans. For undisturbed pervious areas (i.e., native soils, no fill), use the actual hydrologic soil group, the same as in the pre-development condition.

G.1.5 Modeling Structural BMPs (Ponds And Lid Features)

There are many ways to model structural BMPs. There are standard modules for several pond or LID elements included in SDHM and SWMM. Users may also set up project-specific stage-storage-discharge relationships representing structural BMPs. Regardless of the modeling method, certain characteristics of the structural BMP, including infiltration of water from the bottom of the structural BMP into native soils, porosity of bioretention soils and/or gravel sublayers, and other program-specific parameters must be consistent with those presented below, unless the preparer can provide documentation to substantiate use of other parameters, subject to local jurisdiction approval. The geometry of structural BMPs is project-specific and shall match the project plans.

G.1.5.1 Infiltration into Native Soils Below Structural BMPs

Infiltration into native soils below structural BMPs may be modeled as a constant outflow rate equal to the project site-specific design infiltration rate (Worksheet D.5-1) multiplied by the area of the infiltrating surface (and converted to cubic feet per second). This infiltration rate is not the same as an infiltration parameter used in the calculation of rainfall losses, such as the HSPF INFILT parameter or the Green-Ampt conductivity parameter in the SWMM subcatchment module. It must be site-specific and must be determined based on the methods presented in Appendix D of this manual.

For preliminary analysis when site-specific geotechnical investigation has not been completed, project applicants proposing infiltration into native soils as part of the structural BMP design shall prepare a sensitivity analysis to determine a potential range for the structural BMP size based on a range of potential infiltration rates. As shown in Appendices C and D of this manual, many factors influence the ability to infiltrate storm water. Therefore even when soils types A and B are present, which are generally expected to infiltrate storm water, the possibility that a very low infiltration rate

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

could be determined at design level must be considered. The range of potential infiltration rates for preliminary analysis is shown below in Table G.1-5.

Table 0-5: Range of Potential Infiltration Rates to be Studied for Sensitivity Analysis when Native Infiltration is Proposed but Site-Specific Geotechnical Investigation has not been Completed

Hydrologic Soil Group at Location of Proposed Structural BMP	Low Infiltration Rate for Preliminary Study (inches/hour)	High Infiltration Rate for Preliminary Study (inches/hour)
A	0.02	2.4
B	0.02	0.52
C	0	0.08
D	0	0.02

The infiltration rates shown above are for preliminary investigation only. Final design of a structural BMP must be based on the project site-specific design infiltration rate (Worksheet D.5-1).

G.1.5.2 Structural BMPs That Do Not Include Sub-Layers (Ponds)

To model a pond, basin, or other depressed area that does not include processing runoff through sublayers of amended soil and/or gravel, create a stage storage discharge relationship for the pond, and supply the information to the model according to the program requirements. For HSPF users, the stage-storage-discharge relationship is provided in FTABLES. SDHM users may use the TRAPEZOIDAL POND element for a trapezoidal pond or IRREGULAR POND element to request the program to create the stage-storage-discharge relationship, use the SSD TABLE element to supply a user-created stage-storage-discharge relationship, or use other available modules such as TANK or VAULT. For SWMM users, the stage-storage relationship is supplied in the storage unit module, and the stage-discharge relationship may be represented by various other modules such as the orifice, weir, or outlet modules. Stage-storage and stage-discharge curves for structural BMPs must be fully documented in the project-specific HMP report and must be consistent with the structural BMP(s) shown on project plans.

For user-created stage-discharge relationships, refer to local drainage manual criteria for equations representing hydraulic behavior of outlet structures. Users relying on the software to develop the stage-discharge relationship may use the equations built into the program. This manual does not recommend that all program modules calculating stage-discharge relationships must be uniform because the flows to be controlled for hydromodification management are low flows, calculated differently from the single-storm event peak flows studied for flood control purposes, and hydromodification management performance standards do not represent any performance standard for flood control drainage design. Note that for design of emergency outlet structures, and any

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

calculations related to single-storm event routing for flood control drainage design, stage-discharge calculations must be consistent with the local drainage design requirements. This may require separate calculations for stage-discharge relationship pursuant to local manuals. The HMP flow rates shall not be used for flood control calculations.

G.1.5.3 Structural BMPs That Include Sub-Layers (Bioretention and Other LID)

G.1.5.3.1 Characteristics of Engineered Soil Media

The engineered soil media used in bioretention, biofiltration with partial retention, and biofiltration structural BMPs is a sandy loam. The following parameters presented in Table G.1-6 are characteristics of a sandy loam for use in continuous simulation models.

Table 0-6: Characteristics of Sandy Loam to Represent Engineered Soil Media in Continuous Simulation for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego

Soil Texture	Porosity	Field Capacity	Wilting Point	Conductivity	Suction Head
Sandy Loam	0.4	0.2	0.1	5 inches/hour	1.5 inches

- Porosity is the volume of pore space (voids) relative to the total volume of soil (as a fraction).
- Field Capacity is the volume of pore water relative to total volume after the soil has been allowed to drain fully (as a fraction). Below this level, vertical drainage of water through the soil layer does not occur.
- Wilting point is the volume of pore water relative to total volume for a well dried soil where only bound water remains (as a fraction). The moisture content of the soil cannot fall below this limit.
- Conductivity is the hydraulic conductivity for the fully saturated soil (in/hr or mm/hr).
- Suction head is the average value of soil capillary suction along the wetting front (inches or mm).

Figures G.1-3 and G.1-4, from <http://www.stevenswater.com/articles/irrigationscheduling.aspx>, illustrate unsaturated soil and soil saturation, field capacity, and wilting point.

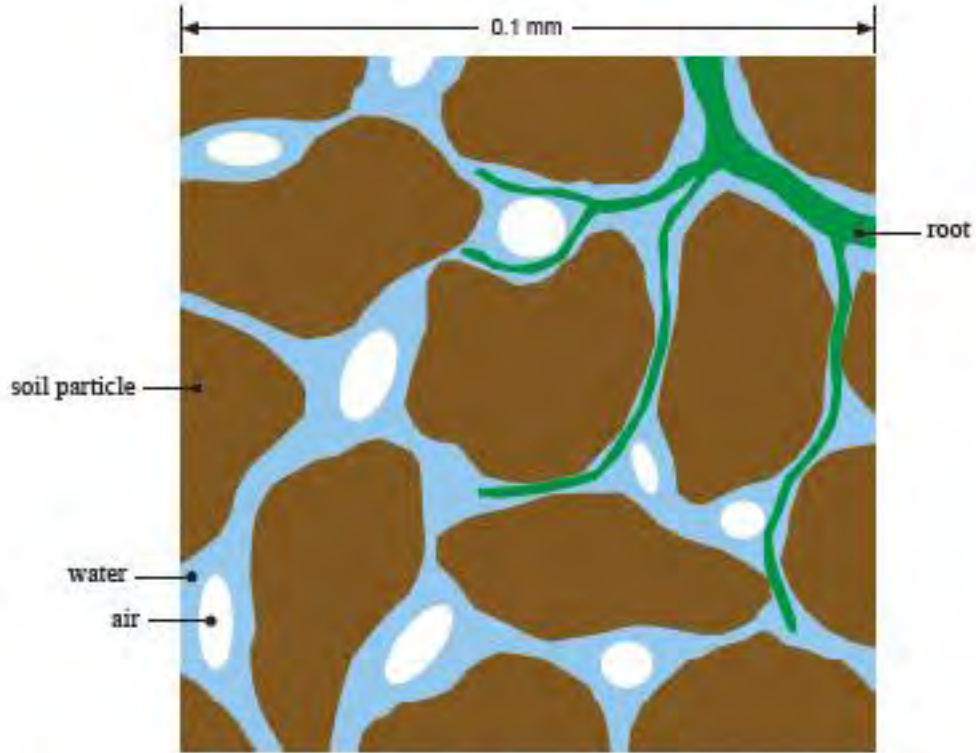


Figure 0-3: Unsaturated Soil Composition

Unsaturated soil is composed of solid particles, organic material and pores. The pore space will contain air and water.

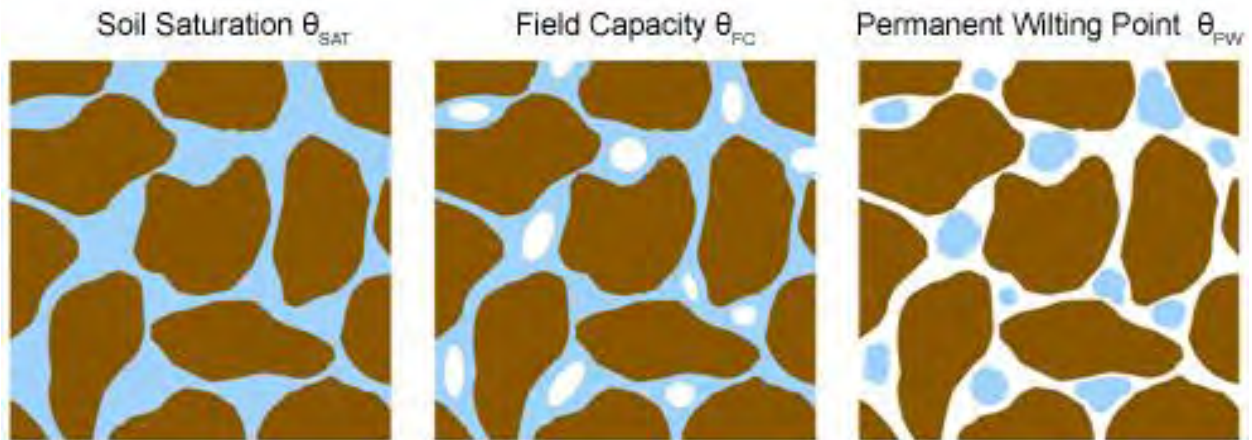


Figure 0-4: Soil saturation, field capacity, and wilting point

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

G.1.5.3.2 Characteristics of Gravel

For the purpose of hydromodification management studies, it may be assumed that water moves freely through gravel, not limited by hydraulic properties of the gravel. For the purpose of calculating available volume, use porosity of 0.4, or void ratio of 0.67. Porosity is equal to void ratio divided by (1 + void ratio).

G.1.5.3.3 Additional Guidance for SDHM Users

The module titled "bioretention/rain garden element" may be used to represent bioretention or biofiltration BMPs. SDHM users using the available "bioretention/rain garden element" shall customize the soil media characteristics to use the parameters from Table G.1-6 above, and select "gravel" for gravel sublayers. All other input variables are project-specific. "Native infiltration" refers to infiltration from the bottom of the structural BMP into the native soil. This variable is project-specific, see Section G.1.5.1.

G.1.5.3.4 Additional Guidance for SWMM Users

The "bio-retention cell" LID control may be used to represent bioretention or biofiltration BMPs. Table G.1-7 provides parameters required for the standard "bio-retention cell" available in SWMM. The parameters are entered in the LID Control Editor.

Table 0-7: Parameters for SWMM "Bio-Retention Cell" Module for Hydromodification Management Studies in San Diego

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Use in San Diego
<i>Surface</i>		
Berm Height also known as Storage Depth	inches	Project-specific
Vegetative Volume Fraction also known as Vegetative Cover Fraction	---	0
Surface Roughness	---	0 (this parameter is not applicable to bio-retention cell)
Surface Slope	---	0 (this parameter is not applicable to bio-retention cell)
<i>Soil</i>		
Thickness	inches	project-specific
Porosity	---	0.40
Field Capacity	---	0.2

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

SWMM Parameter Name	Unit	Use in San Diego
Wilting Point	---	0.1
Conductivity	Inches/hour	5
Conductivity Slope	---	5
Suction Head	inches	1.5
<i>Storage</i>		
Thickness also known as Height	inches	Project-specific
Void Ratio	---	0.67
Seepage Rate also known as Conductivity	Inches/hour	Conductivity from the storage layer refers to infiltration from the bottom of the structural BMP into the native soil. This variable is project-specific, see Section G.5.1. Use 0 if the bio-retention cell includes an impermeable liner
Clogging Factor	---	0
<i>Underdrain</i>		
Flow Coefficient Also known as Drain Coefficient	---	Project-specific
Flow Exponent Also known as Drain Exponent	---	Project-specific, typically 0.5
Offset Height Also known as Drain Offset Height	Inches	Project-specific

G.1.6 Flow Frequency and Duration

The continuous simulation model will generate an hourly flow record as its output. This hourly flow record must then be processed to determine pre-development and post-project flow rates and durations. Compliance with hydromodification management requirements of this manual is achieved when results for flow frequency and duration meet the performance standards. The performance standards are as follows (also presented in Chapter 6 of this manual):

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

1. For flow rates ranging from 10 percent, 30 percent or 50 percent of the pre-development 2-year runoff event ($0.1Q_2$, $0.3Q_2$, or $0.5Q_2$) to the pre-development 10-year runoff event (Q_{10}), the post-project discharge rates and durations shall not deviate above the pre-development rates and durations by more than 10 percent over and more than 10 percent of the length of the flow duration curve. The specific lower flow threshold will depend on the erosion susceptibility of the receiving stream for the project site (see Section 6.3.4).
2. For flow rates ranging from the lower flow threshold to Q_5 , the post-project peak flows shall not exceed pre-development peak flows. For flow rates from Q_5 to Q_{10} , post-project peak flows may exceed pre-development flows by up to 10 percent for a 1-year frequency interval. For example, post-project flows could exceed pre-development flows by up to 10 percent for the interval from Q_9 to Q_{10} or from $Q_{5.5}$ to $Q_{6.5}$, but not from Q_8 to Q_{10} .

To demonstrate that a flow control facility meets hydromodification management performance standards, peak flow frequency curves and flow duration summary must be generated and compared for pre-development and post-project conditions. The following guidelines shall be used for determining flow rates and durations.

G.1.6.1 Determining Flow Rates from Continuous Hourly Flow Output

Flow rates for hydromodification management studies in San Diego must be based on partial duration series analysis of the continuous hourly flow output. Partial duration series frequency calculations consider multiple storm events in a given year. To construct the partial duration series:

1. Parse the continuous hourly flow data into discrete runoff events. The following separation criteria may be used for separation of flow events: a new discrete event is designated when the flow falls below an artificially low flow value based on a fraction of the contributing watershed area (e.g., 0.002 to 0.005 cfs/acre) for a time period of 24 hours. Project applicants may consider other separation criteria provided the separation interval is not more than 24 hours and the criteria is clearly described in the submittal document.
2. Rank the peak flows from each discrete flow event, and compute the return interval or plotting position for each event.

Readers who are unfamiliar with how to compute the partial-duration series should consult reference books or online resources for additional information. For example, *Hydrology for Engineers*, by Linsley et al, 1982, discusses partial-duration series on pages 373-374 and computing recurrence intervals or plotting positions on page 359. *Handbook of Applied Hydrology*, by Chow, 1964, contains a detailed discussion of flow frequency analysis, including Annual Exceedance, Partial-Duration and Extreme Value series methods, in Chapter 8. The US Geological Survey (USGS) has several hydrologic study reports available online that use partial duration series statistics (see <http://water.usgs.gov/> and http://water.usgs.gov/osw/bulletin17b/AGU_Langbein_1949.pdf)

Pre-development Q_2 and Q_{10} shall be determined from the partial duration analysis for the pre-development hourly flow record. Pre-development Q_{10} is the upper threshold of flow rates to be

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

controlled in the post-project condition. The lower flow threshold is a fraction of the pre-development Q_2 determined based on the erosion susceptibility of the receiving stream. Simply multiply the pre-development Q_2 by the appropriate fraction (e.g., $0.1Q_2$) to determine the lower flow threshold.

To prepare the peak flow frequency curves, use the return interval on the x-axis and the flow rate on the y-axis. Compare the post-project peak flow frequency curve to the pre-development peak flow frequency curve to determine if it meets performance criteria for post-project peak flows (criteria number 2 presented under Section G.1.6).

G.1.6.2 Determining Flow Durations from Continuous Hourly Flow Output

Flow durations must also be summarized within the range of flows to control. Flow duration statistics provide a simple summary of how often a particular flow rate is exceeded. To prepare this summary:

1. Rank the entire hourly runoff time series output.
2. Extract the portion of the ranked hourly time series output from the lower flow threshold to the upper flow threshold – this is the portion of the record to be summarized.
3. Divide the applicable portion of the record into 100 equal flow bins (compute the difference between the upper flow threshold (cfs) and lower flow threshold (cfs) and divide this value by 99 to establish the flow bin size).
4. Count the number of hours of flow that fall into each flow bin.

Both pre-development and post-project flow duration summary must be based on the entire length of the flow record. Compare the post-project flow duration summary to the pre-development flow duration summary to determine if it meets performance criteria for post-project flow rates and durations (criteria number 1 presented under Section G.1.6).

G.2 Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Management BMPs

This section presents sizing factors for design of flow control structural BMPs based on the sizing factor method identified in Chapter 6.3.5.1. The sizing factors are re-printed from the "San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology," dated January 2012, prepared by Brown and Caldwell (herein "BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology"). The sizing factors are linked to the specific details and descriptions that were presented in the BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology, with limited options for modifications. The sizing factors were developed based on the 2007 MS4 Permit. Some of the original sizing factors developed based on the 2007 MS4 Permit and presented in the BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology are not compatible with new requirements of the 2013 MS4 Permit, and therefore are not included in this manual. The sizing factor method is intended for simple studies that do not include diversion, do not include significant offsite area draining through the project from upstream, and do not include offsite area downstream of the project area. Use of the sizing factors is limited to the specific structural BMPs described in this Appendix. Sizing factors are available for the following specific structural BMPs:

- Full infiltration condition:
 - **Infiltration:** sizing factors available for A and B soils represent a below-ground structure (dry well)
 - **Bioretention:** sizing factors available for A and B soils represent a bioretention area with engineered soil media and gravel storage layer, with no underdrain and no impermeable liner
- Partial infiltration condition:
 - **Biofiltration with partial retention:** sizing factors available for C and D soils represent a bioretention area with engineered soil media and gravel storage layer, with an underdrain, with gravel storage below the underdrain, with no impermeable liner
- No infiltration condition:
 - **Biofiltration:** sizing factors available for C and D soils represent a bioretention area with engineered soil media and gravel storage layer, with an underdrain, without gravel storage below the underdrain, with no impermeable liner

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

- **Biofiltration (formerly known as "flow-through planter") with impermeable liner:** sizing factors available for C and D soils represent a biofiltration system with engineered soil media and gravel storage layer, with an underdrain, with or without gravel storage below the underdrain, with an impermeable liner
- Other:
 - **Cistern:** sizing factors available for A, B, C, or D soils represent a vessel with a low flow orifice outlet to meet the hydromodification management performance standard.

Sizing factors were created based on three rainfall basins: Lindbergh Field, Oceanside, and Lake Wohlford.

The following information is needed to use the sizing factors:

- Determine the appropriate rainfall basin for the project site from Figure G.2-1, Rainfall Basin Map
- Hydrologic soil group at the project site (use available information pertaining to existing underlying soil type such as soil maps published by the Natural Resources Conservation Service)
- Pre-development and post-project slope categories (low = 0% – 5%, moderate = 5% – 10%, steep = >10%)
- Area tributary to the structural BMP
- Area weighted runoff factor (C) for the area draining to the BMP from Table G.2-1. Note: runoff coefficients and adjustments presented in Appendices B.1 and B.2 are for pollutant control only and are not applicable for hydromodification management studies
- Fraction of Q2 to control (see Chapter 6.3.4)

When using the sizing factor method, Worksheet G.2-1 may be used to present the calculations of the required minimum areas and/or volumes of BMPs as applicable.

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

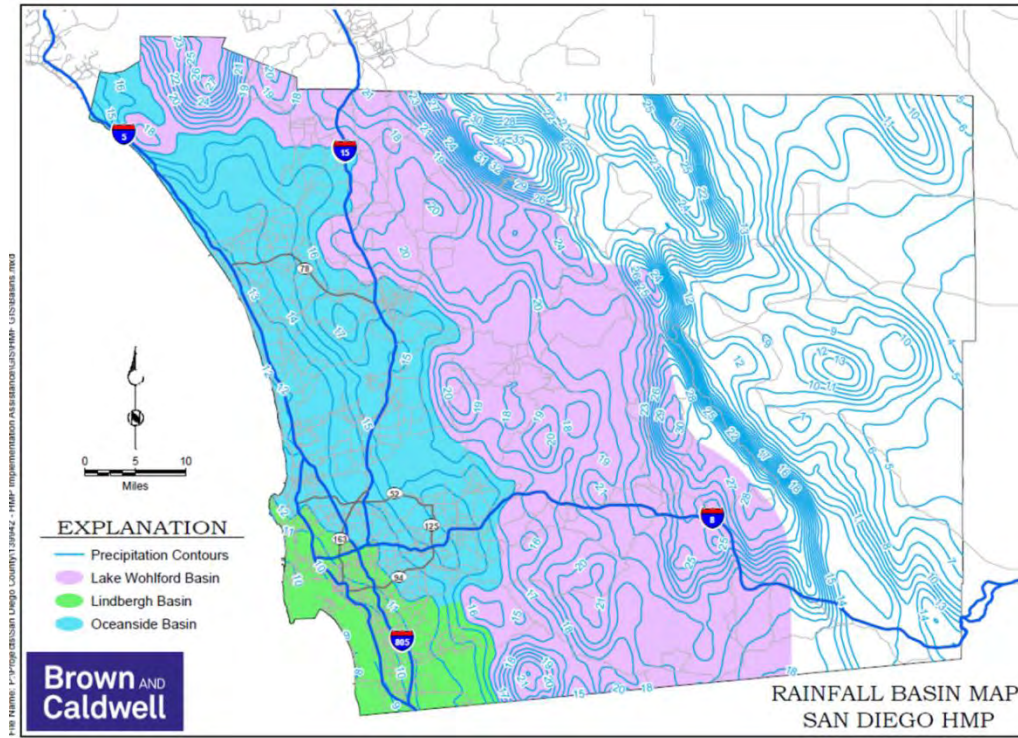


Figure 0-1: Appropriate Rain Gauge for Project Sites

Table 0-1: Runoff factors for surfaces draining to BMPs for Hydromodification Sizing Factor Method

Surface	Runoff Factor
Roofs	1.0
Concrete	1.0
Pervious Concrete	0.10
Porous Asphalt	0.10
Grouted Unit Pavers	1.0
Solid Unit Pavers on granular base, min. 3/16 inch joint space	0.20
Crushed Aggregate	0.10
Turf block	0.10
Amended, mulched soils	0.10
Landscape	0.10

**Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing
Factors**

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Worksheet 0-1: Sizing Factor Worksheet

Site Information			
Project Name:		Hydrologic Unit	
Project Applicant:		Rain: Gauge:	
Jurisdiction:		Total Project Area:	
Assessor's Parcel Number :		Low Flow Threshold:	
BMP Name:		BMP Type:	

Areas Draining to BMP						Sizing Factors			Minimum BMP Size		
DMA Name	Area (sf)	Soil Type	Slope	Post Project Surface Type	Runoff Factor (From Table G.2-1)	Surface Area	Surface Volume	Subsurface Volume	Surface Area (sf)	Surface Volume (cf)	Subsurface Volume (cf)
Total DMA Area									Minimum BMP Size*		
									Proposed BMP Size*		

*Minimum BMP Size = Total of rows above.

*Proposed BMP Size ≥ Minimum BMP size.

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

G.2.1 Unit Runoff Ratios

Table G.2-2 presents unit runoff ratios for calculating pre-development Q_2 , to be used when applicable to determine the lower flow threshold for low flow orifice sizing for biofiltration with partial retention, biofiltration, biofiltration with impermeable liner, or cistern BMPs. There is no low flow orifice in the infiltration BMP or bioretention BMP. The unit runoff ratios are re-printed from the BMP Sizing Calculator methodology. Unit runoff ratios for "urban" and "impervious" cover categories were not transferred to this manual due to the requirement to control runoff to pre-development condition (see Chapter 6.3.3).

How to use the unit runoff ratios:

Obtain unit runoff ratio from Table G.2-2 based on the project's rainfall basin, hydrologic soil group, and pre-development slope (for redevelopment projects, pre-development slope may be considered if historic topographic information is available, otherwise use pre-project slope). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, acres) by the unit runoff ratio (Q_2 , cfs/acre) to determine the pre-development Q_2 to determine the lower flow threshold, to use for low flow orifice sizing.

Table 0-2: Unit Runoff Ratios for Sizing Factor Method

Unit Runoff Ratios for Sizing Factor Method					
Rain Gauge	Soil	Cover	Slope	Q_2 (cfs/acre)	Q_{10} (cfs/ac)
Lake Wohlford	A	Scrub	Low	0.136	0.369
Lake Wohlford	A	Scrub	Moderate	0.207	0.416
Lake Wohlford	A	Scrub	Steep	0.244	0.47
Lake Wohlford	B	Scrub	Low	0.208	0.414
Lake Wohlford	B	Scrub	Moderate	0.227	0.448
Lake Wohlford	B	Scrub	Steep	0.253	0.482
Lake Wohlford	C	Scrub	Low	0.245	0.458
Lake Wohlford	C	Scrub	Moderate	0.253	0.481
Lake Wohlford	C	Scrub	Steep	0.302	0.517
Lake Wohlford	D	Scrub	Low	0.253	0.48
Lake Wohlford	D	Scrub	Moderate	0.292	0.516

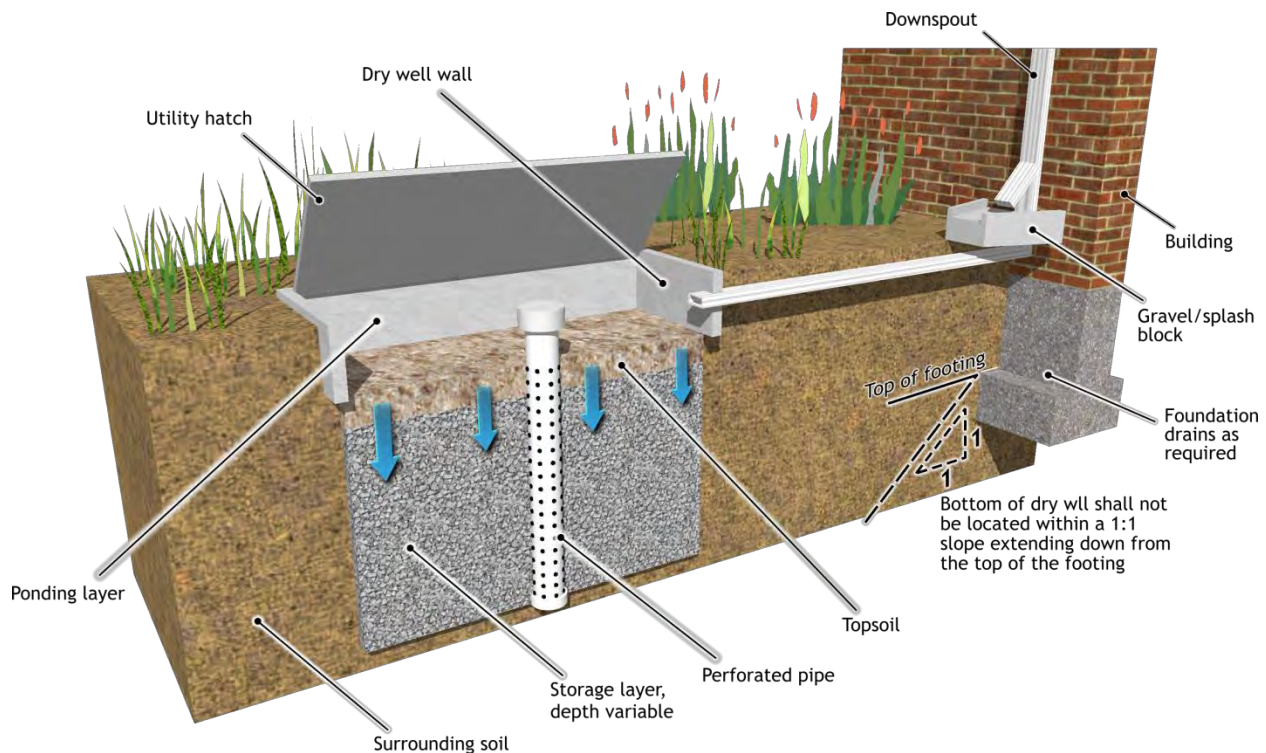
Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Unit Runoff Ratios for Sizing Factor Method					
Rain Gauge	Soil	Cover	Slope	Q ₂ (cfs/acre)	Q ₁₀ (cfs/ac)
Lake Wohlford	D	Scrub	Steep	0.351	0.538
Oceanside	A	Scrub	Low	0.035	0.32
Oceanside	A	Scrub	Moderate	0.093	0.367
Oceanside	A	Scrub	Steep	0.163	0.42
Oceanside	B	Scrub	Low	0.08	0.365
Oceanside	B	Scrub	Moderate	0.134	0.4
Oceanside	B	Scrub	Steep	0.181	0.433
Oceanside	C	Scrub	Low	0.146	0.411
Oceanside	C	Scrub	Moderate	0.185	0.433
Oceanside	C	Scrub	Steep	0.217	0.458
Oceanside	D	Scrub	Low	0.175	0.434
Oceanside	D	Scrub	Moderate	0.212	0.455
Oceanside	D	Scrub	Steep	0.244	0.571
Lindbergh	A	Scrub	Low	0.003	0.081
Lindbergh	A	Scrub	Moderate	0.018	0.137
Lindbergh	A	Scrub	Steep	0.061	0.211
Lindbergh	B	Scrub	Low	0.011	0.134
Lindbergh	B	Scrub	Moderate	0.033	0.174
Lindbergh	B	Scrub	Steep	0.077	0.23
Lindbergh	C	Scrub	Low	0.028	0.19
Lindbergh	C	Scrub	Moderate	0.075	0.232
Lindbergh	C	Scrub	Steep	0.108	0.274
Lindbergh	D	Scrub	Low	0.05	0.228
Lindbergh	D	Scrub	Moderate	0.104	0.266
Lindbergh	D	Scrub	Steep	0.143	0.319

G.2.2 Sizing Factors for "Infiltration" BMP

Table G.2-3 presents sizing factors for calculating the required surface area (A) and volume (V1) for an infiltration BMP. There is no underdrain and therefore no low flow orifice in the infiltration BMP. Sizing factors were developed for hydrologic soil groups A and B only. This BMP is not applicable in hydrologic soil groups C and D. The infiltration BMP is a below-ground structure (dry well) that consists of three layers:

- Ponding layer: a nominal 6-inch ponding layer should be included below the access hatch to allow for water spreading and infiltration during intense storms.
- Soil layer [topsoil layer]: 12 inches of soil should be included to remove pollutants.
- Free draining layer [storage layer]: The drywell is sized assuming a 6-foot deep free draining layer. However, designers could use shallower facility depths [provided the minimum volume and surface area are met].



Infiltration Facility BMP Example Illustration

Reference: "San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology," prepared by Brown and Caldwell, dated January 2012

How to use the sizing factors for flow control BMP Sizing:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-3 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q2, hydrologic soil group, post-project slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required surface area (A, square feet) and volume (V₁, cubic feet) for the infiltration BMP. The civil engineer shall provide the necessary volume and surface area of the BMP on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

To use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP, determine the size of the BMP using the sizing factors, then refer to Appendix B.4 to check whether the BMP meets performance standards for infiltration for pollutant control. If necessary, increase the surface area to meet the drawdown requirement for pollutant control.

Table 0-3: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Infiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Infiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.035	0.0910	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.058	0.1495	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.1430	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.050	0.1300	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.1560	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Infiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.078	0.2015	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.075	0.1950	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.065	0.1690	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.035	0.0910	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.058	0.1495	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.1430	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.050	0.1300	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Infiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.1560	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.078	0.2015	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.075	0.1950	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.065	0.1690	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.035	0.0910	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.058	0.1495	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.1430	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.050	0.1300	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Infiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.045	0.1170	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.1690	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.1560	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.050	0.1300	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.1040	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.078	0.2015	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.075	0.1950	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.065	0.1690	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A

Q₂ = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records

A = Surface area sizing factor for flow control

V₁ = Infiltration volume sizing factor for flow control

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Definitions for "N/A"

- Soil groups A and B: N/A in column V2 means there is no V2 element in this infiltration BMP for soil groups A and B
- Soil groups C and D: N/A across all elements (A, V1, V2) means sizing factors were not developed for an infiltration BMP for soil groups C and D

G.2.3 Sizing Factors for Bioretention

Table G.2-4 presents sizing factors for calculating the required surface area (A) and surface volume (V1) for the bioretention BMP. The bioretention BMP consists of two layers:

- Ponding layer: 10-inches active storage, [minimum] 2-inches of freeboard above overflow relief
- Growing medium: 18-inches of soil [bioretention soil media]

This BMP is applicable in soil groups A and B. This BMP does not include an underdrain or a low flow orifice. This BMP does not include an impermeable layer at the bottom of the facility to prevent infiltration into underlying soils, regardless of hydrologic soil group. If a facility is to be lined, the designer must use the sizing factors for biofiltration with impermeable layer (formerly known as "flow-through planter").

How to use the sizing factors for flow control BMP Sizing:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-4 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q2, hydrologic soil group, post-project slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required surface area (A, square feet) and surface volume (V1, cubic feet). Note the surface volume is the ponding layer. The BMP must also include 18 inches of bioretention soil media which does not contribute to V1. The civil engineer shall provide the necessary volume and surface area of the BMP on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

To use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP, determine the size of the BMP using the sizing factors, then refer to Appendix B.4 to check whether the BMP meets performance standards for infiltration for pollutant control. If necessary, adjust the surface area, depth of storage layer, or depth of growing medium as needed to meet pollutant control standards.

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Table 0-4: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Bioretention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Bioretention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.060	0.0500	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.0458	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.045	0.0375	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.093	0.0771	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.085	0.0708	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.065	0.0542	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.0500	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.098	0.0813	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.090	0.0750	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.0333	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Bioretention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.048	0.0396	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.0333	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.060	0.0500	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.0458	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.045	0.0375	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.098	0.0813	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.090	0.0750	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.070	0.0583	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.0500	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.098	0.0813	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.090	0.0750	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Bioretention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.0333	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.060	0.0500	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.055	0.0458	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	0.060	0.0500	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.055	0.0458	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	0.045	0.0375	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.095	0.0792	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	0.080	0.0667	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Bioretention BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.0500	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	0.103	0.0854	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	0.090	0.0750	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	0.040	0.0333	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	0.090	0.0750	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.085	0.0708	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A

Q₂ = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records

A = Surface area sizing factor for flow control

V₁ = Surface volume sizing factor for flow control

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Definitions for "N/A"

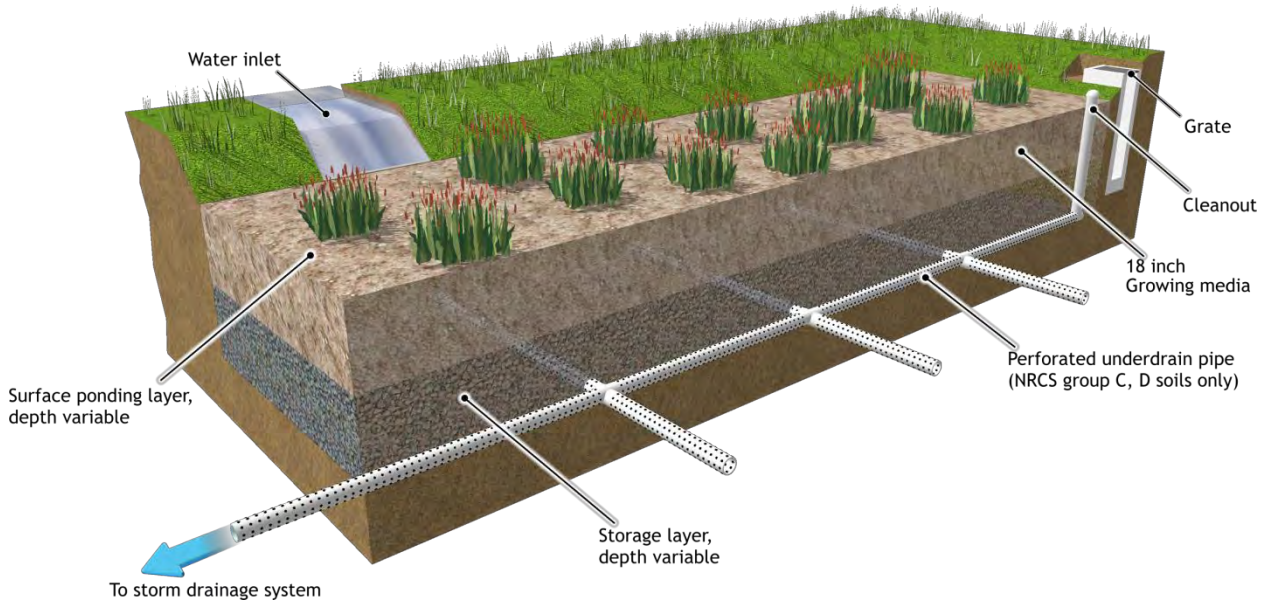
- Soil groups A and B: N/A in column V2 means there is no V2 element in this bioretention BMP for soil groups A and B
- Soil groups C and D: N/A in all elements (A, V1, V2) for soil groups C and D means sizing factors developed for "bioretention" in soil groups C and D under the 2007 MS4 Permit are not applicable in the "bioretention" category under the 2013 MS4 Permit because they were developed with the assumption that an underdrain is operating. Refer to Appendix G.2.4, Sizing Factors for Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration

G.2.4 Sizing Factors for Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration

Table G.2-5 presents sizing factors for calculating the required surface area (A), surface volume (V1), and sub-surface volume (V2) for a biofiltration with partial retention and biofiltration BMP. The BMPs consist of three layers:

- Ponding layer: 10-inches active storage, [minimum] 2-inches of freeboard above overflow relief
- Growing medium: 18-inches of soil [bioretention soil media]
- Storage layer: 30-inches of gravel at 40 percent porosity [18 inches active storage above underdrain is required, additional dead storage depth below underdrain is optional and can vary]

This BMP is applicable in soil groups C and D. This BMP includes an underdrain with a low flow orifice 18 inches (1.5 feet) below the bottom of the growing medium. This BMP can include additional dead storage below the underdrain. This BMP does not include an impermeable layer at the bottom of the facility to prevent infiltration into underlying soils, regardless of hydrologic soil group. If a facility is to be lined, the designer must use the sizing factors for biofiltration with impermeable liner (formerly known as "flow-through planter").



Biofiltration BMP Example Illustration

Reference: "San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology," prepared by Brown and Caldwell, dated January 2012

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

How to use the sizing factors for flow control BMP Sizing:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-5 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q₂, hydrologic soil group, post-project slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required surface area (A, square feet), surface volume (V₁, cubic feet), and sub-surface volume (V₂, cubic feet). Select a low flow orifice for the underdrain that will discharge the lower flow threshold flow when there is 1.5 feet of head over the underdrain orifice. The civil engineer shall provide the necessary volume and surface area of the BMP and the underdrain and orifice detail on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

To use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP, determine the size of the BMP using the sizing factors. For BMPs without dead storage below the underdrain, then refer to Appendix B.5 and Appendix F to check whether the BMP meets performance standards for biofiltration for pollutant control. If necessary, adjust the surface area, depth of storage layer, or depth of growing medium as needed to meet pollutant control standards. For BMPs with dead storage below the underdrain, refer to Appendix B.4 to determine the portion of the DCV to be infiltrated for pollutant control, then Appendix B.5 and Appendix F to check whether the BMP meets performance standards for biofiltration for pollutant control for the balance of the DCV. If necessary, adjust the surface area, depth of storage layer, or depth of growing medium as needed to meet pollutant control standards.

Table 0-5: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.075	0.0625	0.0450

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.080	0.0667	0.0480
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.080	0.0667	0.0480
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.060	0.0500	0.0360
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.060	0.0500	0.0360
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.055	0.0458	0.0330
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.055	0.0458	0.0330
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	0.0270
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.080	0.0667	0.0480
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.060	0.0500	0.0360
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.145	0.1208	0.0870
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.145	0.1208	0.0870
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.120	0.1000	0.0720
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.160	0.1333	0.0960
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.160	0.1333	0.0960
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.115	0.0958	0.0690
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Partial Retention and Biofiltration BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.090	0.0750	0.0540
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.100	0.0833	0.0600
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.075	0.0625	0.0450

Q₂ = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records

A = Surface area sizing factor for flow control

V₁ = Surface volume sizing factor for flow control

V₂ = Subsurface volume sizing factor for flow control

Definitions for "N/A"

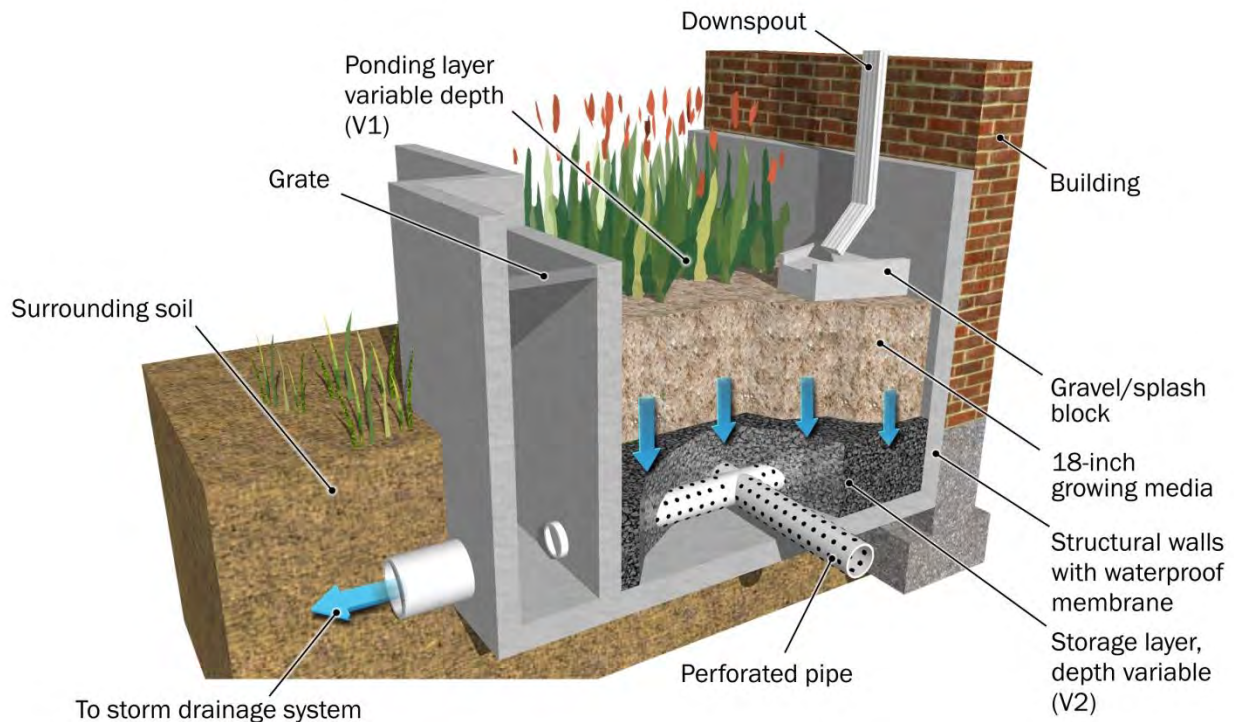
- Soil groups A and B: N/A in all elements (A, V₁, V₂) for soil groups A and B means sizing factors were not developed for biofiltration (i.e., with an underdrain) for soil groups A and B. If no underdrain is proposed, refer to Appendix G.2.3, Sizing Factors for Bioretention. If an underdrain is proposed, use project-specific continuous simulation modeling.

G.2.5 Sizing Factors for Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner

Table G.2-6 presents sizing factors for calculating the required surface area (A), surface volume ($V1$), and sub-surface volume ($V2$) for a biofiltration BMP with impermeable liner (formerly known as flow-through planter). The BMP consists of three layers:

- Ponding layer: 10-inches active storage, [minimum] 2-inches of freeboard above overflow relief
- Growing medium: 18-inches of soil [bioretention soil media]
- Storage layer: 30-inches of gravel at 40 percent porosity [18 inches active storage above underdrain is required, additional dead storage depth below underdrain is optional and can vary]

This BMP includes an underdrain with a low flow orifice 18 inches (1.5 feet) below the bottom of the growing medium. This BMP includes an impermeable liner to prevent infiltration into underlying soils.



Biofiltration with impermeable liner BMP Example Illustration

Reference: "San Diego BMP Sizing Calculator Methodology," prepared by Brown and Caldwell, dated January 2012

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

How to use the sizing factors for flow control BMP Sizing:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-6 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q_2 , hydrologic soil group, post-project slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A, square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C, unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required surface area (A, square feet), surface volume (V₁, cubic feet), and sub-surface volume (V₂, cubic feet). Select a low flow orifice for the underdrain that will discharge the lower flow threshold flow when there is 1.5 feet of head over the underdrain orifice. The civil engineer shall provide the necessary volume and surface area of the BMP and the underdrain and orifice detail on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

To use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP, determine the size using the sizing factors, then refer to Appendix B.5 and Appendix F to check whether the BMP meets performance standards for biofiltration for pollutant control. If necessary, adjust the surface area, depth of growing medium, or depth of storage layer as needed to meet pollutant control standards.

Table 0-6: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration BMPs (formerly known as Flow-Through Planters) Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.115	0.0958	0.0690
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.115	0.0958	0.0690
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.080	0.0667	0.0480
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.055	0.0458	0.0330
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.055	0.0458	0.0330
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.045	0.0375	0.0270
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.100	0.0833	0.0600

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.075	0.0625	0.0450
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.090	0.0750	0.0540
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.090	0.0750	0.0540
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.070	0.0583	0.0420
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.085	0.0708	0.0510
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.060	0.0500	0.0360
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.065	0.0542	0.0390
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.050	0.0417	0.0300
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	0.250	0.2083	0.1500
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.250	0.2083	0.1500
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	0.185	0.1542	0.1110
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	0.200	0.1667	0.1200
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	0.200	0.1667	0.1200
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	0.130	0.1083	0.0780
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	0.190	0.1583	0.1140
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	0.190	0.1583	0.1140
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	0.140	0.1167	0.0840
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	0.160	0.1333	0.0960
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	0.160	0.1333	0.0960
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	N/A	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	0.135	0.1125	0.0810
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.135	0.1125	0.0810
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	0.105	0.0875	0.0630
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	0.110	0.0917	0.0660
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	0.110	0.0917	0.0660

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Biofiltration with Impermeable Liner BMPs Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	0.080	0.0667	0.0480

Q₂ = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records

A = Surface area sizing factor for flow control

V₁ = Surface volume sizing factor for flow control

V₂ = Subsurface volume sizing factor for flow control

Definitions for "N/A"

- Soil groups A and B: N/A in all elements (A, V₁, V₂) for soil groups A and B means sizing factors were not developed for biofiltration (i.e., with an underdrain) for soil groups A and B. If no underdrain is proposed, refer to Appendix G.2.3, Sizing Factors for Bioretention. If an underdrain is proposed, use project-specific continuous simulation modeling.

G.2.6 Sizing Factors for "Cistern" BMP

Table G.2-7 presents sizing factors for calculating the required volume (V_1) for a cistern BMP. In this context, a "cistern" is a detention facility that stores runoff and releases it at a controlled rate. A cistern can be a component of a harvest and use system, however the sizing factor method will not account for any retention occurring in the system. The sizing factors were developed assuming runoff is released from the cistern. The sizing factors presented in this section are to meet the hydromodification management performance standard only. The cistern BMP is based on the following assumptions:

- Cistern configuration: The cistern is modeled as a 4-foot tall vessel. However, designers could use other configurations (different cistern heights), as long as the lower outlet orifice is sized to properly restrict outflows and the minimum required volume is provided.
- Cistern upper outlet: The upper outlet from the cistern would consist of a weir or other flow control structure with the overflow invert set at an elevation of 7/8 of the water height associated with the required volume of the cistern – V_1 . For the assumed 4-foot water depth in the cistern associated with the sizing factor analysis, the overflow invert is assumed to be located at an elevation of 3.5 feet above the bottom of the cistern. The overflow weir would be sized to pass the peak design flow based on the tributary drainage area.

How to use the sizing factors:

Obtain sizing factors from Table G.2-7 based on the project's lower flow threshold fraction of Q_2 , hydrologic soil group, post-project slope, and rain gauge (rainfall basin). Multiply the area tributary to the structural BMP (A , square feet) by the area weighted runoff factor (C , unitless) (see Table G.2-1) by the sizing factors to determine the required volume (V_1 , cubic feet). Select a low flow orifice that will discharge the lower flow threshold flow when there is 4 feet of head over the lower outlet orifice (or adjusted head as appropriate if the cistern configuration is not 4 feet tall). The civil engineer shall provide the necessary volume of the BMP and the lower outlet orifice detail on the plans.

Additional steps to use this BMP as a combined pollutant control and flow control BMP:

A cistern could be a component of a full retention, partial retention, or no retention BMP depending on how the outflow is disposed. However use of the sizing factor method for design of the cistern in a combined pollutant control and flow control system is not recommended. The sizing factor method for designing a cistern does not account for any retention or storage occurring in BMPs combined with the cistern (i.e., cistern sized using sizing factors may be larger than necessary because sizing factor method does not recognize volume losses occurring in other elements of a combined system). Furthermore when the cistern is designed using the sizing factor method, the cistern outflow must be set to the low flow threshold flow for the drainage area, which may be inconsistent with requirements for other elements of a combined system. To optimize a system in

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

which a cistern provides temporary storage for runoff to be either used onsite (harvest and use), infiltrated, or biofiltered, project-specific continuous simulation modeling is recommended. Refer to Sections 5.6 and 6.3.6.

Table 0-7: Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Cistern Facilities Designed Using Sizing Factor Method

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Cistern Facilities Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.3900	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.2000	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.0800	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1900	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.5Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.0800	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Cistern Facilities Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.5Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2100	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2000	N/A
0.5Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.5Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.5Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.0800	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.5900	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.3600	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1800	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1800	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1800	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.0800	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.2200	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1800	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Cistern Facilities Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.3Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.0800	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2600	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2400	N/A
0.3Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A
0.3Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.3Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1000	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.5400	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.7800	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.3400	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.3600	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.3600	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.2400	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	Lindbergh	N/A	0.2600	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	Lindbergh	N/A	0.2600	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	Lindbergh	N/A	0.1600	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.1600	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1200	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.5100	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.3400	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.2400	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.2600	N/A

Appendix G: Guidance for Continuous Simulation and Hydromodification Management Sizing Factors

Sizing Factors for Hydromodification Flow Control Cistern Facilities Designed Using Sizing Factor Method						
Lower Flow Threshold	Soil Group	Slope	Rain Gauge	A	V ₁	V ₂
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.2600	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.2000	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	Oceanside	N/A	0.2000	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	Oceanside	N/A	0.2000	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	Oceanside	N/A	0.1800	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1400	N/A
0.1Q ₂	A	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.0800	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.4400	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.4000	N/A
0.1Q ₂	B	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.3200	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.3200	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.3200	N/A
0.1Q ₂	C	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2200	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Flat	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2400	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Moderate	L Wohlford	N/A	0.2400	N/A
0.1Q ₂	D	Steep	L Wohlford	N/A	0.1800	N/A

Q₂ = 2-year pre-project flow rate based upon partial duration analysis of long-term hourly rainfall records
A = Bioretention surface area sizing factor (not applicable under this manual standards – use methods presented in Chapter 5 and Appendix B or Appendix F to size bioretention or biofiltration facility for pollutant control)
V₁ = Cistern volume sizing factor

Definitions for "N/A"

- Column V2: N/A in column V2 means there is no V2 element in the cistern BMP
- Column A: N/A in column A means there is no A element in the cistern BMP. Note sizing factors previously created for sizing a bioretention or biofiltration facility downstream of a cistern under the 2007 MS4 Permit are not applicable under the MS4 Permit.



Guidance for Investigating Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas

Introduction

Identification of potential critical coarse sediment yield areas for San Diego County has been prepared based on GLU analysis. Criteria for the GLU analysis were developed and documented in the "San Diego County Regional WMAA" (herein "Regional WMAA"). Regional-level mapping of potential critical coarse sediment yield areas was prepared using regional data sets and included in the Regional WMAA. The original Regional WMAA document can be found on the Project Clean Water website at the following address:

http://www.projectcleanwater.org/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=75&Itemid=99

The regional-level mapping was distributed to WQIP preparers to incorporate into the WMAA attachment to the WQIP for all watersheds in San Diego County. The regional-level mapping is based on the following sources:

Dataset	Source	Year	Description
Elevation	USGS	2013	1/3 rd Arc Second (~10 meter cells) digital elevation model for San Diego County
Land Cover	SanGIS	2013	Ecology-Vegetation layer for San Diego County downloaded from SanGIS
Geology	Kennedy, M.P., and Tan, S.S.	2002	Geologic Map of the Oceanside 30'x60' Quadrangle, California, California Geological Survey, Regional Geologic Map No. 2, 1:100,000 scale.
	Kennedy, M.P., and Tan, S.S.	2008	Geologic Map of the San Diego 30'x60' Quadrangle, California, California Geological Survey, Regional Geologic Map No. 3, 1:100,000 scale.
	Todd, V.R.	2004	Preliminary Geologic Map of the El Cajon 30'x60' Quadrangle, Southern California, United States Geological Survey, Southern California Areal Mapping Project, Open File Report 2004-1361, 1:100,000 scale.
	Jennings et al.	2010	"Geologic Map of California," California Geological Survey, Map No. 2 – Geologic Map of California, 1:750,000 scale

The regional data set is a function of the inherent data resolution of the macro-level data sets and may not conform to all site conditions, or does not reflect changes to particular areas that have occurred since the underlying data was developed. This means slopes, geology, or land cover at the project site can be mischaracterized in the regional data set. This Appendix presents criteria for the GLU analysis, excerpted from the Regional WMAA, to be used when detailed project-level investigation of GLUs onsite is needed.

A project applicant should first check the map included in the WMAA for the watershed in which the project resides to determine if potential critical coarse sediment yield areas may exist within the project drainage boundaries (i.e., within or draining through the project). Generally, if the WMAA map does not indicate potential critical coarse sediment yield areas may exist within the project drainage boundaries, no further analysis is necessary. However, the City Engineer has the discretion to require additional project-level investigation even when the WMAA map does not indicate the presence of potential critical coarse sediment yield areas within the project site.

If the project is shown to impact potential critical coarse sediment yield areas based on the WMAA map, or if the City Engineer requires, project-level GLU analysis can be performed (see Section 6.2.1). Project-level GLU analysis will either confirm or invalidate the finding of the Regional WMAA maps. For project-level GLU analysis, the civil engineer shall determine slopes, geology, and land cover categories existing at the project site, and intersect this data to determine GLUs existing at the project site. The data provided in H.1 will assist the civil engineer to characterize the site.

When it has been determined based on the GLU analysis that potential critical coarse sediment yield areas are present within the project boundary, and it has been determined that downstream systems require protection (see Section 6.2.2), additional analysis may be performed that may refine the extents of actual critical coarse sediment yield areas to be protected onsite (see Section 6.2.3). Procedures for additional analysis are provided in H.2.

H.1 Criteria for GLU Analysis

There are four slope categories in the GLU analysis. Category numbers shown (1 to 4) were assigned for the purpose of GIS processing.

- 0% to 10% (1)
- 10% to 20% (2)
- 20% to 40% (3)
- >40% (4)

There are seven geology categories in the GLU analysis:

- Coarse bedrock (CB)
- Coarse sedimentary impermeable (CSI)
- Coarse sedimentary permeable (CSP)
- Fine bedrock (FB)
- Fine sedimentary impermeable (FSI)
- Fine sedimentary permeable (FSP)
- Other (O)

There are six land cover categories in the GLU analysis:

- Agriculture/grass
- Forest
- Developed
- Scrub/shrub
- Other
- Unknown

Project site slopes shall be classified into the categories based on project-level topography. Project site geology may be determined from geologic maps (may be the same as regional-level information) or classified in the field by a qualified geologist. Table H-1.1 provides information to classify geologic map units into each geology category. Project site land cover shall be determined from aerial photography and/or field visit. For reference, Table H-1.2 provides information to classify land cover categories from the SanGIS Ecology-Vegetation data set into land cover categories. The civil engineer shall not rely on the SanGIS Ecology-Vegetation data set to identify actual land cover at the project site (for project-level investigation land cover must be confirmed by aerial photo or field visit). Intersect the geologic categories, land cover categories, and slope categories within the project boundary to create GLUs. The GLUs listed in Table H-1.3 (also shown in Table 6-1) are considered to be potential critical coarse sediment yield areas. Note the GLU nomenclature is presented in the following format: Geology – Land Cover – Slope Category (e.g., "CB-Agricultural/Grass-3" for a GLU consisting of coarse bedrock geology, agricultural/grass land cover, and 20% to 40% slope).

Table 0-1: Geologic Grouping for Different Map Units

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable/ Permeable	Geology Grouping
gr-m	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
grMz	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Jcr	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Jhc	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Jsp	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Ka	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kbm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kbp	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kcc	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kcg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kcm	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kcp	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kd	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kdl	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgbf	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgd	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgdf	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgh	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgm	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgm1	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgm2	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgm3	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgm4	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgp	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgr	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kgu	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Khg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Ki	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kis	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kjd	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
KJem	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
KJld	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable/ Permeable	Geology Grouping
Kjv	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Klb	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Klh	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Klp	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Km	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kmg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kmgp	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kmm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kpa	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kpv	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kqbd	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kr	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Krm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Krr	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kt	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Ktr	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kvc	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kwm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kwp	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kwsr	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
m	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Mzd	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Mzg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Mzq	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Mzs	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
sch	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Kp	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Bedrock	Impermeable	CB
Ql	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
QTf	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Ec	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
K	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Kccg	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Kcs	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable/ Permeable	Geology Grouping
Kl	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Ku	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvof	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop8a	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop9a	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tmsc	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tmss	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tp	San Diego & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tpm	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsc	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tscu	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsd	San Diego & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsdcg	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsdss	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tso	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tst	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tt	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tta	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tmv	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsi	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvoa	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvoa11	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvoa12	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvoa13	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvoc	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop1	San Diego & Oceanside	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable/ Permeable	Geology Grouping
	30' x 60'				
Qvop10	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop10a	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop11	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop11a	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop12	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop13	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop2	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop3	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop4	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop5	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop6	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop7	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop8	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qvop9	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Tsa	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Impermeable	CSI
Qof	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qof1	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qof2	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Q	Jennings; CA	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qa	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qd	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qf	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qmb	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable/ Permeable	Geology Grouping
Qw	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qyf	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qt	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoa1-2	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoa2-6	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoa5	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoa6	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoa7	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoc	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop1	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qc	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qu	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qoa	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop2-4	San Diego 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop3	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop4	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop6	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qop7	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qya	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Qyc	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Coarse	Sedimentary	Permeable	CSP
Mzu	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
gb	Jennings; CA	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
JTRm	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kat	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kc	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kgb	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
KJvs	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kmv	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Ksp	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB

Map Unit	Map Name	Anticipated Grain size of Weathered Material	Bedrock or Sedimentary	Impermeable/ Permeable	Geology Grouping
Kvsp	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kwmt	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Qv	Jennings; CA	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Tba	San Diego 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Tda	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Tv	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Tvsr	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Kgdfg	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Bedrock	Impermeable	FB
Ta	San Diego 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Tcs	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Td	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Td+Tf	San Diego 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Qls	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Tm	Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Tf	San Diego, Oceanside & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Tfr	El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
To	San Diego & El Cajon 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Impermeable	FSI
Qpe	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Fine	Sedimentary	Permeable	FSP
Mexico	San Diego 30' x 60'	NA	NA	Permeable	Other
Kuo	San Diego 30' x 60'	NA (Offshore)	NA	Permeable	Other
Teo	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	NA (Offshore)	Sedimentary	Permeable	Other
Tmo	Oceanside 30' x 60'	NA (Offshore)	Sedimentary	Permeable	Other
Qmo	San Diego 30' x 60'	NA (Offshore)	Sedimentary	Permeable	Other
QTso	San Diego 30' x 60'	NA (Offshore)	Sedimentary	Permeable	Other
af	San Diego & Oceanside 30' x 60'	Variable, dependent on source material	Sedimentary		Other

Table 0-2: Land Cover Grouping for SanGIS Ecology-Vegetation Data Set

Id	SanGIS Legend	SanGIS Grouping	Land Cover Grouping
1	42000 Valley and Foothill Grassland	Grasslands, Vernal Pools, Meadows, and Other Herb Communities	Agricultural/Grass
2	42100 Native Grassland		Agricultural/Grass
3	42110 Valley Needlegrass Grassland		Agricultural/Grass
4	42120 Valley Sacaton Grassland		Agricultural/Grass
5	42200 Non-Native Grassland	Grasslands, Vernal Pools, Meadows, and Other Herb Communities	Agricultural/Grass
6	42300 Wildflower Field		Agriculture/Grass
7	42400 Foothill/Mountain Perennial Grassland		Agriculture/Grass
8	42470 Transmontane Dropseed Grassland		Agriculture/Grass
9	45000 Meadow and Seep		Agriculture/Grass
10	45100 Montane Meadow		Agriculture/Grass
11	45110 Wet Montane Meadow		Agriculture/Grass
12	45120 Dry Montane Meadows		Agriculture/Grass
13	45300 Alkali Meadows and Seeps		Agriculture/Grass
14	45320 Alkali Seep		Agriculture/Grass
15	45400 Freshwater Seep		Agriculture/Grass
16	46000 Alkali Playa Community		Agriculture/Grass
17	46100 Badlands/Mudhill Forbs		Agriculture/Grass
18	Non-Native Grassland		Agriculture/Grass
19	18000 General Agriculture	Non-Native Vegetation, Developed Areas, or Unvegetated Habitat	Agriculture/Grass
20	18100 Orchards and Vineyards		Agriculture/Grass
21	18200 Intensive Agriculture		Agriculture/Grass
22	18200 Intensive Agriculture - Dairies, Nurseries, Chicken Ranches		Agriculture/Grass
23	18300 Extensive Agriculture - Field/Pasture, Row Crops		Agriculture/Grass
24	18310 Field/Pasture		Agriculture/Grass
25	18310 Pasture		Agriculture/Grass
26	18320 Row Crops		Agriculture/Grass
27	12000 Urban/Developed		Developed
28	12000 Urban/Developed		Developed
29	81100 Mixed Evergreen Forest	Forest	Forest
30	81300 Oak Forest		Forest
31	81310 Coast Live Oak Forest		Forest
32	81320 Canyon Live Oak Forest		Forest
33	81340 Black Oak Forest		Forest

Id	SanGIS Legend	SanGIS Grouping	Land Cover Grouping
34	83140 Torrey Pine Forest		Forest
35	83230 Southern Interior Cypress Forest		Forest
36	84000 Lower Montane Coniferous Forest		Forest
37	84100 Coast Range, Klamath and Peninsular Coniferous Forest		Forest
38	84140 Coulter Pine Forest	Forest	Forest
39	84150 Bigcone Spruce (Bigcone Douglas Fir)-Canyon Oak Forest		Forest
40	84230 Sierran Mixed Coniferous Forest		Forest
41	84500 Mixed Oak/Coniferous/Bigcone/Coulter		Forest
42	85100 Jeffrey Pine Forest		Forest
43	11100 Eucalyptus Woodland	Non-Native Vegetation, Developed Areas, or Unvegetated Habitat	Forest
44	60000 RIPARIAN AND BOTTOMLAND HABITAT	Riparian and Bottomland Habitat	Forest
45	61000 Riparian Forests		Forest
46	61300 Southern Riparian Forest		Forest
47	61310 Southern Coast Live Oak Riparian Forest		Forest
48	61320 Southern Arroyo Willow Riparian Forest		Forest
49	61330 Southern Cottonwood-willow Riparian Forest		Forest
50	61510 White Alder Riparian Forest		Forest
51	61810 Sonoran Cottonwood-willow Riparian Forest		Forest
52	61820 Mesquite Bosque		Forest
53	62000 Riparian Woodlands		Forest
54	62200 Desert Dry Wash Woodland		Forest
55	62300 Desert Fan Palm Oasis Woodland		Forest
56	62400 Southern Sycamore-alder Riparian Woodland		Forest
57	70000 WOODLAND	Woodland	Forest
58	71000 Cismontane Woodland		Forest

Id	SanGIS Legend	SanGIS Grouping	Land Cover Grouping	
59	71100 Oak Woodland		Forest	
60	71120 Black Oak Woodland		Forest	
61	71160 Coast Live Oak Woodland		Forest	
62	71161 Open Coast Live Oak Woodland		Forest	
63	71162 Dense Coast Live Oak Woodland		Forest	
64	71162 Dense Coast Love Oak Woodland		Forest	
65	71180 Engelmann Oak Woodland		Woodland	Forest
66	71181 Open Engelmann Oak Woodland			Forest
67	71182 Dense Engelmann Oak Woodland	Forest		
68	72300 Peninsular Pinon and Juniper Woodlands	Forest		
69	72310 Peninsular Pinon Woodland	Forest		
70	72320 Peninsular Juniper Woodland and Scrub	Forest		
71	75100 Elephant Tree Woodland	Forest		
72	77000 Mixed Oak Woodland	Forest		
73	78000 Undifferentiated Open Woodland	Forest		
74	79000 Undifferentiated Dense Woodland	Forest		
75	Engelmann Oak Woodland	Forest		
76	52120 Southern Coastal Salt Marsh	Bog and Marsh		Other
77	52300 Alkali Marsh			Other
78	52310 Cismontane Alkali Marsh			Other
79	52400 Freshwater Marsh			Other
80	52410 Coastal and Valley Freshwater Marsh		Other	
81	52420 Transmontane Freshwater Marsh		Other	
82	52440 Emergent Wetland		Other	
83	44000 Vernal Pool	Grasslands, Vernal Pools, Meadows, and Other Herb Communities	Other	
84	44320 San Diego Mesa Vernal Pool		Other	
85	44322 San Diego Mesa Claypan Vernal Pool (southern mesas)		Other	
86	13100 Open Water	Non-Native Vegetation,	Other	

Id	SanGIS Legend	SanGIS Grouping	Land Cover Grouping
87	13110 Marine	Developed Areas, or Unvegetated Habitat	Other
88	13111 Subtidal		Other
89	13112 Intertidal		Other
90	13121 Deep Bay		Other
91	13122 Intermediate Bay		Other
92	13123 Shallow Bay		Other
93	13130 Estuarine		Other
94	13131 Subtidal		Other
95	13133 Brackishwater		Other
96	13140 Freshwater	Non-Native Vegetation, Developed Areas, or Unvegetated Habitat	Other
97	13200 Non-Vegetated Channel, Floodway, Lakeshore Fringe		Other
98	13300 Saltpan/Mudflats		Other
99	13400 Beach		Other
100	21230 Southern Foredunes	Dune Community	Scrub/Shrub
101	22100 Active Desert Dunes		Scrub/Shrub
102	22300 Stabilized and Partially-Stabilized Desert Sand Field		Scrub/Shrub
103	24000 Stabilized Alkaline Dunes		Scrub/Shrub
104	29000 ACACIA SCRUB		Scrub/Shrub
105	63000 Riparian Scrubs	Riparian and Bottomland Habitat	Scrub/Shrub
106	63300 Southern Riparian Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
107	63310 Mule Fat Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
108	63310 Mulefat Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
109	63320 Southern Willow Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
110	63321 Arundo donnax Dominant/Southern Willow Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
111	63330 Southern Riparian Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
112	63400 Great Valley Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
113	63410 Great Valley Willow Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
114	63800 Colorado Riparian Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
115	63810 Tamarisk Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
116	63820 Arrowweed Scrub	Scrub/Shrub	
117	31200 Southern Coastal Bluff Scrub	Scrub and Chaparral	Scrub/Shrub
118	32000 Coastal Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
119	32400 Maritime Succulent Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
120	32500 Diegan Coastal Sage Scrub		Scrub/Shrub

Id	SanGIS Legend	SanGIS Grouping	Land Cover Grouping
121	32510 Coastal form		Scrub/Shrub
122	32520 Inland form (> 1,000 ft. elevation)		Scrub/Shrub
123	32700 Riversidian Sage Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
124	32710 Riversidian Upland Sage Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
125	32720 Alluvial Fan Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
126	33000 Sonoran Desert Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
127	33100 Sonoran Creosote Bush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
128	33200 Sonoran Desert Mixed Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
129	33210 Sonoran Mixed Woody Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
130	33220 Sonoran Mixed Woody and Succulent Scrub	Scrub and Chaparral	Scrub/Shrub
131	33230 Sonoran Wash Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
132	33300 Colorado Desert Wash Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
133	33600 Encelia Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
134	34000 Mojavean Desert Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
135	34300 Blackbush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
136	35000 Great Basin Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
137	35200 Sagebrush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
138	35210 Big Sagebrush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
139	35210 Sagebrush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
140	36110 Desert Saltbush Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
141	36120 Desert Sink Scrub		Scrub/Shrub
142	37000 Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
143	37120 Southern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
144	37120 Southern Mixed Chapparral		Scrub/Shrub
145	37121 Granitic Southern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
146	37121 Southern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
147	37122 Mafic Southern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
148	37130 Northern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
149	37131 Granitic Northern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
150	37132 Mafic Northern Mixed Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
151	37200 Chamise Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
152	37210 Granitic Chamise Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
153	37220 Mafic Chamise Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub
154	37300 Red Shank Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub

Id	SanGIS Legend	SanGIS Grouping	Land Cover Grouping	
155	37400 Semi-Desert Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub	
156	37500 Montane Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub	
157	37510 Mixed Montane Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub	
158	37520 Montane Manzanita Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub	
159	37530 Montane Ceanothus Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub	
160	37540 Montane Scrub Oak Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub	
161	37800 Upper Sonoran Ceanothus Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub	
162	37830 Ceanothus crassifolius Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub	
163	37900 Scrub Oak Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub	
164	37A00 Interior Live Oak Chaparral		Scrub/Shrub	
165	37C30 Southern Maritime Chaparral		Scrub and Chaparral	Scrub/Shrub
166	37G00 Coastal Sage-Chaparral Scrub			Scrub/Shrub
167	37K00 Flat-topped Buckwheat			Scrub/Shrub
168	39000 Upper Sonoran Subshrub Scrub			Scrub/Shrub
169	Diegan Coastal Sage Scrub	Scrub/Shrub		
170	Granitic Northern Mixed Chaparral	Scrub/Shrub		
171	Southern Mixed Chaparral	Scrub/Shrub		
172	11000 Non-Native Vegetation	Non-Native Vegetation, Developed Areas, or Unvegetated Habitat	Unknown	
173	11000 Non-Native VegetationVegetation		Unknown	
174	11200 Disturbed Wetland		Unknown	
175	11300 Disturbed Habitat		Unknown	
176	13000 Unvegetated Habitat		Unknown	
177	Disturbed Habitat		Unknown	

Table 0-3: Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas

GLU	Geology	Land Cover	Slope (%)
CB-Agricultural/Grass-3	Coarse Bedrock	Agricultural/Grass	20% - 40%
CB-Agricultural/Grass-4	Coarse Bedrock	Agricultural/Grass	>40%
CB-Forest-2	Coarse Bedrock	Forest	10 – 20%
CB-Forest-3	Coarse Bedrock	Forest	20% - 40%
CB-Forest-4	Coarse Bedrock	Forest	>40%
CB-Scrub/Shrub-4	Coarse Bedrock	Scrub/Shrub	>40%
CB-Unknown-4	Coarse Bedrock	Unknown	>40%
CSI-Agricultural/Grass-2	Coarse Sedimentary Impermeable	Agricultural/Grass	10 – 20%
CSI-Agricultural/Grass-3	Coarse Sedimentary Impermeable	Agricultural/Grass	20% - 40%
CSI-Agricultural/Grass-4	Coarse Sedimentary Impermeable	Agricultural/Grass	>40%
CSP-Agricultural/Grass-4	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Agricultural/Grass	>40%
CSP-Forest-3	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Forest	20% - 40%
CSP-Forest-4	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Forest	>40%
CSP-Scrub/Shrub-4	Coarse Sedimentary Permeable	Scrub/Shrub	>40%

H.2 Optional Additional Analysis When Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas are Present Onsite

(Adapted from "Step 1" of Section 2.3.i of "Santa Margarita Region HMP," dated May 2014)

As stated in Chapter 6.2.3 of this manual, when it has been determined based on a GLU analysis that potential critical coarse sediment yield areas are present within the project boundary, and it has been determined that downstream systems require protection, additional analysis may be performed that may refine the extents of actual critical coarse sediment yield areas to be protected onsite. The following text, adapted from Chapter 2 of the Santa Margarita Region HMP dated May 2014, describes the process.

Step 1: Determine whether the Portion of the Project Site is a Significant Source of Bed Sediment Supply to the Channel Receiving Runoff

A triad approach will be completed to determine whether the project site is a Significant Source of Bed Sediment Supply to the channel receiving runoff and includes the following components:

- A. Site soil assessment, including an analysis and comparison of the Bed Sediment in the receiving channel and the onsite channel;
- B. Determination of the capability of the channels on the project site to deliver the site Bed Sediment (if present) to the receiving channel; and
- C. Present and potential future condition of the receiving channel.

A. Site soil assessment, including an analysis and comparison of the Bed Sediment in the channel receiving runoff and the onsite channels

A geotechnical and sieve analysis is the first piece of information to be used in a triad approach to determine if the project site is a Significant Source of Bed Sediment Supply to the assessment channel. An investigation must be completed of the assessment channel to complete a sieve analysis of the Bed Sediment. Two samples will be taken of the assessment channel using the "reach" approach (TS13A, 2007 [United States Army Corps of Engineers. 2007. Guidelines for Sampling Bed Material, Technical Supplement 13A, Part 654 of National Engineering Handbook, New England District. August]). Samples in each of the two locations should be taken using the surface and subsurface bulk sample technique (TS13A, 2007) for a total of four samples. Pebble counts may be required for some channels.

A similar sampling assessment should be conducted on the project site. First-order and greater channels that may be impacted by the PDP (drainage area changed, stabilized, lined or replaced with underground conduits) will be analyzed in each subwatershed. First-order channels are identified as

the unbranched channels that drain from headwater areas and develop in the uppermost topographic depressions, where two or more contour crenulations (notches or indentations) align and point upslope (National Engineering Handbook, 2007). First-order channels may, in fact, be field ditches, gullies, or ephemeral gullies (National Engineering Handbook, 2007). One channel per subwatershed that may be impacted on the project site must be assessed. A subwatershed is defined as tributary to a single discharge point at the project site boundary.

The sieve analysis should report the coarsest 90% (by weight) of the sediment for comparison between the site and the assessment channel. The User should render an opinion if the Bed Sediment found on the site is of similar gradation to the Bed Sediment found in the receiving channel. The opinion will be based on the following information:

- Sieve analysis results
- Soil erodibility (K) factor
- Topographic relief of the project area
- Lithology of the soils on the project site

The User should rate the similarity of onsite Bed Sediment and Bed Sediment collected in the receiving channel as high, medium, or low.

This site soil assessment serves as the first piece of information for the triad approach.

B. Determination of the capability of the onsite channels to deliver Bed Sediment Supply (if present) to the channel receiving runoff from the project site.

The second piece of information is to qualitatively assess the sediment delivery potential of the channels on the project site to deliver the Bed Sediment Supply to the channel receiving runoff from the project site, or the Bed Sediment delivery potential or ratio. There are few documented procedures to estimate the Bed Sediment delivery ratio (see: Williams, J. R., 1977: Sediment delivery ratios determined with sediment and runoff models. IAHS Publication (122): 168-179, as an example); it is affected by a number of factors, including the sediment source, proximity to the receiving channel, onsite channel density, project sub-watershed area, slope, length, land use and land cover, and rainfall intensity. The User will qualitatively assess the Bed Sediment delivery potential and rate the potential as high, medium, or low.

C. Present and potential future condition of the channel receiving runoff from the project site.

The final piece of information is the present and potential future condition of the channel receiving runoff from the project site. The User should assess the receiving channel for the following:

- Bank stability – Receiving channels with unstable banks may be more sensitive to changes in Bed Sediment Load.

- Degree of incision – Receiving channels with moderate to high incision may be more sensitive to changes in Bed Sediment Load.
- Bed Sediment gradation – Receiving channels with more coarse Bed Sediment (such as gravel) are better able to buffer change in Bed Sediment Load as compared to beds with finer gradation of Bed Sediment (sand).
- Transport vs. supply limited channels. Receiving channels that are transport limited may be better able to buffer changes in Bed Sediment Load as compared to channels that are supply limited.

The User will qualitatively assess the channel receiving runoff from the project site using the gathered observations and rate the potential for adverse response based on a change in Bed Sediment Load as high, medium, or low.

[Interpreting the results of A, B, and C]

The User should use the triad assessment approach, weighting each of the components based on professional judgment to determine if the project site provides a Significant Source of Bed Sediment Supply to the receiving channel, and the impact the PDP would have on the receiving channel. The final assessment and recommendation must be documented in the HMP portion of the SWQMP.

The recommendation may be any of the following:

- Site is a Significant Source of Bed Sediment Supply – all channels on the project site must be preserved or by-passed within the site plan.
- Site is a source of Bed Sediment Supply – some of the channels on the project site must be preserved (with identified channels noted).
- Site is not a Significant Source of Bed Sediment Supply.

The final recommendation will be guided by the triad assessment. Projects with predominantly “high” values for each of the three assessment areas would indicate preservation of channels on the project site. Sites with predominantly “medium” values may warrant preservation of some of the channels on the project site, and sites with generally “low” values would not require site design considerations for Bed Sediment Load.



Forms and Checklists

Forms and Checklists

The following Forms/Checklists/Worksheets were developed for use by the project applicant to document the storm water management design:

- I-1: Applicability of Permanent, Post-Construction Storm Water BMP Requirements
- I-2: Project Type Determination Checklist (Standard Project or PDP)
- I-3A: Site Information Checklist for Standard Projects
- I-3B: Site Information Checklist for PDPs
- I-4: Source Control BMP Checklist for All Development Projects
- I-5: Site Design BMP Checklist for All Development Projects
- I-6: Summary of PDP Structural BMPs
- I-7: Harvest and Use Feasibility Screening Checklist
- I-8: Categorization of Infiltration Feasibility Condition
- I-9: Factor of Safety and Design Infiltration Rate
- I-10: Determination of Downstream Systems Requirements for Preservation of Coarse Sediment Supply
- I-11: Permanent BMP Construction Certification

Applicability of Permanent, Post-Construction Storm Water BMP Requirements (Storm Water Intake Form for all Development Permit Applications)		Form I-1
Project Identification		
Project Name:		
Project Address:		
Permit Application Number:		Date:
Determination of Requirements		
<p>The purpose of this form is to identify permanent, post-construction requirements that apply to the project. This form serves as a short <u>summary</u> of applicable requirements, in some cases referencing separate forms that will serve as the backup for the determination of requirements.</p> <p>Answer each step below, starting with Step 1 and progressing through each step until reaching "Stop". Refer to the manual sections and/or separate forms referenced in each step below.</p>		
Step	Answer	Progression
Step 1: Is the project a "development project"? See Section 1.3 of the manual for guidance.	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	Go to Step 2.
	<input type="checkbox"/> No	Stop. Permanent BMP requirements do not apply. No SWQMP will be required. Provide discussion below.
Discussion / justification if the project is <u>not</u> a "development project" (e.g., the project includes <i>only</i> interior remodels within an existing building):		
Step 2: Is the project a Standard Project, PDP, or exception to PDP definitions? To answer this item, see Section 1.4 of the manual <i>in its entirety</i> for guidance, AND complete Form I-2, Project Type Determination.	<input type="checkbox"/> Standard Project	Stop. Standard Project requirements apply, including Standard Project SWQMP.
	<input type="checkbox"/> PDP	PDP requirements apply, including PDP SWQMP. Go to Step 3.
	<input type="checkbox"/> Exception to PDP definitions	Stop. Standard Project requirements apply. Provide discussion and list any additional requirements below. Prepare Standard Project SWQMP.
Discussion / justification, and additional requirements for exceptions to PDP definitions, if applicable:		

Step	Answer	Progression
Step 3. Is the project subject to earlier PDP requirements due to a prior lawful approval? See Section 1.10 of the manual for guidance.	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	Consult the City Engineer to determine requirements. Provide discussion and identify requirements below. Go to Step 4.
	<input type="checkbox"/> No	BMP Design Manual PDP requirements apply. Go to Step 4.
Discussion / justification of prior lawful approval, and identify requirements (<i>not required if prior lawful approval does not apply</i>):		
Step 4. Do hydromodification control requirements apply? See Section 1.6 of the manual for guidance.	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	PDP structural BMPs required for pollutant control (Chapter 5) and hydromodification control (Chapter 6). Go to Step 5.
	<input type="checkbox"/> No	Stop. PDP structural BMPs required for pollutant control (Chapter 5) only. Provide brief discussion of exemption to hydromodification control below.
Discussion / justification if hydromodification control requirements do <u>not</u> apply:		
Step 5. Does protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas apply? See Section 6.2 of the manual for guidance.	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	Management measures required for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas (Chapter 6.2). Stop.
	<input type="checkbox"/> No	Management measures not required for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas. Provide brief discussion below. Stop.
Discussion / justification if protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas does <u>not</u> apply:		

Project Type Determination Checklist		Form I-2	
Project Information			
Project Name:			
Project Address:			
Permit Application Number:		Date:	
Project Type Determination: Standard Project or PDP			
The project is (select one): <input type="checkbox"/> New Development <input type="checkbox"/> Redevelopment			
The total proposed newly created or replaced impervious area is: _____ ft ² (_____) acres			
Is the project in any of the following categories, (a) through (f)?			
Yes <input type="checkbox"/>	No <input type="checkbox"/>	(a)	New development projects that create 10,000 square feet or more of impervious surfaces (collectively over the entire project site). This includes commercial, industrial, residential, mixed-use, and public development projects on public or private land.
Yes <input type="checkbox"/>	No <input type="checkbox"/>	(b)	Redevelopment projects that create and/or replace 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site on an existing site of 10,000 square feet or more of impervious surfaces). This includes commercial, industrial, residential, mixed-use, and public development projects on public or private land.
Yes <input type="checkbox"/>	No <input type="checkbox"/>	(c)	<p>New and redevelopment projects that create 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site), and support one or more of the following uses:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Restaurants. This category is defined as a facility that sells prepared foods and drinks for consumption, including stationary lunch counters and refreshment stands selling prepared foods and drinks for immediate consumption SIC code 5812). (ii) Hillside development projects. This category includes development on any natural slope that is twenty-five percent or greater. (iii) Parking lots. This category is defined as a land area or facility for the temporary parking or storage of motor vehicles used personally, for business, or for commerce. (iv) Streets, roads, highways, freeways, and driveways. This category is defined as any paved impervious surface used for the transportation of automobiles, trucks, motorcycles, and other vehicles.

Form I-2 Page 2 of 2

Yes <input type="checkbox"/>	No <input type="checkbox"/>	(d)	<p>New or redevelopment projects that create or replace 2,500 square feet or more of impervious surface (collectively over the entire project site), and discharging directly to an Environmentally Sensitive Area (ESA). “Discharging directly to” includes flow that is conveyed overland a distance of 200 feet or less from the project to the ESA, or conveyed in a pipe or open channel any distance as an isolated flow from the project to the ESA (i.e. not commingled with flows from adjacent lands).</p> <p><u>Note: ESAs are areas that include but are not limited to all Clean Water Act Section 303(d) impaired water bodies; areas designated as Areas of Special Biological Significance by the State Water Board and SDRWQCB; State Water Quality Protected Areas; water bodies designated with the RARE beneficial use by the State Water Board and SDRWQCB; and any other equivalent environmentally sensitive areas which have been identified by the Copermitttees. See manual Section 1.4.2 for additional guidance.</u></p>
Yes <input type="checkbox"/>	No <input type="checkbox"/>	(e)	<p>New development projects that support one or more of the following uses:</p> <p>(i) Automotive repair shops. This category is defined as a facility that is categorized in any one of the following SIC codes: 5013, 5014, 5541, 7532-7534, or 7536-7539.</p> <p>(ii) Retail gasoline outlets. This category includes retail gasoline outlets that meet the following criteria: (a) 5,000 square feet or more or (b) a projected Average Daily Traffic of 100 or more vehicles per day.</p>
Yes <input type="checkbox"/>	No <input type="checkbox"/>	(f)	<p>New or redevelopment projects that result in the disturbance of one or more acres of land and are expected to generate pollutants post construction.</p> <p><i>Note: See manual Section 1.4.2 for additional guidance.</i></p>
<p>Does the project meet the definition of one or more of the PDP categories (a) through (f) listed above?</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> No – the project is not a PDP (Standard Project).</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Yes – the project is a PDP.</p>			
<p>The following is for redevelopment PDPs only:</p> <p>The area of existing (pre-project) impervious area at the project site is: _____ ft² (A)</p> <p>The total proposed newly created or replaced impervious area is: _____ ft² (B)</p> <p>Percent impervious surface created or replaced (A/B)*100: _____%</p> <p>The percent impervious surface created or replaced is (select one based on the above calculation):</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> less than or equal to fifty percent (50%) – only new impervious areas are considered PDP</p> <p>OR</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> greater than fifty percent (50%) – the entire project site is a PDP</p>			

Site Information Checklist For Standard Projects		Form I-3A (Standard Projects)
Project Summary Information		
Project Name	Date:	
Project Address		
Assessor's Parcel Number(s)		
Permit Application Number		
Project Watershed (Hydrologic Unit)	Select One: <input type="checkbox"/> Santa Margarita 902 <input type="checkbox"/> San Luis Rey 903 <input type="checkbox"/> Carlsbad 904 <input type="checkbox"/> San Dieguito 905 <input type="checkbox"/> Penasquitos 906 <input type="checkbox"/> San Diego 907 <input type="checkbox"/> Pueblo San Diego 908 <input type="checkbox"/> Sweetwater 909 <input type="checkbox"/> Otay 910 <input type="checkbox"/> Tijuana 911	
Parcel Area (total area of Assessor's Parcel(s) associated with the project)	_____ Acres (_____ Square Feet)	
Area to be disturbed by the project (Project Area)	_____ Acres (_____ Square Feet)	
Project Proposed Impervious Area (subset of Project Area)	_____ Acres (_____ Square Feet)	
Project Proposed Pervious Area (subset of Project Area)	_____ Acres (_____ Square Feet)	
Note: Proposed Impervious Area + Proposed Pervious Area = Area to be Disturbed by the Project. This may be less than the Parcel Area.		

Description of Existing Site Condition and Drainage Patterns

Current Status of the Site (select all that apply)

- Existing development
- Previously graded but not built out
- Agricultural or other non-impervious use
- Vacant, undeveloped/natural

Description / Additional Information

Existing Land Cover Includes (select all that apply)

- Vegetative Cover
- Non-Vegetated Pervious Areas
- Impervious Areas

Description / Additional Information

Underlying Soil belongs to Hydrologic Soil Group (select all that apply):

- NRCS Type A
- NRCS Type B
- NRCS Type C
- NRCS Type D

Existing Natural Hydrologic Features (select all that apply)

- Watercourses
- Seeps
- Springs
- Wetlands
- None

Description / Additional Information

Description of Existing Site Drainage [How is storm water runoff conveyed from the site? At a minimum, this description should answer (1) whether existing drainage conveyance is natural or urban; (2) describe existing constructed storm water conveyance systems, if applicable; and (3) is runoff from offsite conveyed through the site? If so, describe.]

Description of Proposed Site Development and Drainage Patterns

Project Description / Proposed Land Use and/or Activities

List proposed impervious features of the project (e.g., buildings, roadways, parking lots, courtyards, athletic courts, other impervious features)

List proposed pervious features of the project (e.g., landscape areas)

Does the project include grading and changes to site topography?

- Yes
- No

Description / Additional Information

Does the project include changes to site drainage (e.g., installation of new storm water conveyance systems)?

- Yes
- No

Description / Additional Information

Identify whether any of the following features, activities, and/or pollutant source areas will be present (select all that apply)

- Onsite storm drain inlets
- Interior floor drains and elevator shaft sump pumps
- Interior parking garages
- Need for future indoor & structural pest control
- Landscape/outdoor pesticide use
- Pools, spas, ponds, decorative fountains, and other water features
- Food service
- Refuse areas
- Industrial processes
- Outdoor storage of equipment or materials
- Vehicle and equipment cleaning
- Vehicle/equipment repair and maintenance
- Fuel dispensing areas
- Loading docks
- Fire sprinkler test water
- Miscellaneous drain or wash water
- Plazas, sidewalks, and parking lots

Site Information Checklist For PDPs		Form I-3B (PDPs)
Project Summary Information		
Project Name	Date:	
Project Address		
Assessor's Parcel Number(s)		
Permit Application Number		
Project Watershed (Hydrologic Unit)	Select One: <input type="checkbox"/> Santa Margarita 902 <input type="checkbox"/> San Luis Rey 903 <input type="checkbox"/> Carlsbad 904 <input type="checkbox"/> San Dieguito 905 <input type="checkbox"/> Penasquitos 906 <input type="checkbox"/> San Diego 907 <input type="checkbox"/> Pueblo San Diego 908 <input type="checkbox"/> Sweetwater 909 <input type="checkbox"/> Otay 910 <input type="checkbox"/> Tijuana 911	
Parcel Area (total area of Assessor's Parcel(s) associated with the project)	_____ Acres (_____ Square Feet)	
Area to be disturbed by the project (Project Area)	_____ Acres (_____ Square Feet)	
Project Proposed Impervious Area (subset of Project Area)	_____ Acres (_____ Square Feet)	
Project Proposed Pervious Area (subset of Project Area)	_____ Acres (_____ Square Feet)	
Note: Proposed Impervious Area + Proposed Pervious Area = Area to be Disturbed by the Project. This may be less than the Parcel Area.		

Description of Existing Site Condition and Drainage Patterns

Current Status of the Site (select all that apply):

- Existing development
- Previously graded but not built out
- Agricultural or other non-impervious use
- Vacant, undeveloped/natural

Description / Additional Information:

Existing Land Cover Includes (select all that apply):

- Vegetative Cover
- Non-Vegetated Pervious Areas
- Impervious Areas

Description / Additional Information:

Underlying Soil belongs to Hydrologic Soil Group (select all that apply):

- NRCS Type A
- NRCS Type B
- NRCS Type C
- NRCS Type D

Approximate Depth to Groundwater:

- Groundwater Depth < 5 feet
- 5 feet < Groundwater Depth < 10 feet
- 10 feet < Groundwater Depth < 20 feet
- Groundwater Depth > 20 feet

Existing Natural Hydrologic Features (select all that apply):

- Watercourses
- Seeps
- Springs
- Wetlands
- None

Description / Additional Information:

Description of Existing Site Topography and Drainage [How is storm water runoff conveyed from the site? At a minimum, this description should answer (1) whether existing drainage conveyance is natural or urban; (2) describe existing constructed storm water conveyance systems, if applicable; and (3) is runoff from offsite conveyed through the site? If so, describe]:

Description of Proposed Site Development and Drainage Patterns

Project Description / Proposed Land Use and/or Activities:

List/describe proposed impervious features of the project (e.g., buildings, roadways, parking lots, courtyards, athletic courts, other impervious features):

List/describe proposed pervious features of the project (e.g., landscape areas):

Does the project include grading and changes to site topography?

- Yes
- No

Description / Additional Information:

Does the project include changes to site drainage (e.g., installation of new storm water conveyance systems)?

- Yes
- No

Description / Additional Information:

Identify whether any of the following features, activities, and/or pollutant source areas will be present (select all that apply):

- Onsite storm drain inlets
- Interior floor drains and elevator shaft sump pumps
- Interior parking garages
- Need for future indoor & structural pest control
- Landscape/outdoor pesticide use
- Pools, spas, ponds, decorative fountains, and other water features
- Food service
- Refuse areas
- Industrial processes
- Outdoor storage of equipment or materials
- Vehicle and equipment cleaning
- Vehicle/equipment repair and maintenance
- Fuel dispensing areas
- Loading docks
- Fire sprinkler test water
- Miscellaneous drain or wash water
- Plazas, sidewalks, and parking lots

Identification of Receiving Water Pollutants of Concern

Describe path of storm water from the project site to the Pacific Ocean (or bay, lagoon, lake or reservoir, as applicable):

List any 303(d) impaired water bodies within the path of storm water from the project site to the Pacific Ocean (or bay, lagoon, lake or reservoir, as applicable), identify the pollutant(s)/stressor(s) causing impairment, and identify any TMDLs for the impaired water bodies:

303(d) Impaired Water Body	Pollutant(s)/Stressor(s)	TMDLs

Identification of Project Site Pollutants*

***Identification of project site pollutants is only required if flow-thru treatment BMPs are implemented onsite in lieu of retention or biofiltration BMPs (note the project must also participate in an alternative compliance program unless prior lawful approval to meet earlier PDP requirements is demonstrated)**

Identify pollutants expected from the project site based on all proposed use(s) of the site (see manual Appendix B.6):

Pollutant	Not Applicable to the Project Site	Expected from the Project Site	Also a Receiving Water Pollutant of Concern
Sediment			
Nutrients			
Heavy Metals			
Organic Compounds			
Trash & Debris			
Oxygen Demanding Substances			
Oil & Grease			
Bacteria & Viruses			
Pesticides			

Hydromodification Management Requirements

Do hydromodification management requirements apply (see Section 1.6 of the manual)?

- Yes, hydromodification management flow control structural BMPs required.
- No, the project will discharge runoff directly to existing underground storm drains discharging directly to water storage reservoirs, lakes, enclosed embayments, or the Pacific Ocean.
- No, the project will discharge runoff directly to conveyance channels whose bed and bank are concrete-lined all the way from the point of discharge to water storage reservoirs, lakes, enclosed embayments, or the Pacific Ocean.
- No, the project will discharge runoff directly to an area identified as appropriate for an exemption by the WMAA for the watershed in which the project resides.

Description / Additional Information (to be provided if a 'No' answer has been selected above):

Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas*

***This Section only required if hydromodification management requirements apply**

Based on the maps provided within the WMAA, do potential critical coarse sediment yield areas exist within the project drainage boundaries?

- Yes
- No, no critical coarse sediment yield areas to be protected based on WMAA maps

If yes, have any of the optional analyses presented in Section 6.2 of the manual been performed?

- 6.2.1 Verification of GLUs Onsite
- 6.2.2 Downstream Systems Sensitivity to Coarse Sediment
- 6.2.3 Optional Additional Analysis of Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas Onsite
- No optional analyses performed, the project will avoid critical coarse sediment yield areas identified based on WMAA maps

If optional analyses were performed, what is the final result?

- No critical coarse sediment yield areas to be protected based on verification of GLUs onsite.
- Critical coarse sediment yield areas exist but additional analysis has determined that protection is not required. Documentation attached in Attachment 8 of the SWQMP.
- Critical coarse sediment yield areas exist and require protection. The project will implement management measures described in Sections 6.2.4 and 6.2.5 as applicable, and the areas are identified on the SWQMP Exhibit.

Discussion / Additional Information:

Flow Control for Post-Project Runoff*

***This Section only required if hydromodification management requirements apply**

List and describe point(s) of compliance (POCs) for flow control for hydromodification management (see Section 6.3.1). For each POC, provide a POC identification name or number correlating to the project's HMP Exhibit and a receiving channel identification name or number correlating to the project's HMP Exhibit.

Has a geomorphic assessment been performed for the receiving channel(s)?

- No, the low flow threshold is 0.1Q2 (default low flow threshold)
- Yes, the result is the low flow threshold is 0.1Q2
- Yes, the result is the low flow threshold is 0.3Q2
- Yes, the result is the low flow threshold is 0.5Q2

If a geomorphic assessment has been performed, provide title, date, and preparer:

Discussion / Additional Information: (optional)

Other Site Requirements and Constraints

When applicable, list other site requirements or constraints that will influence storm water management design, such as zoning requirements including setbacks and open space, or local codes governing minimum street width, sidewalk construction, allowable pavement types, and drainage requirements.

Optional Additional Information or Continuation of Previous Sections As Needed

This space provided for additional information or continuation of information from previous sections as needed.

Source Control BMP Checklist for All Development Projects (Standard Projects and PDPs)	Form I-4
---	-----------------

Project Identification

Project Name: _____ Date: _____

Project Address: _____

Permit Application Number: _____

Source Control BMPs

All development projects must implement source control BMPs SC-1 through SC-6 where applicable and feasible. See Chapter 4 and Appendix E of the manual for information to implement source control BMPs shown in this checklist.

Answer each category below pursuant to the following.

- "Yes" means the project will implement the source control BMP as described in Chapter 4 and/or Appendix E of the manual. Discussion / justification is not required.
- "No" means the BMP is applicable to the project but it is not feasible to implement. Discussion / justification must be provided.
- "N/A" means the BMP is not applicable at the project site because the project does not include the feature that is addressed by the BMP (e.g., the project has no outdoor materials storage areas). Discussion / justification may be provided.

Source Control Requirement	Applied?		
----------------------------	----------	--	--

SC-1 Prevention of Illicit Discharges into the MS4	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
---	------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

Discussion / justification if SC-1 not implemented:

SC-2 Storm Drain Stenciling or Signage	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
---	------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

Discussion / justification if SC-2 not implemented:

SC-3 Protect Outdoor Materials Storage Areas from Rainfall, Run-On, Runoff, and Wind Dispersal	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
---	------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

Discussion / justification if SC-3 not implemented:

SC-4 Protect Materials Stored in Outdoor Work Areas from Rainfall, Run-On, Runoff, and Wind Dispersal	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
--	------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

Discussion / justification if SC-4 not implemented:

Form I-4 Page 2 of 2			
Source Control Requirement	Applied?		
SC-5 Protect Trash Storage Areas from Rainfall, Run-On, Runoff, and Wind Dispersal	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-5 not implemented:			
SC-6 Additional BMPs Based on Potential Sources of Runoff Pollutants (must answer for each source listed below)			
<input type="checkbox"/> Onsite storm drain inlets	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Interior floor drains and elevator shaft sump pumps	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Interior parking garages	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Need for future indoor & structural pest control	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Landscape/outdoor pesticide use	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Pools, spas, ponds, decorative fountains, and other water features	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Food service	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Refuse areas	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Industrial processes	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Outdoor storage of equipment or materials	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Vehicle and equipment cleaning	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Vehicle/equipment repair and maintenance	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Fuel dispensing areas	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Loading docks	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Fire sprinkler test water	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Miscellaneous drain or wash water	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
<input type="checkbox"/> Plazas, sidewalks, and parking lots	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
Discussion / justification if SC-6 not implemented. Clearly identify which sources of runoff pollutants are discussed. Justification must be provided for <u>all</u> "No" answers shown above.			

Site Design BMP Checklist for All Development Projects (Standard Projects and PDPs)	Form I-5
--	-----------------

Project Identification

Project Name

Permit Application Number

Site Design BMPs

All development projects must implement site design BMPs SD-1 through SD-8 where applicable and feasible. See Chapter 4 and Appendix E of the manual for information to implement site design BMPs shown in this checklist.

Answer each category below pursuant to the following.

- "Yes" means the project will implement the site design BMP as described in Chapter 4 and/or Appendix E of the manual. Discussion / justification is not required.
- "No" means the BMP is applicable to the project but it is not feasible to implement. Discussion / justification must be provided.
- "N/A" means the BMP is not applicable at the project site because the project does not include the feature that is addressed by the BMP (e.g., the project site has no existing natural areas to conserve). Discussion / justification may be provided.

Site Design Requirement	Applied?		
-------------------------	----------	--	--

SD-1 Maintain Natural Drainage Pathways and Hydrologic Features	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
--	------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

Discussion / justification if SD-1 not implemented:

SD-2 Conserve Natural Areas, Soils, and Vegetation	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
---	------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

Discussion / justification if SD-2 not implemented:

SD-3 Minimize Impervious Area	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
--------------------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

Discussion / justification if SD-3 not implemented:

SD-4 Minimize Soil Compaction	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
--------------------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------------------------

Discussion / justification if SD-4 not implemented:

Site Design Requirement	Applied?		
SD-5 Impervious Area Dispersion	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-5 not implemented:			
SD-6 Runoff Collection	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-6 not implemented:			
SD-7 Landscaping with Native or Drought Tolerant Species	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-7 not implemented:			
SD-8 Harvesting and Using Precipitation	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> N/A
Discussion / justification if SD-8 not implemented:			

(Page reserved for continuation of description of general strategy for structural BMP implementation at the site)

(Continued from page 1)

Structural BMP Summary Information

(Copy this page as needed to provide information for each individual proposed structural BMP)

Structural BMP ID No.	
Construction Plan Sheet No.	
Type of structural BMP: <input type="checkbox"/> Retention by harvest and use (HU-1) <input type="checkbox"/> Retention by infiltration basin (INF-1) <input type="checkbox"/> Retention by bioretention (INF-2) <input type="checkbox"/> Retention by permeable pavement (INF-3) <input type="checkbox"/> Partial retention by biofiltration with partial retention (PR-1) <input type="checkbox"/> Biofiltration (BF-1) <input type="checkbox"/> Flow-thru treatment control with prior lawful approval to meet earlier PDP requirements (provide BMP type/description in discussion section below) <input type="checkbox"/> Flow-thru treatment control included as pre-treatment/forebay for an onsite retention or biofiltration BMP (provide BMP type/description and indicate which onsite retention or biofiltration BMP it serves in discussion section below) <input type="checkbox"/> Flow-thru treatment control with alternative compliance (provide BMP type/description in discussion section below) <input type="checkbox"/> Detention pond or vault for hydromodification management <input type="checkbox"/> Other (describe in discussion section below)	
Purpose: <input type="checkbox"/> Pollutant control only <input type="checkbox"/> Hydromodification control only <input type="checkbox"/> Combined pollutant control and hydromodification control <input type="checkbox"/> Pre-treatment/forebay for another structural BMP <input type="checkbox"/> Other (describe in discussion section below)	
Who will certify construction of this BMP? Provide name and contact information for the party responsible to sign BMP verification forms if required by the City Engineer (See Section 1.12 of the manual)	
Who will be the final owner of this BMP?	
Who will maintain this BMP into perpetuity?	
What is the funding mechanism for maintenance?	
Discussion (as needed):	

Harvest and Use Feasibility Checklist

Form I-7

1. Is there a demand for harvested water (check all that apply) at the project site that is reliably present during the wet season?

Toilet and urinal flushing

Landscape irrigation

Other: _____

2. If there is a demand; estimate the anticipated average wet season demand over a period of 36 hours. Guidance for planning level demand calculations for toilet/urinal flushing and landscape irrigation is provided in Section B.3.2.

[Provide a summary of calculations here]

3. Calculate the DCV using worksheet B-2.1.

DCV = _____ (cubic feet)

3a. Is the 36 hour demand greater than or equal to the DCV?

Yes / No ⇒

⇓

3b. Is the 36 hour demand greater than 0.25DCV but less than the full DCV?

Yes / No ⇒

⇓

3c. Is the 36 hour demand less than 0.25DCV?

Yes

⇓

Harvest and use appears to be feasible. Conduct more detailed evaluation and sizing calculations to confirm that DCV can be used at an adequate rate to meet drawdown criteria.

Harvest and use may be feasible. Conduct more detailed evaluation and sizing calculations to determine feasibility. Harvest and use may only be able to be used for a portion of the site, or (optionally) the storage may need to be upsized to meet long term capture targets while draining in longer than 36 hours.

Harvest and use is considered to be infeasible.

Is harvest and use feasible based on further evaluation?

- Yes, refer to Appendix E to select and size harvest and use BMPs.
- No, select alternate BMPs.

Form I-8 Page 3 of 4

Part 2 – Partial Infiltration vs. No Infiltration Feasibility Screening Criteria

Would infiltration of water in any appreciable amount be physically feasible without any negative consequences that cannot be reasonably mitigated?

Criteria	Screening Question	Yes	No
5	Do soil and geologic conditions allow for infiltration in any appreciable rate or volume? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2 and Appendix D.		

Provide basis:

Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.

6	Can Infiltration in any appreciable quantity be allowed without increasing risk of geotechnical hazards (slope stability, groundwater mounding, utilities, or other factors) that cannot be mitigated to an acceptable level? The response to this Screening Question shall be based on a comprehensive evaluation of the factors presented in Appendix C.2.		
---	---	--	--

Provide basis:

Summarize findings of studies; provide reference to studies, calculations, maps, data sources, etc. Provide narrative discussion of study/data source applicability and why it was not feasible to mitigate low infiltration rates.

Factor of Safety and Design Infiltration Rate Worksheet			Form I-9		
Factor Category		Factor Description	Assigned Weight (w)	Factor Value (v)	Product (p) $p = w \times v$
A	Suitability Assessment	Soil assessment methods	0.25		
		Predominant soil texture	0.25		
		Site soil variability	0.25		
		Depth to groundwater / impervious layer	0.25		
		Suitability Assessment Safety Factor, $S_A = \Sigma p$			
B	Design	Level of pretreatment/ expected sediment loads	0.5		
		Redundancy/resiliency	0.25		
		Compaction during construction	0.25		
		Design Safety Factor, $S_B = \Sigma p$			
Combined Safety Factor, $S_{total} = S_A \times S_B$					
Observed Infiltration Rate, inch/hr, $K_{observed}$ (corrected for test-specific bias)					
Design Infiltration Rate, in/hr, $K_{design} = K_{observed} / S_{total}$					
Supporting Data					
Briefly describe infiltration test and provide reference to test forms:					

Downstream Systems Requirements for Preservation of Coarse Sediment Supply		Form I-10	
When it has been determined that potential critical coarse sediment yield areas exist within the project site, the next step is to determine whether downstream systems would be sensitive to reduction of coarse sediment yield from the project site. Use this form to document the evaluation of downstream systems requirements for preservation of coarse sediment supply.			
Project Name:			
Project Tracking Number / Permit Application Number:			
1	Will the project discharge runoff to a hardened MS4 system (pipe or lined channel) or an un-lined channel?	<input type="checkbox"/> Hardened MS4 system	Go to 2
		<input type="checkbox"/> Un-lined channel	Go to 4
2	Will the hardened MS4 system convey sediment (e.g., a concrete-lined channel with steep slope and cleansing velocity) or sink sediment (e.g., flat slopes, constrictions, treatment BMPs, or ponds with restricted outlets within the system will trap sediment and not allow conveyance of coarse sediment from the project site to an un-lined system).	<input type="checkbox"/> Convey	Go to 3
		<input type="checkbox"/> Sink	Go to 7
3	What kind of receiving water will the hardened MS4 system convey the sediment to?	<input type="checkbox"/> Un-lined channel	Go to 4
		<input type="checkbox"/> Lake <input type="checkbox"/> Reservoir <input type="checkbox"/> Bay	Go to 7
		<input type="checkbox"/> Lagoon <input type="checkbox"/> Ocean	Go to 6
4	Is the un-lined channel impacted by deposition of sediment? This condition must be documented by the local agency.	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	Go to 7
		<input type="checkbox"/> No	Go to 5

5	End – Preserve coarse sediment supply to protect un-lined channels from accelerated erosion due to reduction of coarse sediment yield from the project site unless further investigation determines the sediment is not critical to the receiving stream. Sediment that is critical to receiving streams is the sediment that is a significant source of bed material to the receiving stream (bed sediment supply) (see Section 6.2.3 and Appendix H.2 of the manual).
6	End – Provide management measures for preservation of coarse sediment supply (protect beach sand supply).
7	End – Downstream system does not warrant preservation of coarse sediment supply, no measures for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas onsite are necessary. Use the space below to describe the basis for this finding for the project.



City of Santee Development Services 10601 Magnolia Avenue Santee, CA 92071 (619)258-4100	<h2 style="margin: 0;">Permanent BMP Construction</h2> <h3 style="margin: 0;">Certification Form</h3>
--	---

Date Prepared:	Project Number:
Project Applicant:	Telephone:
Project Address:	
Project Engineer	Telephone:

The purpose of this form is to verify that the site improvements for the above referenced project have been constructed in conformance with the City of Santee's Standard Urban Storm Water Mitigation Plan (SUSMP) document, the property's Storm Water Management Plan, and drawings.

This form must be completed by the engineer of record for this project and be submitted prior to final inspection for occupancy. Completion and submittal of this form is required for all new development and redevelopment projects in order to comply with the City's Storm Water Ordinance and NPDES Order R9-2013-0001. Final inspection for occupancy and release of grading or public improvement bonds may be delayed if this form is not submitted and approved by the City of Santee.

CERTIFICATION:

As the professional in responsible charge for the design and construction of the above referenced project, I certify that all constructed Low Impact Development, source control, and treatment control Best Management Practices have been built per approved plans, the City's SUSMP and Grading Permit Number: _____ . Further, I certify that BMPs for this project have been constructed in compliance with the approved plans and all applicable specifications, permits, ordinances, and Order R9-2013-0001 (and all subsequent amendments) of the San Diego Regional Water Quality Control Board.

I understand that this BMP certification statement does not constitute an operation and maintenance certification, which is required to be submitted annually to the City of Santee.

Signature:	Dated:
Printed Name:	Engineer's Stamp
Title:	
Telephone:	
License Number:	

Visit www.santeeh2o.org to learn more about the City's Storm Water Program.

Glossary of Key Terms

50% Rule	Refers to an MS4 Permit standard for redevelopment PDPs (PDPs on previously developed sites) that defines whether the redevelopment PDP must meet storm water management requirements for the entire development or only for the newly created or replaced impervious surface. Refer to Section 1.7 .
Aggregate	Hard, durable material of mineral origin typically consisting of gravel, crushed stone, crushed quarry or mine rock. Gradation varies depending on application within a BMP as bedding, filter course, or storage.
Aggregate Storage Layer	Layer within a BMP that serves to provide a conduit for conveyance, detention storage, infiltration storage, saturated storage, or a combination thereof.
Alternative Compliance Programs	A program that allows PDPs to participate in an offsite mitigation project in lieu of implementing the onsite structural BMP performance requirements required under the MS4 Permit. Refer to Section 1.8 for more information on alternative compliance programs.
Bed Sediment	The part of the sediment load in channel flow that moves along the bed by sliding or saltation, and part of the suspended sediment load, that principally constitutes the channel bed.
Bedding	Aggregate used to establish a foundation for structures such as pipes, manholes, and pavement.
Biodegradation	Decomposition of pollutants by biological means.

Glossary of Key Terms

Biofiltration BMPs	<p>Biofiltration BMPs are shallow basins filled with treatment media and drainage rock that treat storm water runoff by capturing and detaining inflows prior to controlled release through minimal incidental infiltration, evapotranspiration, or discharge via underdrain or surface outlet structure. Treatment is achieved through filtration, sedimentation, sorption, biochemical processes and/or vegetative uptake. These BMPs must be sized to:[a] Treat 1.5 times the DCV not reliably retained onsite, OR[b] Treat the DCV not reliably retained onsite with a flow-thru design that has a total volume, including pore spaces and pre-filter detention volume, sized to hold at least 0.75 times the portion of the DCV not reliably retained onsite. (See Section 5.5.3 and Appendix B.5 for illustration and additional information).</p>
Biofiltration Treatment	<p>Treatment from a BMP meeting the biofiltration standard.</p>
Biofiltration with Partial Retention BMPs	<p>Biofiltration with partial retention BMPs are shallow basins filled with treatment media and drainage rock that manage storm water runoff through infiltration, evapotranspiration, and biofiltration. Partial retention is characterized by a subsurface stone infiltration storage zone in the bottom of the BMP below the elevation of the discharge from the underdrains. The discharge of biofiltered water from the underdrain occurs when the water level in the infiltration storage zone exceeds the elevation of the underdrain outlet. (See Section 5.5.2.1 for illustration and additional information).</p>
Bioretention BMPs	<p>Vegetated surface water systems that filter water through vegetation and soil, or engineered media prior to infiltrating into native soils. Bioretention BMPs in this manual retain the entire DCV prior to overflow to the downstream conveyance system. (See Section 5.5.1.2 for illustration and additional information).</p>
BMP	<p>A procedure or device designed to minimize the quantity of runoff pollutants and / or volumes that flow to downstream receiving water bodies. Refer to Section 2.2.2.1.</p>

Glossary of Key Terms

BMP Sizing Calculator	An on-line tool that was developed under the 2007 MS4 Permit to facilitate the sizing factor method for designing flow control BMPs for hydromodification management. The BMP Sizing Calculator has been discontinued as of June 30, 2014.
Cistern	A vessel for storing water. In this manual, a cistern is typically a rain barrel, tank, vault, or other artificial reservoir.
Coarse Sediment Yield Area	A GLU with coarse-grained geologic material (material that is expected to produce greater than 50% sand when weathered). See the following terms modifying coarse sediment yield area: critical, potential critical.
Compact Biofiltration BMP	A biofiltration BMP, either proprietary or non-proprietary in origin, that is designed to provide storm water pollutant control within a smaller footprint than a typical biofiltration BMP, usually through use of specialized media that is able to efficiently treat high storm water inflow rates.
Conditions of Approval	Requirements a jurisdiction may adopt for a project in connection with a discretionary action (e.g., issuance of a use permit). COAs may include features to be incorporated into the final plans for the project and may also specify uses, activities, and operational measures that must be observed over the life of the project.
Contemporary Design Standards	This term refers to design standards that are reasonably consistent with the current state of practice and are based on desired outcomes that are reasonably consistent with the context of the MS4 Permit and Model BMP Design Manual. For example, a detention basin that is designed solely to mitigate peak flow rates would not be considered a contemporary water quality BMP design because it is not consistent with the goal of water quality improvement. Current state of the practice recognizes that a drawdown time of 24 to 72 hour is typically needed to promote settling. For practical purposes, design standards can be considered “contemporary” if they have been published within the last 10 years, preferably in California or Washington State, and are specifically intended for storm water quality management.

Glossary of Key Terms

Continuous Simulation Modeling	<p>A method of hydrological analysis in which a set of rainfall data (typically hourly for 30 years or more) is used as input, and a continuous runoff hydrograph is calculated over the same time period.</p> <p>Continuous simulation models typical track dynamic soil and storage conditions during and between storm events. The output is then analyzed statistically for the purposes of comparing runoff patterns under different conditions (for example, pre- and post-development-project).</p>
Copermittees	<p>See Jurisdiction.</p>
Critical Channel Flow (Q_c)	<p>The channel flow that produces the critical shear stress that initiates bed movement or that erodes the toe of channel banks. When measuring Q_c, it should be based on the weakest boundary material – either bed or bank.</p>
Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Areas	<p>A GLU with coarse-grained geologic material and high relative sediment production, where the sediment produced is critical to the receiving stream (a source of bed material to the receiving stream). See also: potential critical coarse sediment yield area.</p>
Critical Shear Stress	<p>The shear stress that initiates channel bed movement or that erodes the toe of channel banks. See also critical channel flow.</p>
DCV	<p>A volume of storm water runoff produced from the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event. See Section 2.2.2.2.</p>
De Minimis DMA	<p>De minimis DMAs are very small areas that are not considered to be significant contributors of pollutants, and are considered not practicable to drain to a BMP. See Section 5.2.2.</p>
Depth	<p>The distance from the top, or surface, to the bottom of a BMP component.</p>
Detention	<p>Temporarily holding back storm water runoff via a designed outlet (e.g., underdrain, orifice) to provide flow rate and duration control.</p>
Detention Storage	<p>Storage that provides detention as the outflow mechanism.</p>

Glossary of Key Terms

Development Footprint	The limits of all grading and ground disturbance, including landscaping, associated with a project.
Development Project	Construction, rehabilitation, redevelopment, or reconstruction of any public or private projects. Includes both new development and redevelopment. Also includes whole of the action as defined by CEQA. See Section 1.3 .
Direct Discharge	The connection of project site runoff to an exempt receiving water body, which could include an exempt river reach, reservoir or lagoon. To qualify as a direct discharge, the discharge elevation from the project site outfall must be at or below either the normal operating water surface elevation or the reservoir spillway elevation, and properly designed energy dissipation must be provided. “Direct discharge” may be more specifically defined by each municipality.
Direct Infiltration	Infiltration via methods or devices, such as dry wells or infiltration trenches, designed to bypass the mantle of surface soils that is unsaturated and more organically active and transmit runoff directly to deeper subsurface soils.
DMAs	See Section 3.3.3 .
Drawdown Time	The time required for a storm water detention or infiltration facility to drain and return to the dry-weather condition. For detention facilities, drawdown time is a function of basin volume and outlet orifice size. For infiltration facilities, drawdown time is a function of basin volume and infiltration rate.
Enclosed Embayments (Enclosed Bays)	Enclosed bays are indentations along the coast that enclose an area of oceanic water within distinct headlands or harbor works. Enclosed bays include all bays where the narrowest distance between the headlands or outermost bay works is less than 75 percent of the greatest dimension of the enclosed portion of the bay. Enclosed bays do not include inland surface waters or ocean waters. In San Diego: Mission Bay and San Diego Bay.

Glossary of Key Terms

Environmentally Sensitive Areas (ESAs)	Areas that include but are not limited to all Clean Water Act Section 303(d) impaired water bodies; areas designated as Areas of Special Biological Significance by the State Water Board and SDRWQCB; State Water Quality Protected Areas; water bodies designated with the RARE beneficial use by the State Water Board and SDRWQCB; and any other equivalent environmentally sensitive areas which have been identified by the Copermittees.
Filter Course	Aggregate used to prevent particle migration between two different materials when storm water runoff passes through.
Filter Fabric	A permeable textile material, also termed a non-woven geotextile, that prevents particle migration between two different materials when storm water runoff passes through.
Filtration	Controlled seepage of storm water runoff through media, vegetation, or aggregate to reduce pollutants via physical separation.
Flow Control	Control of runoff rates and durations as required by the HMP.
Flow Control BMP	A structural BMP designed to provide control of post-project runoff flow rates and durations for the purpose of hydromodification management.
Flow-thru Treatment	Treatment from a BMP meeting the flow-thru treatment control standard.
Flow-Thru Treatment BMPs	Flow-thru treatment control BMPs are structural, engineered facilities that are designed to remove pollutants from storm water runoff using treatment processes that do not incorporate significant biological methods. Flow-thru BMPs include vegetated swales, media filters, sand filters, and dry extended detention basins. (See Section 5.5.4 for illustration and additional information).
Forebay	An initial storage area at the entrance to a structural BMP designed to trap and settle out solid pollutants such as sediment in a concentrated location, to provide pre-treatment within the structural BMP and facilitate removal of solid pollutants during maintenance operations.

Glossary of Key Terms

Full Infiltration	Infiltration of a storm water runoff volume equal to the DCV.
Geomorphic Assessment	A quantification or measure of the changing properties of a stream channel.
Geomorphically Significant Flows	Flows that have the potential to cause, or accelerate, stream channel erosion or other adverse impacts to beneficial stream uses. The range of geomorphically significant flows was determined as part of the development of the March 2011 Final HMP, and has not changed under the 2013 MS4 Permit. However, under the 2013 MS4 Permit, Q2 and Q10 must be based on the pre-development condition rather than the pre-project condition, meaning that no pre-project impervious area may be considered in the computation of pre-development Q2 and Q10.
GLUs	Classifications that provide an estimate of sediment yield based upon three factors: geology, hillslope, and land cover. GLUs are developed based on the methodology presented in the SCCWRP Technical Report 605 titled “Hydromodification Screening Tools: GIS-Based Catchment Analyses of Potential Changes in Runoff and Sediment Discharge” (SCCWRP, 2010).
Gross Pollutants	In storm water, generally litter (trash), organic debris (leaves, branches, seeds, twigs, grass clippings), and coarse sediments (inorganic breakdown products from soils, pavement, or building materials).
Harvest and Use BMP	Harvest and use (aka rainwater harvesting) BMPs capture and store storm water runoff for later use. These BMPs are engineered to store a specified volume of water and have no design surface discharge until this volume is exceeded. (See Section 5.5.1.1 for illustration and additional information).
HMP	A plan implemented by the Copermittees so that post-project runoff shall not exceed estimated pre-development rates and/or durations by more than 10%, where increased runoff would result in increased potential for erosion or other adverse impacts to beneficial uses. The March 2011 Final HMP and the updated MS4 Permit are the basis of the flow control requirements of this manual.

Glossary of Key Terms

Hungry Water	Also known as "sediment-starved" water, "hungry" water refers to channel flow that is hungry for sediment from the channel bed or banks because it currently contains less bed material sediment than it is capable of conveying. The "hungry water" phenomenon occurs when the natural sediment load decreases and the erosive force of the runoff increases as a natural counterbalance, as described by Lane's Equation.
Hydraulic Head	Energy represented as a difference in elevation, typically as the difference between the inlet and outlet water surface elevation for a BMP.
Hydraulic Residence Time	The length of time between inflow and outflow that runoff remains in a BMP.
Hydrologic Soil Group	Classification of soils by the Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) into A, B, C, and D groups according to infiltration capacity.
Hydromodification	The change in the natural watershed hydrologic processes and runoff characteristics (i.e., interception, infiltration, overland flow, interflow and groundwater flow) caused by urbanization or other land use changes that result in increased stream flows and sediment transport. In addition, alteration of stream and river channels, installation of dams and water impoundments, and excessive stream-bank and shoreline erosion are also considered hydromodification, due to their disruption of natural watershed hydrologic processes.
Hydromodification Management BMP	A structural BMP for the purpose of hydromodification management, either for protection of critical coarse sediment yield areas or for flow control. See also flow control BMP.
Impervious Surface	Any material that prevents or substantially reduces infiltration of water into the soil.
Infeasible	As applied to BMPs, refers to condition in which a BMP approach is not practicable based on technical constraints specific to the site, including but not limited to physical constraints, risks of impacts to environmental resources, risks of harm to human health, or risk of loss or damage to property. Feasibility criteria are provided in this manual.

Glossary of Key Terms

Infiltration	<p>In the context of LID, infiltration is defined as the percolation of water into the ground. Infiltration is often expressed as a rate (inches per hour), which is determined through an infiltration test. In the context of non-storm water, infiltration is water other than wastewater that enters a sewer system (including sewer service connections and foundation drains) from the ground through such means as defective pipes, pipe joints, connections, or manholes. Infiltration does not include, and is distinguished from, inflow [40 CFR 35.2005(20)].</p>
Infiltration BMP	<p>Infiltration BMPs are structural measures that capture, store and infiltrate storm water runoff. These BMPs are engineered to store a specified volume of water and have no design surface discharge (underdrain or outlet structure) until this volume is exceeded. These types of BMPs may also support evapotranspiration processes, but are characterized by having their most dominant volume losses due to infiltration. (See Section 5.5.1.2 for illustration and additional information).</p>
Jurisdiction	<p>The term “jurisdiction” is used in this manual to refer to individual copermitttees who have independent responsibility for implementing the requirements of the MS4 Permit.</p>
LID	<p>A storm water management and land development strategy that emphasizes conservation and the use of onsite natural features integrated with engineered, small-scale hydrologic controls to more closely reflect pre-development hydrologic functions. See Site Design.</p>
Lower Flow Threshold	<p>The lower limit of the range of flows to be controlled for hydromodification management. The lower flow threshold is the flow at which erosion of sediment from the stream bed or banks begins to occur. See also critical channel flow. For the San Diego region, the lower flow threshold shall be a fraction (0.1, 0.3, or 0.5) of the pre-development 2-year flow rate based on continuous simulation modeling (0.1Q2, 0.3Q2, or 0.5Q2).</p>
Media	<p>Storm water runoff pollutant treatment material, typically included as a permeable constructed bed or container (cartridge) within a BMP.</p>

Glossary of Key Terms

MEP	Refer to the definition in the MS4 Permit. [Appendix C, Definitions, Page C-6]
National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System	The national program for issuing, modifying, revoking and reissuing, terminating, monitoring and enforcing permits, and imposing and enforcing pretreatment requirements, under Sections 307, 318, 402, and 405 of the Clean Water Act.
New Development	Land disturbing activities; structural development, including construction or installation of a building or structure, the creation of impervious surfaces; and land subdivision.
O&M	Requirements in the MS4 Permit to inspect structural BMPs and verify the implementation of operational practices and preventative and corrective maintenance in perpetuity.
Partial Infiltration	Infiltration of a storm water runoff volume less than the DCV.
Partial Retention	Partial retention category is defined by structural measures that incorporate both infiltration (in the lower treatment zone) and biofiltration (in the upper treatment zone).
PDPs	As defined by the MS4 Permit provision E.3.b, land development projects that fall under the planning and building authority of the Copermittee for which the Copermittee must impose specific requirements in addition to those required of Standard Projects. Refer to Section 1.4 to determine if your project is a PDP.
PDPs with only Pollutant Control Requirements	PDPs that need to meet Source Control, Site Design and Pollutant Control Requirements (but are exempt from Hydromodification Management Requirements).
PDPs with Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements	PDPs that need to meet Source Control, Site Design, Pollutant Control and Hydromodification Management Requirements.

Glossary of Key Terms

Point of Compliance	<p>1. For channel screening and determination of low flow threshold: the point at which collected storm water from a development is delivered from a constructed or modified drainage system into a natural or un-lined channel. POC for channel screening may be located onsite or offsite, depending on where runoff from the project meets a natural or un-lined channel. 2. For flow control: the point at which pre-development and post-development flow rates and durations will be compared. POC for flow control is typically onsite. A project may have a different POC for channel screening vs. POC for flow control if runoff from the project site is conveyed in hardened systems from the project site boundary to the natural or un-lined channel.</p>
Pollutant Control	<p>Control of pollutants via physical, chemical or biological processes</p>
Pollution Prevention	<p>Pollution prevention is defined as practices and processes that reduce or eliminate the generation of pollutants, in contrast to source control BMPs, treatment control BMPs, or disposal.</p>
Post-Project Hydrology Flows, Volumes	<p>The peak runoff flows and runoff volume anticipated after the project has been constructed taking into account all permeable and impermeable surfaces, soil and vegetation types and conditions after landscaping is complete, detention or retention basins or other water storage elements incorporated into the site design, and any other site features that would affect runoff volumes and peak flows.</p>
Potential Critical Coarse Sediment Yield Area	<p>A GLU with coarse-grained geologic material and high relative sediment production, as defined in the Regional WMAA. The Regional WMAA identified GLUs as potential critical coarse sediment yield areas based on slope, geology, and land cover. GLU analysis does not determine whether the sediment produced is critical to the receiving stream (a source of bed material to the receiving stream) therefore the areas are designated as potential.</p>

Glossary of Key Terms

Pre-Development Runoff Conditions	Approximate flow rates and durations that exist or existed onsite before land development occurs. For new development projects, this equates to runoff conditions immediately before any new project disturbance or grading. For redevelopment projects, this equates to runoff conditions from the project footprint assuming infiltration characteristics of the underlying soil, and existing grade. Runoff coefficients of concrete or asphalt must not be used. A redevelopment PDP must use available information pertaining to existing underlying soil type and onsite existing grade to estimate pre-development runoff conditions.
Pre-Project Condition	The condition prior to any project work or the existing condition. Note that pre-project condition and pre-development condition will not be the same for redevelopment projects.
Pretreatment	Removal of gross solids, including organic debris and coarse sediment, from runoff to minimize clogging and increase the effectiveness of BMPs.
Project Area	All areas proposed by an applicant to be altered or developed, plus any additional areas that drain on to areas to be altered or developed. Also see Section 1.3 .
Project Submittal	Documents submitted to a jurisdiction or Copermittee in connection with an application for development approval and demonstrating compliance with MS4 Permit requirements for the project. Specific requirements vary from municipality to municipality.
Proprietary BMP	BMP designed and marketed by private business for treatment of storm water. Check with City Engineer prior to proposing to use a proprietary BMP.
Receiving Waters	See Waters of the United States .

Glossary of Key Terms

Redevelopment	The creation, addition, and or replacement of impervious surface on an already developed site. Examples include the expansion of a building footprint, road widening, the addition to or replacement of a structure, and creation or addition of impervious surfaces. Replacement of impervious surfaces includes any activity that is not part of a routine maintenance activity where impervious material(s) are removed, exposing underlying soil during construction. Redevelopment does not include trenching and resurfacing associated with utility work; and existing roadways; new sidewalk construction, pedestrian ramps, or bike lane on existing roads; and routine replacement of damaged pavement, such as pothole repair.
Regional Water Quality Control Board (SDRWQCB)	California RWQCBs are responsible for implementing pollution control provisions of the Clean Water Act and California Water Code within their jurisdiction. There are nine California RWQCBs.
Retention (Retention BMPs)	A category of BMP that does not have any service outlets that discharge to surface water or to a conveyance system that drains to surface waters for the design event (i.e. 85 th percentile 24-hour). Mechanisms used for storm water retention include infiltration, evapotranspiration, and use of retained water for non-potable or potable purposes.
Saturated Storage	Storage that provides a permanent volume of water at the bottom of the BMP as an anaerobic zone to promote denitrification and/or thermal pollution control. Also known as internal water storage or a saturation zone.
Self-mitigating Areas	A natural, landscaped, or turf area that does not generate significant pollutants and drains directly offsite or to the public storm drain system without being treated by a structural BMP. See Section 5.2.1 .
Self-retaining DMA via Qualifying Site Design BMPs	An area designed to retain runoff to fully eliminate storm water runoff from the 85 th percentile 24 hours storm event; See Section 5.2.3 .

Glossary of Key Terms

SIC	A Federal government system for classifying industries by 4-digit code. It is being supplanted by the North American Industrial Classification System but SIC codes are still referenced by the Regional Water Board in identifying development sites subject to regulation under the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System permit. Information and an SIC search function are available at https://www.osha.gov/pls/imis/sicsearch.html
Significant Redevelopment	Redevelopment that meets the definition of a “PDP” in this manual. See Section 1.4 .
Site Design	A storm water management and land development strategy that emphasizes conservation of natural features and the use of onsite natural features integrated with engineered, small-scale hydrologic controls to more closely reflect pre-development hydrologic functions.
Sizing Factor Method	A method for designing flow control BMPs for hydromodification management using sizing factors developed from unit area continuous simulation models.
Sorption	Physical and/or chemical process where pollutants are taken out of runoff through attachment to another substance.
Source Control	Land use or site planning practices, or structures that aim to prevent runoff pollution by reducing the potential for contamination at the source of pollution. Source control BMPs minimizes the contact between pollutants and storm water runoff. Examples include roof structures over trash or material storage areas, and berms around fuel dispensing areas. Source control BMPs are described within this manual.
Standard Project	Any development project that is not defined as a PDP by the MS4 Permit.

Glossary of Key Terms

Storm Water Conveyance System

A conveyance or system of conveyances (including roads with drainage systems, municipal streets, catch basins, curbs, gutters, ditches, man-made channels, or storm drains): (i) Owned or operated by a State, city, town, borough, county, parish, district, association, or other public body (created by or pursuant to State law) having jurisdiction over disposal of sewage, industrial wastes, storm water, or other wastes, including special districts under State law such as a sewer district, flood control district or drainage district, or similar entity, or an Indian tribe or an authorized Indian tribal organization, or designated and approved management agency under section 208 of the Clean Water Act that discharges to waters of the United States; (ii) Designated or used for collecting or conveying storm water; (iii) Which is not a combined sewer; (iv) Which is not part of the Publicly Owned Treatment Works as defined at 40 CFR 122.26.

Storm Water Pollutant Control BMP

A category of storm water management requirements that includes treatment of storm water to remove pollutants by measures such as retention, biofiltration, and/or flow-thru treatment control, as specified in this manual. Also called a Pollutant Control BMP.

Structural BMP

Throughout the manual, the term "structural BMP" is a general term that encompasses the pollutant control BMPs and hydromodification BMPs required for PDPs under the MS4 Permit. A structural BMP may be a pollutant control BMP, a hydromodification management BMP, or an integrated pollutant control and hydromodification management BMP. Structural BMPs as defined in the MS4 Permit are: a subset of BMPs which detains, retains, filters, removes, or prevents the release of pollutants to surface waters from development projects in perpetuity, after construction of a project is completed.

Subgrade

In-situ soil that lies underneath a BMP.

Tributary Area

The total surface area of land or hardscape that contributes runoff to the BMP; including any offsite or onsite areas that come along with project runoff and drains to the BMP. Refer to **Section 3.3.3** for additional guidance Also termed the drainage area or catchment area.

Glossary of Key Terms

Unified BMP Design Approach	<p>This term refers to the standardized process for site and watershed investigation, BMP selection, BMP sizing, and BMP design that is outlined and described in this manual with associated appendices and templates. This approach is considered to be “unified” because it represents a pathway for compliance with MS4 Permit requirements that is anticipated to be reasonably consistent across the local jurisdictions in San Diego County. In contrast, applicants may choose to take an alternative approach where they demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Copermittee, in their submittal, compliance with applicable performance standards without necessarily following the process identified in this manual.</p>
Upper Flow Threshold	<p>The upper limit of the range of flows to be controlled for hydromodification management. For the San Diego region, the upper flow threshold shall be the pre-development 10-year flow rate (Q10) based on continuous simulation modeling.</p>
Vactor	<p>Refers to a sewer or storm drain cleaning truck equipped to remove materials from sewer or storm drain pipes or structures, including some storm water BMPs.</p>
Vector	<p>An animal or insect capable of transmitting the causative agent of human disease. An example of a vector in San Diego County that is of concern in storm water management is a mosquito.</p>
Water Quality Improvement Plan	<p>Copermittees are required to develop a Water Quality Improvement Plan for each Watershed Management Area in the San Diego Region. The purpose of the Water Quality Improvement Plans is to guide the Copermittees’ jurisdictional runoff management programs towards achieving the outcome of improved water quality in MS4 discharges and receiving waters. WQIPs requirements are defined in the MS4 Permit provision B.</p>

Glossary of Key Terms

Waters of the United States

Surface bodies of water, including naturally occurring wetlands, streams (perennial, intermittent, and ephemeral (exhibiting bed, bank, and ordinary high water mark)), creeks, rivers, reservoirs, lakes, lagoons, estuaries, harbors, bays and the Pacific Ocean which directly or indirectly receive discharges from storm water conveyance systems. The Copermittee shall determine the definition for wetlands and the limits thereof for the purposes of this definition, which shall be as protective as the Federal definition utilized by the United States Army Corps of Engineers and the United States Environmental Protection Agency. Constructed wetlands are not considered wetlands under this definition, unless the wetlands were constructed as mitigation for habitat loss. Other constructed BMPs are not considered receiving waters under this definition, unless the BMP was originally constructed within the boundaries of the receiving waters. Also see MS4 permit definition.

Watershed Management Area

The ten areas defined by the SDRWQCB in Regional MS4 Permit provision B.1, Table B-1. Each Watershed Management Area is defined by one or more Hydrologic Unit, major surface water body, and responsible Copermittee.

Watershed Management Area Analysis

For each Watershed Management Area, the Copermittees have the option to perform a WMAA for the purpose of developing watershed-specific requirements for structural BMP implementation. Each WMAA includes: GIS layers developed to provide physical characteristics of the watershed management area, a list of potential offsite alternative compliance projects, and areas exempt from hydromodification management requirements.